PRACTICAL

AND PROGRESSIVE

LATIN GRAMMAR.

ELEMENTARY COURSE.

BY

THOMAS CLARK,

EDITOR OF THE FORMER ASSOCIATION OF THE PHILADELPHIA BOOKSELLERS FOR THE PUBLICATION OF THE LATIN AND GREEK CLASSICS; ALSO, EDITOR OF SEVERAL LATIN CLASSICS WITH NOTES; AS, LIKEWISE, OF THE POPULAR SERIES OF INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS, COMPRISING HORACE, CÆSAR, CICERO, SALLUST, XENOPHON, ETC.

A NEW AND CAREFULLY REVISED EDITION,

TO WHICH HAS BEEN ADDED A

SECOND,

OR

FULL COURSE OF THE LATIN GRAMMAR.

PHILADELPHIA:
CHARLES DE SILVER & SONS,
PUBLISHERS.

STEREOTYPED BY J. FAGAN.

PREFACE TO THE ENLARGED EDITION.

This revised edition of the Practical and Progressive Latin Grammar, contains a second or full Supplementary Course, which embodies all that was purposely omitted in the Elementary Course, with the view of relieving the pupil's memory from a burden which it was unnecessary to impose on him, until he had made some progress in the language.

The second or full course contains all the exceptions and minute rules for declensions and conjugations, the derivation and composition of words, &c.; also, a full supplementary syntax; together with a treatise on prosody, containing all the rules of quantity and of versification.

In combination with the elementary part, these additions render this Latin Grammar as ample and complete as any now used in our schools and colleges, and afford the student many practical advantages and facilities not procurable in any other Latin grammar.

The division into a first, practical and elementary, course, containing only those rules and forms most necessary to be learned, accompanied by practical exercises, — and into a second, supplementary and full, course, will be found very advantageous to teachers, and also to students of the Latin language.

THOMAS CLARK.

Philadelphia, September 16, 1859.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

The object of this Grammar is to obviate the disgust and tediousness which pupils feel in merely learning the grammatical forms of the Latin language, without any practical application of the same while learning them, and also to prevent the loss of time resulting from such method.

The plan here followed is, that, at the same time the pupil commences to learn the declensions, he also commences to translate and to learn words and sentences. This is made easy to him by means of interlinear translations, and references, by means of signs and abbreviations, to the declensions and conjugations he is learning. The attention of the pupil is, at first, only directed to those grammatical forms that he has learned, or is learning, by references to the same: those grammatical forms that he has not learned, his attention is not drawn to, and he only learns the signification of the words and sentences by rote, as respects their grammatical forms; he not being troubled with such forms, till he commences learning them. So that, by the time he has learned his declensions and conjugations, he will have acquired some knowledge of the Latin language; and his studies, instead of being disgusting and tedious, will become attractive and agreeable; and, in less time than other pupils take to learn their declensions and conjugations, he will also have learned them, and, moreover, have obtained such practical knowledge of the language as will make his future progress therein pleasant.

The practical part of this Elementary Course is arranged in one hundred Lessons, or, rather, fifty double Lessons. Each double lesson consists, first, of a lesson in interlinear translation, arranged according to the English order of words; next, of a lesson in the order of the text of the author, without any interlinear translation. To these two lessons there next succeeds exercises on the same:—first, of words to be translated from Latin into English; next, of words to be translated from English into Latin; then of Latin sentences to be translated into English, and, lastly, of English sentences to be translated into Latin. All these words and sentences are taken from the lessons, or slightly altered from them.

These fifty double lessons are dispersed through the Grammar, and illustrate and exemplify the forms of grammar that the pupil is learning, or has learned. In the interlinear lessons, all the forms of declension and conjugation that the pupil is learning, or has learned, are marked by signs and abbreviations, denoting or pointing out the different parts of the declensions and conjugations; so that the pupil, in preparing his lessons, requires no aid from a dictionary; the use of which, in the commencement of his studies, would be extremely vexatious to him, and would scarcely enable him to prepare his lessons, either as respects the signification of the words, or the forms of declensions and conjugations.

In those forms of declension and conjugation that the pupil has learned, he is continually to be exercised in the different lessons, thus impressing such forms more strongly in his memory, by seeing the use and meaning of such forms, than they would be if merely learned by heart, without understanding their application; in addition to this, he would be gradually acquiring a stock of Latin words and sentences, which he would not in the usual method.

This Introductory, or Elementary Latin Grammar, contains all that is necessary to be learned previous to the commencement of the study of the Latin Classics; and, in

schools, is all that is usually taught, or required to be learned, in a first course of grammar, all the rest being left to subsequent study.

Many eminent men have much lamented the great loss of time, and disgust to the pupil, and vexation to the teacher, occasioned by the usual mode of teaching Latin at the commencement of learning the language — especially the great poet and distinguished Latin scholar, Milton, and the eminent metaphysician and writer on education, Locke, who both assert that, in the usual method of teaching Latin, years are lost in imperfectly acquiring that which, by a more perfect method, might be better learned in a year. Both have suggested plans for such improved method, which, in both, is that, as the pupil gradually learns the elementary part of the language, he should, at the same time, be taught the application of such elements, in any easy and practical manner by translations, especially those of an interlinear nature; and thereby not subjecting the pupil to the annoying, and, at the beginning of his studies, nearly, for him, impracticable method of preparing his lessons by the aid of a dictionary.

In this Elementary Practical and Progressive Grammar, the suggestions of these two eminent men, as well as of others, have been fully carried out, and a method of teaching the elements of the Latin language, for beginners, has been formed, that, perhaps, may be considered as even extending and improving their suggestions. For, not only are the words and sentences explained by literal interlinear translations, but constant references are made to the forms of declensions and conjugations, by signs and abbreviations, which, in the commencement, are quite, if not more necessary, than the explanation of words. To this, also, is added the Exercises on the Lessons, often so varied from the text as to be perfectly understood by the student, and thus practically leading him gradually to the formation of sentences in

Latin from English, and to the understanding of sentences in Latin, when somewhat varied from the text.

This method, applied in learning a language, has always resulted in the most decided advantage to the pupil, and his progress has always been more rapid, than if he had been taught on any other plan.

This practical and progressive method might not only be used in schools, for boys commencing the study of the Latin language; but might also be used by ladies desirous to acquire some knowledge of the Latin language in an easy and agreeable manner; as also by those who, not having learned Latin in their youth, yet, either from the nature of their profession, or from other circumstances, feel the want of not being acquainted with Latin.

Even those teachers who are opposed to translations of every kind in learning Latin, could not reasonably object to this practical progressive method, especially in this elementary course, which has only in view the teaching of the first, or necessary principles of the language, previous to the commencement of the study of the classics; for the lessons here given haye principally in view the exemplifying of the declensions and conjugations, and, by showing their practical use and application, to impress them more strongly on the mind of the pupil; thus, also, removing the disgust of committing to memory things that he does not understand, or see the use of.

The signs and abbreviations used in the lessons, and explained in different parts of the Grammar, where their use first occurs, have all been collected under one head, for the purpose of easy reference, and will be found in the four following pages.

THOMAS CLARK.

PHILADELPHIA, November, 1857.

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

USED IN THIS GRAMMAR, IN THE INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION.

ENGLISH PART.—The hyphen (-) denotes that several English words are placed under one Latin one to denote its meaning: as,

appellantur.
are-called.

When two or more English words, denoting one Latin word, have one or more words interposed between them, then the separated words, denoting the one Latin word, are designated by having the hyphen placed perpendicularly before them, or by the figure [1]: as,

egregiâ virtute.
[1]by (their) [1]excellent courage.

The parentheses ( ) are used when words are added in English, and form part of the sentence: as,

nostrâ Galli.
in-our (language) Gauls.

When an English word or sentence is enclosed in brackets [ ], it denotes that such word or sentence is used to express the meaning more intelligibly, and is used in place of the word or sentence immediately preceding it, the commencement of which is denoted by a straight line | : as,

linguâ ipsorum.
| [1]in (the) [1]language of-themselves [in their own language]

When the word or sentence in brackets is not preceded by a straight line, such word or sentence is to be considered as an explanatory note: as,

quŏd erant cogniti.
because [1]they [the Boii] [1]were known.

LATIN PART IN GENERAL.—When a dot is placed above and after a word, it is thereby denoted that such word is separated from another word, to the end of which it is added, and which other word has also a dot after it: as, *que· sua·* for *suaque.*

LATIN PARTS OF SPEECH.—NOUNS.—*First Declension.*—The simple numbers $^{1, 2, 3, 4, 5}$ or ^{6}, placed immediately before the words of the first declension, denote the cases that they are in, in the singular: as, ^{1} denotes the nominative, ^{2} the genitive, ^{3} the dative, ^{4} the accusative, ^{5} the vocative, and ^{6} the ablative. When *pl.* is placed before the same numbers, it denotes the same cases in the plural.

Second Declension.—*S* placed before the numbers denoting case, both in the singular and plural, indicates the form in *us; r* placed before the same numbers, denotes the form when the *e* is retained before the *r* in the genitive and other cases; *er* denotes that the *e* is dropped in the genitive, &c.: as, $^{er.1}$*ager*, gen. $^{er.2}$*agri*. The form in *um* is denoted by *m* placed before the numbers, both in the singular and plural.

Third Declension.—To denote the third declension, the terminating letters of the nominative singular and genitive singular, separated by a hyphen, are placed before the numbers denoting cases: as, *o–onis.*1 in *sermo.*

Fourth Declension.—The genitive singular, *ûs*, is placed before the numbers of cases for those nouns ending in *us* in the nominative singular; and, in like manner, *u* for those ending in *u.*

Fifth Declension is denoted by placing the termination, *ei*, of the genitive singular, before the numbers denoting case.

To denote exceptions in gender, (*m.*) is placed after the noun, in parentheses, for the masculine, (*f.*) for the feminine, and (*n.*) for the neuter.

ADJECTIVES.—The declensions of adjectives are indicated in the same manner as those of nouns. The comparative degree is designated by *c.* placed between parentheses after the word: as, *mitior* (*c.*). The superlative is denoted by *s.*, placed in like manner: as, *mitissimus* (*s.*). In some irregular comparatives or superlatives, the positive degree may be placed before the *c.* or *s.*, in parentheses: as, *melior* (*bonus, c.*), or *maximus* (*magnus, s.*).

PRONOUNS.—The substantive pronouns are denoted by placing ^{1} in parentheses after the first person; the second person by, in like manner, placing ^{2} after the second person; and the third person by placing ^{3} after it. The case for all three persons is denoted by simply placing the numbers denoting case before the persons: as, ^{1}*ego*,$^{(1)}$ ^{1}*tu*,$^{(2)}$ ^{4}*se*.$^{(3)}$

Demonstrative Pronouns.—To designate the demonstrative pronoun *hic*, *ic* is used for the masculine, *æc* for the feminine, and *oc* for the neuter, placed before the numbers denoting cases. To designate *is*, *is* is used for the masculine, *ea* for the feminine, and *id* for the neuter, placed in like manner. To indicate the demonstrative *ille*, *le* is used for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *lud* for the neuter, placed before the numbers. *Iste* has, in like manner, *te* for the masculine, *ta* for the feminine, and *tud* for the neuter. The emphatic pronoun, *ipse*, has *se* for the masculine, *sa* for the feminine, and *sum* for the neuter.

Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.—*Qui* and its compounds, either relative or indefinite, are denoted by *ui* for the masculine, *uæ* for the

feminine, and *od* for the neuter, placed before the numbers denoting cases. *Quis* and its compounds, either interrogative or indefinite, have *uis* for the masculine, *uæ* for the feminine, and *uid* for the neuter, before the numbers.

VERBS.—*Voice.*—*P.* placed before the numbers indicating tense, or before the sign *sb.* of the subjunctive, denotes the passive voice; the active voice requires no sign. When the verb is deponent, *d* is used, in place of *p.*

Moods.—The indicative mood requires no sign. The subjunctive mood is denoted by *sb.* placed before the numbers denoting tense. The imperative has *im.* placed in like manner, and the infinitive *in.*

Tenses.—Tenses are denoted by numbers placed in parentheses before the verb: as, (1) indicates the present tense, (2) the imperfect, (3) the future, (4) the perfect, (5) the pluperfect, and (6) the future perfect.

Numbers and Persons.—Persons are denoted by placing 1 for the first person, 2 for the second person, and 3 for the third person, in brackets [1], after the verb. The plural is indicated by placing *pl.* before these numbers: as, (1)*amamus*[pl.1], *we love.* The singular requires no sign.

Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.—Participles are denoted by placing *part.* in brackets, after the verb: as, (1)*amans.*[part.] The declension of the participle is placed next it after the sign of tense: as, (1).ns–ntis.1*amans*[part.], *loving.* Gerunds are indicated by placing [*ger.*] after the verb. These gerunds have only the signs of cases before them. The supine in *um* is denoted by placing [*um*] in brackets after the verb, and that in *u* by, in like manner, placing [*u*].

The letters or terminations indicating the three principal tenses, or parts, from which all the other tenses and forms are derived, are placed first before the verb: as, | ar–avi–atum.(1)*amo*[1], *I love.*

The first conjugation is denoted by *ar–avi–atum*—*ar* denoting either the present indicative active, by dropping *ar* and adding *o:* as, *amo*—*I love;* or the infinitive of the same, by adding *e:* as, *amare*—*to love.* When any irregular form of this conjugation occurs, other letters must be added to all or to some of these three principal tenses or forms: as in *do*—*I give, ar–edi–atum;* indicating that these, and the tenses formed from them, are added to the commencing *d* of *do.*

The second conjugation is denoted by *ēr–ui–itum*, or by *ēr–evi–etum;* the *r* of the first form is dropped, and *o* is added to form the present tense, indicative, and *e* is added to the end of *ir* for the present infinitive. Besides these, there are irregularities in these principal forms, which will require to be indicated by other or additional letters.

The third conjugation is very irregular, especially in the perfect and supine. The conjugation itself is always denoted by *ĕr* for the present and infinitive present—the *ĕr* being dropped and *o* added for the indicative present, first person, and an *e* added to *ĕr* for the infinitive; but *ĕr* would often require more letters before it: as in *rego*—*to rule, gĕr–xi–ctum;* making *rego, regĕre, rexi, rectum.* When the perfect begins with a different letter from the present, it may be necessary to put the entire verb in

italics to express this: as in *ago—to act, gĕr–egi–ctum;* making *ago, agĕre, egi, actum.*

The fourth conjugation is denoted by *ir–ivi–itum;* the *r* of the first form is dropped and *o* added to form the first person present, indicativo, and *e* added to the end of *ir* to form the infinitive. The irregular verbs of this conjugation are denoted as above.

When, in any of the four conjugations, a letter or letters, that belong to the first principal part, are dropped in the second or third principal parts, or in both, such dropped letter or letters are placed in parentheses ( ) before the first principal part: as in *jubeo—I order, (b)ēr–ssi–ssum;* making *jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum.*

A perpendicular line is placed before one of these principal tenses or forms, to denote that the tense or form of the verb is derived from it: as, ar– | avi–atum.(5) *amaveram* [1], *I had loved;* or | ar–avi–atum.(2) *amabat* [3], *he loved* or *was loving.*

When the present differs altogether from the infinitive, both are denoted entire in italics, between parentheses: as in *sum—I am, (sum–esse).e–ui;* or in *eo—I go, (eo–ire).ir–ivi–itum.* When any principal part differs entirely from its regular termination, it will be necessary to substitute the entire verb, in italics, therefor: as in *do—I give, ar–dedi–datum;* making *do, dare, dedi, datum.*

In all cases where a number, letter, or abbreviation, is placed after a word, in parentheses ( ), or in brackets [ ], such parentheses or brackets are followed by two dots: as, *virtus*.(*f.*)•• These dots denote that the signs before them belong to the preceding word, and not to the following.

When the future periphrastic conjugation is to be particularly designated, *f.* is placed in the parentheses before the numbers denoting tense: as, (f.1) *amaturus sum.*[1] When the periphrastic conjugation of necessity is to be denoted, *n.* is placed in like manner in the parentheses: as, (n.1) *amandus sum.*[1]

Should it be required to denote the adverb in the comparative, or in the superlative degree, it may be done by placing *ad.* before *c.* or *s.* in parentheses, after the adverb: as, *faciliùs* (*ad. c.*), or *doctissimè* (*ad. s.*).

CONTENTS OF THE ELEMENTARY COURSE.

CONTENTS OF THE SUPPLEMENTARY COURSE.

SYNTAX.

PROSODY.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

FIRST, OR ELEMENTARY COURSE.

LETTERS.

There are twenty-four letters in the Latin language, or with *k* twenty-five, namely: *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *i*, *j*, (*k*,) *l*, *m*, *n*, *o*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *u*, *v*, *x*, *y*, *z*.

The exact pronunciation of these letters not being accurately known, the different nations pronounce them, nearly as they do the letters of their own alphabet.

The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, (*y*). These were, in all probability, pronounced as the Italians now pronounce them; that is, *a* like *a* in *far*, *e* like *a* in *fate*, *i* like *e* in *me*, *o* like *o* in *no*, *u* like *u* in *bull;* *y* is not properly a Latin vowel, but is used to express the Greek *υ* in Greek words, and by the Romans was pronounced like their *i*.

Of the diphthongs, it may be observed that *æ* and *œ* are sounded like *e*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight, namely: Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection. In Latin there is no Article, either definite, as *the*, or indefinite, as *a*.

NOUNS.

Nouns have different terminations, which are called

DECLENSIONS.

The Latin language has five declensions; each declension denotes various modes of changing the termination of nouns; each has also two *numbers*, the *singular* and *plural*, with six *cases* in each *number*. The *cases* denote the particular termination of words, often expressed in English by prepositions: as, 1, the *nominative*, denoting the actor or doer; 2, the *genitive*, as "of a man," or "man's"; 3, the *dative*, as "to a man"; 4, the *objective* or *accusative*, as "man" in the sentence, "I found the man"; 5, the *vocative*, as "O man"; 6, the *ablative*, as "in, with, by, from, &c., a man."

FIRST DECLENSION.

Latin words of the first declension end in *a* in their nominative singular, and have their genitive singular in *æ*, diphthong.

All nouns, in all the words of the first, as well as in all those of the other declensions, are to be looked for in the dictionary in their nominative singular. The genitive singular determines the first declension, as does the genitive singular, in all the other declensions, indicate the declension; such genitive singular being always placed after the noun, in the dictionaries, to denote the particular declension.

Form of First Declension.

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Stella; a star,	a.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Stellæ; stars,	æ.
2. *Gen.* Stellæ; of a star, or star's,	æ.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Stellarum; of stars,	arum.
3. *Dat.* Stellæ; to, or for a star,	æ.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Stellis; to, or for stars,	is.
4. *Acc.* Stellam; star,[1]	am.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Stellas; stars,	as.
5. *Voc.* Stella; O star,	a.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Stellæ; O stars,	æ.
6. *Abl.* Stellâ; in, with, from, or by a star,	â.	*pl.* 6. *A.* Stellis; in, with, from, or by stars,	is.

[1] Accusative; as *video*, "I see *stellam*, a star."

Observe, that the nominative, vocative, and ablative singular end in *a*. The ablative has a circumflex over it, as *â*; but this circumflex is often omitted. The genitive and dative singular, and the nominative and vocative plural, end in *æ*, diphthong. The dative and ablative plural end in *is*; some few words have *abus*, in place of *is*, in the dative and ablative plural. The accusative singular ends in *am*; and the accusative plural in *as*. The genitive plural ends in *arum*.

Lesson 1.

The Latin words are here arranged in the same order as the English words are, and have a literal English translation under them. The English word, placed under a Latin word, gives the signification of the Latin word placed over it.

Observe, that in the Latin language great freedom is allowed in placing words in a sentence.

The numbers, placed before the Latin words in the lessons, denote the cases of this first declension, in the singular. When *pl.* is placed before the same numbers, the plural of the same cases is denoted: as, 1, *stella*, nominative singular, *pl.* 1, *stellæ*, nominative plural; 2, *stellæ*, genitive singular, *pl.* 2, *stellarum*, genitive plural, &c., as designated in the declension.

The three genders of the Latin language, when it is intended to direct the attention of the learner to them, will be denoted by *m.* for the *masculine*, *f.* for the *feminine*, and *n.* for the *neuter*, placed before the letters denoting declension: as, *f.* 1, *stella*, *f. pl.* 1, *stellæ*. As these genders are mostly determined, by the ending of the nominative singular of the noun, they do not always indicate the proper or natural masculine, feminine, or neuter, as in English; but many words that in English would be neuter, would be masculine or feminine in Latin.

The nominative singular, *a*, of this first declension denotes the feminine gender, and will require no sign or letter desig-

nating gender to point its gender out; but as there are some words in this declension with other genders, such exceptions may be denoted by the letters of genders, when required, in parenthesis, as (*m.*) *masculine*, (*f.*) *feminine*, (*n.*) *neuter*, placed after the word to which they belong: as, poëta,(*m.*)•• a poet.

When, in any case whatever, a letter, number, &c., as a sign, is placed in parentheses ( ), or brackets [ ], after a word, two dots•• follow such parentheses, or brackets, to indicate that the sign belongs to the preceding word, and not to the following one.

It is to be borne in mind, that the adjective agrees with its noun, in number, gender, and case; that is, the adjective is always in the same number, gender, and case, as the noun to which it relates.

When several English words are united together by a hyphen (-), and placed under a Latin word, such united words express the meaning of the one Latin word: as,

appellantur.
are-called.

When two or more English words, denoting one Latin word, have one or more words interposed between them, then the separated words, denoting the one Latin word, are designated by having the hyphen placed perpendicularly before them, or by the figure 1: as,

egregiâ virtute.
1 by (their) 1 excellent virtue [courage].

When, in Latin, a word is united to another word by being placed either before or after it, and is separated in order to correspond with the English, such separated word is denoted by a dot placed either before or after it, and either before or after the word from which it is separated; the dot being placed after each separated word, when the first, or separated word, is to be added to the end of the following word: as,

que· sua· *for* suaque.
and their their-and.

When an English word, or part of a sentence, is enclosed in parentheses ( ), it denotes that such word, or part of sentence, is added, in order to express the sense of the Latin more distinctly and intelligibly in English, and that it may be considered as a part of the English sentence: as,

[6]nostrâ Galli.
in-our (language) Gauls.

When an English word, or sentence, is enclosed in brackets [ ], it denotes that the word or sentence, thus inclosed, is used to express the meaning of the word or sentence immediately preceding, in better and more intelligible English, and may be used in place of such preceding word or sentence, so that the word or sentence does not constitute a part of the English sentence, but is to be considered as a substitute for a part or whole of the immediate preceding English sentence; the commencement of the English word or sentence, for which the word or sentence included in brackets is substituted, is indicated by a straight line: as,

linguâ ipsorum.
| in-(the)-language of-themselves [in their own language].

Here, "in their own language" is used for "in the language of themselves."

The word or sentence included in brackets may also be used as a species of explanatory note, without either constituting a part of the English sentence, or being a substitute for the part immediately preceding; in this case there is no straight line preceding the brackets: as,

quod erant cogniti.
because [1] they [the Boii] [1] were known.

Here "Boii" is used to explain "they."

Omnis [1]Gallia est divisa in tres partes: unam quarum
All Gaul is divided into three parts: one of-which

[pl.1]Belgæ incolunt; aliam Aquitani;
(the) Belgæ inhabit; another (of which) (the) Aquitani (inhabit); (and)

[4]tertiam, qui [6]linguâ
(the) third (of which, those inhabit), who | [1]in (the) [1]language

ipsorum appellantur [pl.1]Celtæ,
of-themselves [in their own language] are-called Celts, (but)

nostrâ Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter se
in-our (language) Gauls. All these differ among themselves

[6]linguâ, institutis, legibus. Flumen [1]Garumna dividit
in-language, in-customs, (and) in-laws. (The) river Garonne divides

Gallos ab Aquitanis, [1]Matrona et
(the) Gauls from (the) Aquitani, (and the rivers) Marne and

[1]Sequana à [pl.6]Belgis.
Seine (divide them) from (the) Belgæ.

The learner should make himself well acquainted with the signification of each Latin word in this first lesson, as also with all the cases of the first declension that occur therein: at the same time he should also begin to commit the form of the first declension to memory.

The learner should also remember, that the English word, placed immediately under a Latin word, denotes the meaning of such Latin word in English; and that, when there are two or more words placed under one Latin word, and united by a hyphen (-), such words, so united, express the meaning of the one Latin word over them. Also, when these two or more English words, denoting one Latin word, are separated from one another by an interposed English word, or words, that the words thus separated have the figure [1] placed before them, as in the above lesson:

Linguâ.
[1]in (the) [1]language.

Here "in" and "language," which express the Latin word "linguâ," are separated by the definite article "the," which is not expressed in Latin, as the Latin has no definite article.

The scholar will also remark, that the words included in parentheses ( ), in this lesson, have no corresponding word in Latin over them; and that these words, between parentheses, are merely added to make a more complete and intelligible English sentence, constituting, at the same time, a part of the English sentence, which, without them, would be defective. He will also observe, that in this lesson, the words included in brackets [ ], and following a word, or sentence, that has a straight line before it, does not form a continuous part of the English, but expresses, in intelligible English, a sentence immediately preceding it, that is either uncouth, or unintelligible by the mere translation of the Latin words; as,

qui	linguâ	ipsorum.
who	| [1]in (the) [1]language	of-themselves [in their own language].

Here it will be perceived, that "in their own language" is to be substituted for "in the language of them"; the vertical line | marking the commencement of the sentence in English, for which the words enclosed in brackets are to be substituted.

Lesson 2.

This lesson is the same as Lesson 1, only that the words are placed in the same order that the Latin author has them. The interlinear translation is here omitted.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum linguâ Celtæ, nostrâ Galli, appellantur. Hi omnes linguâ, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, à Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.

Exercises on Lessons 1 and 2.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Partes. Legibus. Appellantur. Tres. Omnis. Est. Divisa. Aliam. Differunt. Incolunt. Quarum. Qui.

Nostrâ. Unam. Tertiam. Ipsorum. Ab. A. Dividit. Se. Inter. Hi. Linguâ. Flumen. Institutis.

English words to be translated into Latin.

All. Three. Is. Inhabit. Divided. Are called. Third. Of themselves. Who. Our. Language. In a language. Of a language. Languages. To languages. Of languages. Divides. Differ. River. Among. Themselves. These. From. The Belgæ. From the Belgæ. Of the Belgæ. Gaul. Of Gaul. From Gaul. In Gaul. To Gaul.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Tres partes. Gallia est divisa. Omnis Gallia. Linguâ nostrâ. Ipsorum linguâ. Celtæ appellantur. Quarum Aquitani incolunt aliam. Hi omnes inter sė differunt. Legibus, institutis differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen dividit. A Belgis flumen Sequana dividit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

All Gaul is divided. One of which the Belgæ inhabit. Into three parts. The other the Aquitani inhabit. Who, in our language, are called Gauls. In their own language are called Celts. These differ among themselves. They differ in language. The river Seine divides the Gauls from the Belgæ. Among themselves.

In these two first lessons it is only the cases of the first declension that the pupil is required to point out. He might also be exercised in declining the several nouns, in the first declension, that occur in these two lessons: as, *lingua*, in singular and plural; *Gallia*, in singular; and *Galliæ* and *Belgæ*, in plural.

These exercises may be written, and also translated orally from the book.

NOTE.—Some few peculiarities and exceptions, in this first

declension, as also those Greek nouns having a peculiar form, will be reserved for the second or full course.

SECOND DECLENSION.

The Latin words of the second declension end in *us*, *um*, or *r*, in their nominative singular. Those nouns that end in *us* or *r* in the nominative singular, are mostly in the masculine gender, though not all; those ending in *um* are neuter. Those ending in *r*, in the nominative singular, have two forms; in the one, the termination of the cases are placed after the nominative without change: as, Nom. *puer*, Gen. *pueri;* in the other, ending *er*, the *e* before the *r* is dropped in the other cases: as, *ager*, *agri*.

All nouns of the second declension are known by having their genitive singular in *i*. In nouns ending in *us*, or *um*, the *us* or *um* is changed into *i;* in those ending in *r*, the *i* of the genitive is added to *r;* but in the greater part of those ending in *er*, the *e* is dropped before *r* in the genitive and other cases.

Form of Second Declension in "us": as, "dominus—master."

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Dominus; a master, .	us.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Domini; masters, .	i.
2. *Gen.* Domini; of a master, or master's, ...	i.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Dominorum; of masters, ...	orum.
3. *Dat.* Domino; to a master, .	o.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Dominis; to masters,	is.
4. *Acc.* Dominum; a master,	um.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Dominos; masters, .	os.
5. *Voc.* Domine; O master, . .	e.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Domini; O masters, .	i.
6. *Abl.* Domino; in, with, by, or from a master, ...	o.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Dominis; in, with, by, or from masters, ...	is.

Observe, the nominative singular of this form ends in *us*, the genitive singular, nominative and vocative plural end in *i*, the dative and ablative singular end in *o*, the accusative singular ends in *um*, the vocative singular ends in *e*, the dative and ablative plural end in *is*, the genitive plural ends in *orum*, and the accusative plural in *os*.

To designate the second declension, the terminations of the

nominative, denoting the four different forms of this second declension, are placed before the numbers denoting cases: as, s. 1, *dominus;* r. 1, *puer*, when the *e* before *r*, in the nominative singular, is retained, in the other cases; *er.* 1, *ager*, Gen. *agri*, when the *e* is dropped before *r*, in all the cases, except the nominative singular; *m.* 1 denotes the form *m*: as, *m.* 1, *regnum.*

Lesson 3.

[s.pl.1] Helvetii jam transduxerant [pl.4] suas [pl.4] copias per
(The) Helvetii [1] had now [1] led-over their forces through

[pl.4] angustias, et fines [s.pl.2] Sequanorum, et pervenerant
(the) defiles, and borders [1] of (the) [1] Sequani, and had-come

in fines [s.pl.2] Æduorum, que· populabantur [er.pl.4] agros
into (the) borders [1] of (the) [1] Ædui, and did-lay-waste [1] (the) fields

eorum·. [s.pl.1] Ædui quum non possent
of-them [their fields]. (The) Ædui when they-[1] were not [1] able

defendere se, que· sua· ab his,
to-defend themselves, and their (property) from these (Helvetii),

mittunt [s.pl.4] legatos ad Cæsarem rogatum [m.4] auxilium;
send ambassadors to Cæsar an-asking aid;

"se omni tempore,
(and to say, that) "they | in-all time [at all times],

meritos esse ita de [s.6] Romano [s.6] populo,
| to-have-merited [had deserved] so (well) of (the) Roman people,

ut [er.pl.1] agri debuerint non vastari, penè
that (their) fields ought not to-be-ravaged, almost

conspectu nostri exercitûs, [r.pl.1] liberi eorum
[1] in (the) [1] sight of-our army, (the) | children of-them [their children]

abduci in servitutem [m.pl.1] oppida
to-be-led-away into slavery (and their) towns

expugnari."
to-be-taken-by-storm."

It will be observed in this third lesson, that *que* (and) has a dot after it, which indicates that it is to be united to the end of the word following it, that has also a dot after it. This *que* (and) is never used alone, but is always added to the end of a word.

Lesson 4.

Helvetii jam per angustias, et fines Sequanorum, suas copias transduxerant, et in Æduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædui, quum se suaque ab his defendere non possent, legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: "ita se, omni tempore, de populo Romano meritos esse, ut penè in conspectu exercitûs nostri, agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint."

Exercises on Lessons 3 and 4.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Exercitûs. Angustias. Populus. Fines. Abduci. Suas. Populabantur. Copias. Jam. Mittunt. Quum. Transduxerant. Legatos. Auxilium. Conspectu. Nostri. Defendere. Agri. Oppida. Liberi.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Now. Had. Led. Over. Fields. They arrived. They send. The borders. Laid waste. In the sight. Of our. Assistance. Army. Towns. Ambassadors. Of an ambassador. To an ambassador. From ambassadors. Children. Of children. With children. From the people.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Helvetii suas copias transduxerant. In fines pervenerant. Eorumque agros populabantur. Se defendere non possent. Ad Cæsarem mittunt. Omni tempore. In conspectu exercitûs nostri. Liberi in servitutem abduci. Oppida expugnari non debuerint.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

The Helvetii had led their forces through the defiles. They had come into the borders of the Ædui. They did lay

waste their fields. The Ædui send ambassadors to Cæsar. They could not defend themselves. Nearly in the sight of our army. At all times. To be led into slavery. From the Roman people. Ought not. Their children.

The attention of the pupil is now to be directed to the second declension, as well as to the first declension. He might also be exercised in declining the several words of the first and second declensions, that occur in the third and fourth lessons; but especially the form *us*, of the second declension.

Form in "um": as, "regnum, a kingdom."

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations
1. *Nom.* Regnum; a kingdom,	um.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Regna; kingdoms, .	a.
2. *Gen.* Regni; of a kingdom,	i.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Regnorum; of kingdoms, ...	orum.
3. *Dat.* Regno; to a kingdom,	o.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Regnis; to kingdoms,	is.
4. *Acc.* Regnum; a kingdom,	um.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Regna; kingdoms, .	a.
5. *Voc.* Regnum; O kingdom,	um.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Regna; O kingdoms,	a.
6. *Abl.* Regno; in, with, by, or from a kingdom, . .	o.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Regnis; in with, by, or from kingdoms, . . .	is.

The nominative singular of this form ends in *um;* the accusative singular and vocative singular end also in *um;* the nominative, accusative and vocative plural end in *a;* all the other cases are like those of the form *us.*

Lesson 5.

Jam ubi arbitrati sunt se paratos esse
Now when they-deemed themselves to-have-been-prepared

ad eam rem, incendunt omnia
| to that thing [for leaving their country], they-set-on-fire all

sua [m.pl.4] oppida ad duodecim [s.6] numero, [s.pl.4] vicos ad
their towns to twelve in-number, (all their) villages to

[s.pl.4] quadringentos, [m.pl.4] reliqua [m.pl.4] privata
four-hundred, (in number, and all the) remaining private

[m.pl.4] ædificia; comburunt omne [m.4] frumentum, præter
buildings; they-burn all (their) corn, except

quod erant portaturi cum· se·;
what they-were-about-to-carry with themselves; (so)

ut spe reditionis domum sublatâ, essent
that (the) hope of-a-return home being-taken-away, they-might-be

paratiores ad omnia $^{\text{m.pl.4}}$pericula subeunda:
more-ready for all dangers necessary-to-be-undergone:

jubent quemque efferre domo $^{\text{m.pl.4}}$molita $^{\text{m.pl.4}}$cibaria
they-order each-one to-bring from-home ground provisions

trium mensium sibi.
of-three months for-himself [enough for three months for himself].

In this fifth lesson the dot placed after *cum·* and *se·*, denotes that *cum* is to be placed after *se*, so as to form one word, *secum*.

Lesson 6.

Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt: frumentum omne, præter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt; ut, domum reditionis, spe sublatâ, paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo effere jubent.

Exercises on Lessons 5 and 6.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Oppida. Vicos. Duodecim. Ædificia. Jubent. Rem. Incendunt. Frumentum. Præter. Spe. Ad. Domum. Molita. Quadringentos.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Now. To bring from. Their. Private. Towns. In the town. Themselves. In number. Remaining. Of a return. They order. Dangers. In danger. Of danger.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Vicos incendunt. Oppida sua omnia. Numero ad duodecim. Ad eam rem paratos esse. Paratiores ad omnia

essent. Privata ædificia. Frumentum omne comburunt. Quod secum portaturi erant. Domo efferre jubent.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

They set all their towns on fire. To the number of four hundred. They set fire to private buildings. Except what they were about to carry with them. They burn all the corn. Hope being taken away. Dangers necessary to be encountered. They might be more ready. To bring from home.

Form of Second Declension in "r": as, "puer—a boy."

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Puer; a boy, ...	r.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Pueri; boys, . . .	i.
2. *Gen.* Pueri; of a boy, . . .	i.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Puerorum; of boys,	orum.
3. *Dat.* Puero; to a boy, . .	o.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Pueris; to boys, . .	is.
4. *Acc.* Puerum; a boy, . .	um.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Pueros; boys, . .	os.
5. *Voc.* Puer; O boy, ...	r.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Pueri; boys, . . .	i.
6. *Abl.* Puero; in, with, from, or by a boy, ...	o.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Pueris; in, with, from, or by boys, ...	is.

Form of Second Declension in "er": as, "ager—a field."

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Ager; a field, . . .	ger.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Agri; fields, . . .	gri.
2. *Gen.* Agri; of a field, . .	gri.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Agrorum; of fields,	grorum.
3. *Dat.* Agro; to a field, . .	gro.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Agris; to fields, . .	gris.
4. *Acc.* Agrum; field, . .	grum.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Agros; fields, . .	gros.
5. *Voc.* Ager; O field, . . .	ger.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Agri; O fields, . .	gri.
6. *Abl.* Agro; in, with, from, or by a field, ...	gro.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Agris; in, with, from, or by fields, ...	gris.

In the form *r*, of *puer—a boy*, all the cases are the same as in the form *us*, of *dominus—a master*, except the nominative and vocative singular, both of which end, in this declension, in *r*. The terminations of all the other cases, except the vocative singular, which is here like the nominative singular, are added to the nominative singular.

The form *er*, of *ager—a field*, is exactly like the form *r*, of *puer—a boy*, with the exception, that in all the cases, except the nominative and vocative singular, the *e* is dropped before *r*, as *agri* in place of *ageri*.

Lesson 7.

Fecit id maximè eâ ratione, quòd noluit
He-did that chiefly with-that reason, because he-wished-not

eum [s.4] locum, unde [s.pl.1] Helvetii discesserant
(that) that place, whence (the) Helvetii had-departed

vacare, ne propter bonitatem
to-be-void (of inhabitants), lest on-account-of (the) goodness

[er.pl.2] agrorum [s.pl.1] Germani, qui incolunt trans
[1] of (the) [1] fields (the) Germans, who dwell beyond (the river)

[s.4] Rhenum transirent à suis finibus in fines
Rhine might-pass-over from their borders into (the) territories

[s.pl.2] Helvetiorum, et essent [s.pl.1] finitimi [3] provinciæ
[1] of (the) [1] Helvetii, and would-be neighbors [1] to (our) [1] province

[2] Galliæ, que· Allobrogibus·. Concessit [s.pl.3] Æduis
of-Gaul, and [1] to (the) [1] Allobroges. He-granted [1] to (the) [1] Ædui

petentibus, ut collocarent [s.pl.4] Boios in suis
asking (for it), that they-might-place (the) Boii in their

finibus, quòd cogniti erant
(own) territories, because [1] they [the Boii] [1] had-been-known

[6] egregiâ virtute: quibus illi dederunt [er.pl.4] agros,
[1] by (their) [1] excellent courage: to-whom they gave lands,

que· quos· postea receperunt, in parem conditionem
| and whom [1] they afterwards [1] received, in equal condition

juris que· libertatis·, atque ipsi erant.
of-right and of-liberty, and (as) they-themselves were [and afterwards they conferred on these Boii, the same rights and privileges that they themselves enjoyed].

In this lesson, [the Boii] between brackets, having no straight line before any of the words preceding it, is to be considered merely as an explanatory note for "they," preceding it, and is not to be substituted for it.

Lesson 8.

Id eâ maximè ratione fecit, quòd noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant vacare; ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, è suis finibus in Hel-

vetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliæ provinciæ, Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Æduis, quòd egregiâ virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

Exercises on Lessons 7 and 8.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Locum. Loci. Loco. Quòd. Fecit. Unde. Agro. Trans. Incolunt. Provincia. Concessit. Virtute. Quos. Libertatis. Receperunt. Erant. Postea. Parem. Illi. Conditionem. Atque.

English words to be translated into Latin.

They. Themselves. Territories. Liberty. Beyond. Equal. Afterwards. In the fields. Goodness. They had departed. In the place. By courage. Gave. They might place. That. He granted. In the province. Neighbors. Would be.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

In parem conditionem. Quos receperunt. Cogniti erant virtute. Id eâ ratione fecit. Propter bonitatem agrorum. Noluit eum locum vacare. Qui incolunt. In Helvetiorum fines transirent. Finitimi Allobrogibus. Quibus Ædui dederunt agros. Petentibus Æduis concessit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

And would be neighbors to the Helvetii. In equal condition of liberty. He granted to the Ædui. Whom they received. To whom they gave. By their excellent courage. That they might place the Boii. In their own territories. Lest the Germans might pass over the Rhine. Who dwell beyond the Rhine. He did not wish the place to be void

(of inhabitants). On account of the goodness of the fields. He did that with that reason.

All further details respecting the second declension will be left for the second, or full course.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Latin nouns of the third declension have a great variety of terminations in the nominative singular, if the terminating syllable of such nominative is taken into consideration. The terminating single letters in the nominative singular of the third declension are twelve, namely: five vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, and seven consonants, *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*.

All nouns of the third declension are known by having the genitive singular in *is*. When the genitive singular has a greater number of syllables, or letters, than the nominative singular, such genitive singular is said to increase.

The third declension has all the three genders, denoted by the different terminations of the nominative singular, but such terminations are subject to many exceptions.

Nouns having, in their nominative singular, *o*, *er*, *or*, *os*, and *es*, increasing in the genitive singular, are generally masculine.

Nouns having *as*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *x*, *s*, preceded by a consonant, and *es*, not increasing in the genitive, are generally feminine.

Nouns terminating, in their nominative singular, in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are generally neuter.

To distinguish the third declension from all the other declensions, the terminating letter or syllable of the nominative singular is used, followed by the genitive singular in *is*, with such letters before *is* that are changed from the terminating letters or syllables of the nominative singular: as, *s*–*tis* in *ars*, Gen. *artis*—*art*. Here *tis* is substituted for *s* to form the genitive singular, and *s* is substituted for *tis* to form the nominative singular; the nominative singular being always

the form of the word, to be looked for in the dictionary. So, also, *o–onis* in *sermo,* Gen. *sermonis — speech; es–itis* in *miles,* Gen. *militis—a soldier; ter–tris* in *pater,* Gen. *patris —a father; es–is* in *rupes,* Gen. *rupis—rock; is–is* in *turris,* Gen. *turris—a tower;* and in like manner for others. These terminations are always placed before the figures denoting cases.

Forms of Third Declension — General Form.

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Sermo; speech, . .	o.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Sermones; speeches,	ones.
2. *Gen.* Sermonis; of speech, .	onis.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Sermonum; of speeches, ...	onum.
3. *Dat.* Sermoni; to speech, .	oni.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Sermonibus; to speeches, ...	onibus.
4. *Acc.* Sermonem; speech,	onem.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Sermones; speeches,	ones.
5. *Voc.* Sermo; O speech, . .	o.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Sermones; O speeches,	ones.
6. *Abl.* Sermone; in, with, from, or by speech, . .	one.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Sermonibus; in, with, &c., speeches, .	onibus.

The nominative and vocative singular are alike in this form, and have different terminations; the genitive singular ends in *is,* the dative singular ends in *i,* the accusative singular in *em,* the ablative singular in *e;* the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural end in *es,* the genitive plural in *um,* the dative and ablative plural in *ibus.*

The dative singular is formed by changing the *is* of the genitive singular into *i,* the accusative singular by changing the same *is* into *em,* and the ablative singular by changing this *is* into *e;* the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, are formed by changing the *is* of the genitive singular into *es,* the genitive plural by changing the same *is* into *um,* and the dative and ablative plural by changing the same *is* into *ibus.*

Lesson 9.

[r–ris.1] Arar (*m.*) ••	est	[en–inis.1] flumen,	quod	influit	in
(The) Arar	is	(a) river,	which	flows	into

[s.4] Rhodanum	[is–is.6] incredibili	[as–atis.6] lenitate	per	[is–is.pl.4] fines
(the) Rhone	with-incredible	slowness	through	(the) territories

[s.pl.2]Æduorum et [s.pl.2]Sequanorum, ita ut, non
[1]of (the) [1]Ædui and [1]of (the) [1]Sequani, so that, it [1]is not

possit judicari [s.pl.6]oculis in [4]utram [s–tis.4]partem
[1]possible to-judge by (the) eyes | towards which-of-the-two part(s)

fluat; [s.pl.1]Helvetii transibant
it-flows [in what direction it flows]; (the) Helvetii did-pass-over

id, junctis [is–is.pl.6]ratibus ac
that (river), having-joined-together rafts and

[ter–tris.pl.6]lintribus.(*f.*)•• Ubi [r–ris.1]Cæsar factus
boats (to cross over on them). When Cæsar | was

est [r–ris.1]certior per [or–oris.pl.4]exploratores,
made more-certain [was informed] by by scouts, (that)

[s.pl.4]Helvetios jam transduxisse id [en–inis.4]flumen tres
(the) Helvetii [1]had now [1]led-over that river three

[s–tis.4]partes [pl.2]copiarum, verò [4]quartam [s–tis.4]partem
parts [1]of (their) [1]forces, but (that) the fourth part

reliquam esse citra [en–inis.4]flumen [r–ris.4]Ararim; de
remained on-this-side (of the) river Arar; about

[6]tertiâ [6]vigiliâ, profectus è [m.pl.6]castris cum tribus
(the) third watch, having-set-out from [1]from (the) [1]camp with three

[o–onis.pl.6]legionibus,(*f.*)•• pervenit ad eam [s–tis.4]partem,
legions, he-arrived at that part

quæ nondum transierat [en–inis.4]flumen:
(of the Helvetii), which [1]had not-yet [1]passed-over (the) river:

aggressus eos [s.pl.4]impeditos et [s–tis.pl.4]inopinantes concidit
having-attacked them embarrassed and unawares he-slew

[4]magnam [s–tis.4]partem eorum; [m.pl.1]reliqui mandârunt sese
(a) great part of-them; (the) rest | committed themselves

[3]fugæ atque abdiderunt in [pl.4]proximas
to-flight [fled] and hid (themselves) in (the) nearest

[pl.4]silvas.
woods.

The learner's attention is now to be directed also to the third declension, as well as to the first and second.

It is only necessary to designate the gender when it is an exception to any of the general rules for forming gender. *Arar* is here noted as an exception to neuter nouns in *ar;* but rivers are, by a general rule, masculine.

Lesson 10.

Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Æduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit: id Helvetii, ratibus ac lintribus junctis, transibant. Ubi per exploratores Cæsar certior factus est, tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam verò partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse; de tertiâ vigiliâ cum legionibus tribus è castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quæ nondum flumen transierat; eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugæ mandârunt, atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt.

Exercises on Lessons 9 and 10.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Flumen. Silvas. Castris. Influit. Lenitate. Oculis. Transibant. Tertia. Pars. Legionibus. Vigilia. Copiæ Exploratores. Tres. Fuga. Ubi. Legio.

English words to be translated into Latin.

By the eyes. Through. With incredible. A boat. With the scouts. To the river. The forces. A part. In a legion. Of the legion. To the legions. Of the camps. He arrived. He slew. Of them. The rest. The woods. Hid. The nearest.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quod in Rhodanum influit. Arar est flumen incredibili lenitate. Oculis judicari non possit. Id flumen Helvetii transibant. Quartam partem copiarum. Per exploratores certior factus est. De tertiâ vigiliâ è castris profectus. Cum legionibus tribus ad eam partem pervenit. Eos inopinantes aggressus. In proximas silvas abdiderunt sese Magnam partem concidit. Reliqui sese fugæ mandârunt.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Having set out from the camp. The rest fled. They hid themselves in the nearest woods. In what part it flows. When Cæsar was informed. The Helvetii had led over the river three parts of their forces. On this side of the river. A river, which flows into the Rhone. With incredible slowness. So that it was impossible to be judged.

Forms of Third Declension — "ium" in Gen. Plural.

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Rupes; a rock, . . .	es.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Rupes; rocks, . . .	es.
2. *Gen.* Rupis; of a rock, . .	is.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Rupium; of rocks, .	ium.
3. *Dat.* Rupi; to a rock, . .	i.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Rupibus; to rocks, .	ibus.
4. *Acc.* Rupem; rock, . . .	em.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Rupes; rocks, . . .	es.
5. *Voc.* Rupes; O rock, . . .	es.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Rupes; O rocks, . .	es.
6. *Abl.* Rupe; in, with, from, or by a rock, ...	e.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Rupibus; in, with, from, or by rocks, . . .	ibus.

The terminations of this form follow the general form above exemplified by *sermo—a speech,* except the genitive plural, which ends in *ium,* in place of *um.*

The nouns of the third declension that have *ium,* in place of *um,* in the genitive plural, are those that end in *es* or *is,* in their nominative singular, and do not increase in the genitive; those monosyllables that end in two consonants: as, *ars, artium — art;* also nouns of two or more syllables, ending, in their nominative singular, in *ns* or *rs:* as, *cliens, clientium—a client;* likewise, nouns which have *i,* or *e,* or *i* only, in their ablative singular, have also *ium* in the genitive plural, besides some few other nouns.

Lesson 11.

[6] Primâ [x–cis.6] luce, quum [s.1] summus
| [1] In (the) first [1] light [at dawn of day], when (the) highest

[s–tis.1] mons(*m.*)•• teneretur à [s.6] Tito [s.6] Labieno, ipse
mountain was-held by Titus Labienus, he-himself [Cæsar]

abesset non longius mille et [s.pl.6]quingentis
was-distant not farther (than) a thousand and five-hundred

passibus ab [m.pl.6]castris [is–is.pl.2]hostium, neque ut posteà
paces from (the) camp [1]of (the) [1]enemy, nor as [1]he afterwards

comperit ex [s.pl.6]captivis, aut adventus ipsius aut
[1]found from (the) captives, either (the) arrival of-himself or

[s.2]Labieni cognitus esset; [s.1]Considius, [s.6]equo
of Labienus had-been-known; Considius, (his) horse

[s.6]admisso, accurrit ad eum; dicit,
being-spurred-on, runs to him [Cæsar]; (and) he says, (that)

[s-tis.4]montem,(*m.*)•• quem voluerit occupari à
(the) mountain, which he-wished to-be-occupied by

[s.6]Labieno, teneri ab [is–is.pl.6]hostibus; se
Labienus, was-held by (the) enemy; (and that) he-himself

cognovisse id à [m.pl.6]Gallicis [m.pl.6]armis, atque
knew that from (the) Gallic arms, and

[e–is.pl.6]insignibus. [r-is.1]Cæsar subducit suas [pl.4]copias in
ensigns. Cæsar leads his forces to

[s.4]proximum [is–is.4]collem; (*m.*)•• instruit aciem.
(the) nearest hill; (and) draws-up (the) line-of-battle.

[s.1]Labienus, ut præceptum erat ei à [r–is.6]Cæsare,
Labienus, as had-been-directed him by Cæsar, (that)

ne committeret [m.4]prœlium, nisi [pl.1]copiæ
he-[1]should not [1]engage (in) battle, | unless (the) forces

ipsius visæ essent prope [m.pl.4]castra
of-himself had been seen [unless his forces were seen] near (the) camp

[is–is.pl.2]hostium, ut impetus fieret in [is–is.pl.4]hostes
[1]of (the) [1]enemy, that (the) attack might-be-made against (the) enemy

undique uno [us–oris.6]tempore,
on-every-side, | one time [at the same time],

[s-tis.6]monte (*m.*)•• [s.6]occupato, expectabat
(the) mountain being-occupied (by Labienus), he-waited-for

[er.pl.4]nostros que· abstinebat [m.6]prœlio·.
our (men) and he-abstained from-battle.

Lesson 12.

Primâ luce, quum summus mons à Tito Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset; neque, ut posteà ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius ad·

ventus, aut Labieni, cognitus esset; Considius, equo admisso, ad eum accurrit; dicit, montem, quem à Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se à Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Cæsar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei præceptum à Cæsare, ne prœlium committeret, nisi ipsius copiæ prope hostium castra visæ essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret; monte occupato, nostros exspectabat, prœlioque abstinebat.

Exercises on Lessons 11 and 12.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Lux. Mons. Mille. Luce. Hostium. Captivus. Adventus. Equus. Dicit. Occupari. Hostis. Insigne. Collis. Prœlio. Tempus. Monte. Abstinebat.

English words to be translated into Latin.

The forces. Of the enemy. Of the enemies. The mountain. He awaited. A hill. Ensign. By the enemies. He runs. Horses. Of horses. Arrival. A captive. Five hundred. Was distant. The highest.

Latin sentences to be translated into English

Ipsius adventus cognitus esset. Ut ex captivis comperit. Ab hostium castris. Ad eum accurrit. Dicit, montem ab hostibus teneri. Se id insignibus cognovisse. In proximum collem aciem instruit. Ut erat Labieno præceptum. Undique impetus in hostes fieret. Labienus nostros exspectabat. Prœlio abstinebat.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

At dawn of day. Either his arrival, or that of Labienus, was known. He was distant not farther than a thousand paces from the camp. He said that the mountain was held by the enemy. He led his forces to the nearest hill. Labi-

enus, as it was commanded him, awaited our men. That, at the same time, an attack might be made on the enemy. Labienus abstained from battle.

Forms of Third Declension—"em" or "im" in Accusative Singular.

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Turris; a tower, . . .	is.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Turres; towers, . .	es.
2. *Gen.* Turris; of a tower, . .	is.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Turrium; of towers,	ium.
3. *Dat.* Turri; to a tower, . .	i.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Turribus; to towers,	ibus.
4. *Acc.* Turrem *or* Turrim; tower, ...	em *or* im.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Turres; towers, . .	es.
5. *Voc.* Turris; O tower, . .	is.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Turres; O towers, .	es.
6. *Abl.* Turre *or* Turri; in, with, by, &c., a tower, .	e *or* i.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Turribus; in, with, from, &c., towers, . . .	ibus.

This form differs from the general form by having its accusative singular in *em* or *im*, its ablative singular in *e* or *i*, and its genitive plural in *ium*. Some of the nouns of this form have *im* only, others *em* or *im*.

If the accusative singular has *im* only, the ablative has *i* only; if the accusative singular has *em* or *im*, the ablative has *e* or *i*.

The genitive plural is always in *ium*.

Lesson 13.

Ubi ea dies venit, quam constituerat cum
When that day came, which he-had-appointed with

[s.pl.6] legatis, et [s.pl.1] legati reverterunt ad eum,
(the) ambassadors, and (the) ambassadors returned to him,

negat se, [s-ris.6] more et [m.6] exemplo
he-denies (that) he, [1] by (the) [1] custom and [1] by (the) [1] example

[s.2] Romani [s.2] populi, posse dare [er-ineris.4] iter (*n.*)•• ulli
[1] of (the) [1] Roman people, could grant (a) passage to-any (one)

per [4] provinciam; et ostendit
through (the Roman) province; and he-shows (that he)

prohibiturum, si conentur facere
was-about-to-prohibit (it), | if they-attempt to-make

[is-is.4] vim. [s.pl.1] Helvetii,
force [if they attempted to force a passage]. (The) Helvetii,

dejecti eâ spe, conati,
| cast-down from-that hope [disappointed in that hope], endeavored,

nonnunquam interdiu, sepiùs noctu, si possent
sometimes in-the-day-time, more-often by-night, if they-could

perrumpere, [is-is.pl.6] navibus
| break-through [force the passage of the Rhone], (some of them), ships

junctis, que· compluribus [is-is.pl.6] ratibus·
[boats] being-joined-together, and many rafts

factis, alii [m.pl.6] vadis
being-made, (endeavored to pass over on them), other [1] by (the) [1] fords

[s.2] Rhodani, quà erat [1] minima [o-inis.1] altitudo (*f.*) ••
[1] of (the) [1] Rhone, where (there) was (the) least depth

[en-inis.2] fluminis; repulsi [o-onis.6] munitione (*f.*) •• [us-eris.2] operis
[1] of (the) [1] river; repulsed | [1] by (the) [1] fortification [1] of (the) [1] work

et concursu,
[by the strength and defences of the works] and [1] by (the) [1] encounter,

et [m.pl.6] telis [es-i'is.pl.2] militum, destiterunt hoc conatu.
and weapons [1] of (the) [1] soldiers, they-desisted from-this endeavor.

Lesson 14.

Ubi eâ dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit; et legati ad eum reverterunt; negat, "se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare: et si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit." Helvetii eâ spe dejecti, navibus junctis, ratibusque compluribus factis, alii, vadis Rhodani, quà minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, sæpiùs noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione, et militum concursu, et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

Exercises on Lessons 13 and 14.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Legatus. Dies. Exemplo. Iter. Venit. Dare. Vim. Ostendit. Spe. Navibus. Vis. Navis. Vi. Ratibus.

Flumen. Vadis. Perrumpere. Opus. Miles. Munitio. Hoc. Telis.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Of the soldiers. Fortification. By night. The ford. A ship. Force. By force. He denies. Custom. Day. Ambassadors. They returned. Road.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Helvetii eâ spe dejecti. Ratibus compluribus factis. Ubi dies venit. Legati reverterunt. Se posse iter ulli dare. Si vim facere conentur. Vadis Rhodani. Si perrumpere possent. Telis repulsi. Conatu destiterunt.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

The ambassadors return to him. By the custom of the Roman people. That day came. If they should attempt force. Where the river was least deep. More often by night. If they could force a passage. They desist from this endeavor.

Forms of Third Declension — Neuters Plural in "ia."

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Sedile; a seat, . . .	e.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Sedilia; seats, . . .	ia.
2. *Gen.* Sedilis; of a seat, . .	is.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Sedilium; of seats, .	ium.
3. *Dat.* Sedili; to a seat, . . .	i.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Sedilibus; to seats, .	ibus.
4. *Acc.* Sedile; seat, ...	e.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Sedilia; seats, . .	ia.
5. *Voc.* Sedile; O seat, . . .	e.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Sedilia; O seats, . .	ia.
6. *Abl.* Sedili; in, with, by, &c., a seat, ...	i.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Sedilibus; in, with, by, &c., seats, ...	ibus.

This form differs from the general form by having the ablative singular in *i*, in place of *e;* the nominative plural in *ia*, in place of *a;* and the genitive plural in *ium*, in place of *um*.

It is to be observed, that all neuter nouns, of all declensions, have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular

alike: that is, the accusative and vocative singular end like the nominative singular; and, also, that in all declensions the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural end in *a*.

Those neuters that end in *i*, in the ablative singular: that is, those ending in *e*, *l*, and *ar*, in the nominative singular, have *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, in place of *a*

Lesson 15.

Postquam Cæsar advertit [s.4]animum id, subducit
After Cæsar turns (his) mind (to) that, he-leads

[pl.4]suas [pl.4]copias in [s.4]proximum [is–is.4]collem (*m.*)•• que· misit
his forces to (the) nearest hill and sent

equitatum·, qui sustineret impetum [is–is.pl.2]hostium.
cavalry, that might-sustain (the) attack [1]of (the) [1]enemy.

Interim ipse instruxit [x–icis.4]triplicem aciem
[1]In-(the)-[1]mean-time [1]he-himself [1]drew-up (a) triple line

quatuor [pl.2]veteranarum [o–onis.pl.2]legionum (*f.*)•• in [s.6]medio
of-four veteran legions | in middle

[is–is.6]colle; (*m.*)•• ita utì collocaret
hill [in the middle part of the hill]; so that he-might-place

duas [o–onis.pl.4]legiones (*f*)••. supra se, in [m.6]summo
two legions above himself, | on (the) highest

[m.6]jugo, quas
top (of the hill), [on the summit thereof], which (legions) he-[1]had

proximè conscripserat in [or–oris.6]citeriore [6]Galliâ, et
very-lately [1]levied in hither Gaul, and (likewise)

[e–is.pl.4]omnia [m.pl.4]auxilia, et compleret [m.4]totum
all (the) auxiliaries, and (so that) he-might-fill (the) whole

[ns–ntis.4]montem (*m.*)•• [o–inis.pl.6]hominibus. Interea
mountain with-men. [1]In-(the)-[1]mean-time

jussit [pl.4]sarcinas conferri in [s.4]unum
he-ordered (the) baggage to-be-brought-together into one

[s.4]locum, et eum muniri, ab iis, qui
place, and (ordered) that (place) to-be-defended, by those, who

constiterant in [or–oris.6]superiore acie. [s.pl.1]Helvetii
stood in (the) higher line-of-battle. (The) Helvetii

secuti	cum	[is-is.pl.6] omnibus	[s.pl.6] suis	[s.pl.6] carris,
followed	with	all	their	wagons, (and)

contulerunt	[m.pl.4] impedimenta	in	[s.4] unum	[s.4] locum.
brought-together (their)	baggage	into	one	place.

Lesson 16.

Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret, hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim, in colle medio, triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quatuor veteranarum, ita utì supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Galliâ citeriore proximè conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocaret, ac totum montem hominibus compleret. Intereà sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab iis, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt.

Exercises on Lessons 15 and 16.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Animus. Collis. Misit. Equitatum. Hostium. Omnia. Colle. Legiones. Mons. Homo. Jussit. Locus. Omnibus. Impedimenta.

English words to be translated into Latin.

In the mean time. Wagons. They brought. To be defended. The mountains. Highest. Four. Of the veterans. He himself. Drew up. He sent. The attack. The nearest. Afterwards.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Copias in proximum collem subducit. Legiones, quas in Galliâ conscripserat. Triplicem aciem instruxit. Sarcinas in unum locum conferri jussit. Helvetii secuti cum suis carris. Omnia impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

In the mean time he ordered the baggage to be brought into one place. Cæsar ordered that place to be defended. Cæsar sent the cavalry, who might sustain the attack of the enemy. He placed all the auxiliaries. He drew up a triple line of battle. Four legions of veterans. He filled the mountain with men.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension have two terminations in the nominative singular, *us* and *u*.

Those in *us* are, with but few exceptions, masculine; those in *u* are neuter.

This fourth declension is known by having its genitive singular in *us*, over the *u* of which a circumflex is generally placed: as, *ûs*.

To distinguish this fourth declension, the genitive, ending in *ûs*, is placed before the numbers denoting case, for the form in *us*; and for the form in *u*, *u* alone is placed before the numbers denoting case.

Form of Fourth Declension in "us."

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Fructus; fruit, . . .	us.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Fructus; fruits, . .	us.
2. *Gen.* Fructûs; of fruit, . .	ûs.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Fructuum; of fruits,	uum.
3. *Dat.* Fructui; to fruit, . .	ui.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Fructibus; to fruits,	ibus.
4. *Acc.* Fructum; fruit, . . .	um.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Fructus; fruits, . .	us.
5. *Voc.* Fructus; O fruit, . .	us.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Fructus; O fruits, .	us.
6. *Abl.* Fructu; in, with, by, &c., fruit, ...	u.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Fructibus; in, with, by, &c., fruits, ...	ibus.

In this fourth declension the nominative, genitive, and vocative singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike, all ending in *us*; the genitive singular being generally distinguished by having a circumflex over it: as, *ûs*. The dative singular ends in *ui*, the accusative sin-

gular in *um*, the ablative singular in *u;* the genitive plural ends in *uum*, and the dative and ablative plural in *ibus.*

The dative singular sometimes has *u*, in place of *ui;* and some words have *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural, in place of *ibus.*

Domus—a house, feminine, is partly declined according to the fourth, and partly according to the second declension. and has this form:

Singular.	Plural.
1. *Nom.* Domus.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Domus.
2. *Gen.* Domûs *or* Domi.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Domuum *or* Domorum.
3. *Dat.* Domui *or* Domo.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Domibus.
4. *Acc.* Domum.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Domus *or* Domos.
5. *Voc.* Domus.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Domus.
6. *Abl.* Domo.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Domibus.

The genitive singular in *i* denotes "at home"; the genitive singular in *ûs* denotes "of a house."

Lesson 17.

Postero die movent [m.pl.4] castra ex eo [s.6] loco;
[1] On (the) [1] next day they-move (their) camp from that place;

[r-ris.1] Cæsar facit idem, que· præmittit [is-is.4] omnem
Cæsar does (the) same, and sends-forward all

[ûs.4] equitatum· ad [s.4] numerum quatuor millium, quem habebat
(the) cavalry to (the) number of-four thousand, which he-had

coactum ex [is-is.6] omni [6] provinciâ, et [s.pl.6] Æduis
collected from all (the) province, and [1] from (the) [1] Ædui

atque [s.pl.6] sòciis eorum; qui
| and [1] from (the) [1] allies of-them [and from their allies]; who

videant in quas [s-tis.pl.4] partes [is-is.pl.4] hostes faciant
might-observe | into what parts (the) enemy might-make

[er-ineris.4] iter (*n.*)•• Qui,
(their) journey [in what direction the enemy might march]. Who,

insecuti cupidiùs [m.4] novissimum [n-inis.4] agmen,
having-followed too-eagerly | (the) hindmost troop [the rear],

committunt [m.4] prœlium cum [ûs.6] equitatu [s.pl.2] Helvetiorum,
join battle with (the) cavalry [1] of (the) [1] Helvetii,

s.6 alieno s.6 loco: et s.pl.1 pauci de er.pl.6 nostris
[1]in (a) [1]disadvantageous place: and (a) few of our (men)

cadunt. Quo m.6 prœlio s.pl.1 Helvetii sublati, quòd
fall. By-which battle (the) Helvetii were-elevated, because

s.pl.6 quingentis es-itis.pl.6 equitibus propulerant [4]tantam
with-five-hundred horsemen they-had-repulsed so-great

do-dinis.4 multitudinem (*f.*) •• es-itis.pl.2 equitum, cœperunt
(a) multitude of-horsemen, they-began

subsistere audaciùs; nonnunquam ex m.6 novissimo
to-withstand more-boldly; | (and) sometimes from (their) hindmost

en-inis.6 agmine lacessere m.6 prœlio er.pl.4 nostros.
troop to-challenge with-battle our (men) [and sometimes from their rear, they provoked our men to fight].

Lesson 18.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem Cæsar facit, equitatumque omnem ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provinciâ, et Æduis, atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, præmittit; qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant: qui cupidiùs novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco, cum equitatu Helvetiorum prœlium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo prœlio sublati Helvetii, quòd quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audaciùs subsistere, nonnunquam ex novissimo agmine prœlio nostros lacessere cœperunt.

Exercises on Lessons 17 and 18.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Locus. Equitatui. Movent. Facit. Quatuor. Pars. Equitatu. Socius. Hostes. Pauci. Prœlium. Quingentis. Multitudo. Nonnunquam. Cœperunt. Equitum.

English words to be translated into Latin.

He does. Battle. So great. By the horsemen. With the cavalry. All. Which. He had. Part. Road. In the place. From the battle. Because. Multitude. They began.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quòd tantam multitudinem propulerant. Postero die castra movent. Equitatum omnem præmittit. Quem ex omni Provinciâ coactum habebat. Quas in partes iter faciant. Cum equitatu prœlium committunt. Nostros lacessere cœperunt.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

They join battle with the cavalry, in a disadvantageous place. They sometimes provoked our men to battle, from their rear. A few of our men fall. Because, with five hundred horsemen, they had repelled so great a number of horsemen. Next day they move their camp. Cæsar sends forward all the cavalry. In what direction the enemy might march.

Form of Fourth Declension in "u."

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Cornu; a horn, . . .	u.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Cornua; horns, . .	ua.
2. *Gen.* Cornu *or* Cornûs; of a horn, ...	u *or* ûs.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Cornuum; of horns,	uum.
3. *Dat.* Cornu; to a horn, . .	u.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Cornibus; to horns,	ibus.
4. *Acc.* Cornu; a horn, . . .	u.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Cornua; horns, . .	ua.
5. *Voc.* Cornu; O horn, . . .	u.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Cornua; O horns, .	ua.
6. *Abl.* Cornu; in, with, from, &c., a horn, ...	u.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Cornibus; in, with, from, &c., horns, . . .	ibus.

In this form of the fourth declension in *u*, the singular is often said to be indeclinable: that is, all the terminations of the singular are the same as the nominative singular; but the genitive in *ûs* is also used.

The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike, and end in *ua;* the genitive plural ends in *uum,* the dative and ablative plural end in *ibus.*

Lesson 19.

[r–ris.1] Cæsar præfecit [s.pl.4] singulos [s.pl.4] legatos [s.pl.3] singulis
Cæsar set-over single lieutenants to-each

[o–onis.pl.3] legionibus, et [or–oris.4] quæstorem, utì quisque haberet
legion, and (a) quæstor, that every-one might-have

eos [is–is.pl.4] testes [2] suæ [us–utis.2] virtutis.(*f.*)•• Ipse à
them (as) witnesses of-his valor. He-himself from

[m.6] dextro [u.6] cornu commissit [m.4] prœlium, quòd
the right | horn [wing] joined battle, because

animadverterat [4] eam [rs–rtis.4] partem [is–is.pl.2] hostium esse
he-had-observed that part [1] of (the) [1] enemy to-be

minimè [4] firmam. Ita [er.pl.1] nostri, [m.6] signo [m.5] dato,
least firm. So our (men), (the) signal being-given,

fecerunt [ûs.4] impetum acriter in [is–is.pl.4] hostes; itaque
made (an) attack sharply on (the) enemy; then

[is–is.pl.1] hostes procurrerunt repentè que· celeriter·, ut
(the) enemy [1] ran suddenly and quickly [1] forward,(so) that

[m.1] spatium non daretur conjiciendi [m.pl.4] pila in
space [1] was not [1] given (for) throwing (the) javelins against

[is–is.pl.4] hostes. [m.pl.6] Pilis rejectis, pugnatum est
(the) enemy. (The) javelins being-thrown, it-was-fought

cominus [m.pl.6] gladiis. At [s.pl.1] Germani, [x–gis.6] phalange
hand-to-hand with-swords. But (the) Germans, (a) phalanx

factâ, celeriter ex [6] suâ [do–dinis.6] consuetudine,(*f.*)••
being-made, quickly according-to their custom,

exceperunt [ûs.pl.4] impetus [m.pl.2] gladiorum. Complures
received (the) attacks [1] of (the) [1] swords. Many (of)

[er.pl.1] nostri [es–itis.pl.1] milites reperti sunt, qui insilirent in
our soldiers were-found, who would-leap-up on

[x–gis.pl.4] phalanges, et revellerent [m.pl.4] scuta [ûs.pl.6] manibus,(*f.*)••
(the) phalanxes, and pull-back (the) shields [1] with (their) [1] hands,

et vulnerarent desuper. Quum acies [is–is.pl.2] hostium
and wound from-above. When (the) line [1] of (the) [1] enemy

pulsa esset à [m.6] sinistro [u.6] cornu, atque conversa in [4] fugam,
had-been-repulsed on (the) left wing, and put to flight,

premebant vehementer [4] nostram aciem à
they-pressed vehemently (on) our line from (their)

[m.6] dextro [u.6] cornu [do–dinis.6] multitudine (*f.*)•• [s.pl.2] suorum.
right wing [1] by (the) [1] multitude of-their (men).

Lesson 20.

Cæsar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quæstorem præfecit, utì eos testes suæ quisque virtutis haberet. Ipse à dextro cornu, quòd eam partem minimè firmam hostium esse animadverterat, prœlium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes, signo dato, impetum fecerunt; itaque hostes repentè, celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non daretur. Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter, ex consuetudine suâ, phalange factâ, impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalanges insilirent, et scuta manibus revellerent, et desuper vulnerarent. Quum hostium acies à sinistro cornu pulsa, atque in fugam conversa esset, à dextro cornu vehementer, multitudine suorum, nostram aciem premebant.

Exercises on Lessons 19 and 20.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Legatus. Præfecit. Prœlium. Hostis. Cornu. Pars. Impetus. Milites. Gladiorum. Fecerunt. Spatium. Pila. Gladiis. Consuetudo. Manibus. Acies. Fuga.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Wing of the army. Flight. They pressed. Javelins. Space. With swords. Quickly. Custom. Many. Received. Who. Shields. A hand. Legion. Witnesses. Battle. A part. Signal. They made. They ran. Attack. Suddenly.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Legioni legatum præfecit. Utì testes suæ virtutis haberent. Ipse à dextro cornu prœlium commisit. Nostri milites in phalanges insilirent. Comminus gladiis pugnatum est. Germani impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Scuta mani-

bus revellerent. Acies in fugam conversa esset. À dextro cornu, nostram aciem premebant.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

The Germans, according to their custom. Space for throwing javelins against the enemy. They quickly received the attack. Many were found, who would leap on the phalanxes. When the line of the enemy had been repulsed. The soldiers pulled back the shields with their hands. They pressed on our line from their right wing. That every one might have a witness. He himself joined battle. He had observed that part to be least firm. Our men made an attack on the enemy.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are feminine; *dies—a day*, is masculine or feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural.

Nouns of this declension are known by the genitive singular ending in *ei*.

To distinguish this fifth declension, *ei* is placed before the numbers denoting cases.

Form of the Fifth Declension.

Singular.	Terminations.	Plural.	Terminations.
1. *Nom.* Res; a thing, . . .	es.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Res; things, . . .	es.
2. *Gen.* Rei; of a thing, . .	ei.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Rerum; of things,	erum.
3. *Dat.* Rei; to a thing, . .	ei.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Rebus; to things,	ebus.
4. *Acc.* Rem; a thing, . . .	em.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Res; things, . . .	es.
5. *Voc.* Res; O thing, . . .	es.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Res; O things, . .	es.
6. *Abl.* Re; in, with, from, by, &c., a thing, ...	e.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Rebus; in, with, from, by, &c., things, ...	ebus.

In this fifth declension, the nominative and vocative singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike, and end in *es*. The genitive and dative singular end in *ei*, the accusative singular ends in *em*, and the abla-

tive singular in *e;* the genitive plural ends in *erum,* and the dative and ablative plural in *ebŭs.*

But few nouns of this declension have a plural.

The genitive and dative singular is sometimes found in *e,* in place of *ei;* and the same two cases are sometimes in *i,* in place of *ei.*

Lesson 21.

Postridiè ejus [ei.2]diei, quòd
| On-the-day-after of-that day [the day after that], because

omnino [m.1]biduum supererat, quum oporteret
altogether (a) space-of-two-days remained, when it-was-necessary

metiri [m.4]frumentum [ûs.3]exercitu; [*u* for *ui*] et
to-measure-out corn [1]to (the) [1]army; and

quòd aberat à Bibracte, longè [m.6]maximo ac
because he-was-distant from Bibracte, by-far (the) greatest and

[m.6]copiosissimo [m.6]oppido [s.pl.2]Æduorum, non amplius
richest town [1]of (the) [1]Ædui, not more (than)

octodecim millibus [ûs.pl.2]passuum; existimavit
eighteen thousand paces; | he-thought

prospiciendum [3]frumentariæ [ei.3]rei
it-ought-to-be-foreseen for corn thing [he thought it necessary

et avertit [er–ineris.4]iter (*n.*) ••
to take care for provisions] and he-turns-aside (his) route

ab [s.pl.6]Helvetiis, ac contendit ire Bibracte. Ea
from (the) Helvetii, and hastens to-go (to) Bibracte. That

[ei.1]res nuntiatur [is–is.pl.6]hostibus per [s.pl.4]fugitivos
thing is-announced [1]to (the) [1]enemy by fugitives

[s.2]Lucii [s.2]Æmilii [o–onis.2]decurionis [es–itis.pl.2]equitum
of-Lucius Æmilius (a) captain of-horsemen

[s.pl.2]Gallorum. [s.pl.1]Helvetii seu quòd existimarent,
[1]of (the) [1]Gauls. (The) Helvetii either because they-thought, (that)

[s.pl.4]Romanos discedere [s.pl.4]perterritos [or–oris.6]timore,
(the) Romans departed dismayed with-fear, (and)

eò magìs, quòd pridie, [or–oris.pl.6]superioribus
so-much (the) more, because on-the-day-before, (the) higher

[s.pl.6]locis occupatis, non commisissent [m.4]prœlium,
places being-occupied, they-[1]had not [1]committed battle,

sive quòd confiderent posse intercludi
or because they-confided (that) they-would-be hindered

[6]frumentariâ [ei.6]re;
from-corn thing [that they would be able to intercept the provi-

[m.6]consilio [m.6]commutato, atque
sions of the Romans]; (their) counsel being-changed, and

[er–ineris.6]itinere (*n.*)•• [m.6]converso, cœperunt insequi, ac
the route being-altered, they-began to-follow, and

lacessere [er.pl.4]nostros à [m.6]novissimo [n–inis.6]agmine.
to-provoke our (men) | from (the) last troop [from the rear].

Lesson 22.

Postridiè ejus diei, quòd omnino biduum supererat, quum exercitu frumentum metiri oporteret, et quòd à Bibracte oppido Æduorum longè maximo ac copiosissimo, non ampliùs millibus passuum octodecim aberat, rei frumentariæ prospiciendum existimavit; et iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Æmilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nunciatur. Helvetii seu qùòd timore perterritos Romanos, discedere existimarent, eò magìs, quòd pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, prœlium non commisissent; sive quòd re frumentariâ intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio, atque itinere converso, nostros à novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere cœperunt.

Exercises on Lessons 21 and 22.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Timor. Locis. Discedere. Agmen. Iter. Prœlium. Res. Equites. Nunciatur. Ire. Rebus. Oppidum. Passuum. Exercitus.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Of the day. The road. To follow. Because. The army. In the town. The greatest. Was distant. He thought. To go. Of the horsemen. To the enemy. Fear. The more. Counsel.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Nostros insequi cœperunt. Quod pridie, prœlium non commisissent. Ea res per fugitivos nunciatur. Timore perterritos discedere existimarent. Frumentum metire oporteret. Oppidum longè maximum ac copiosissimum. Iter ab Helvetiis avertit. Rei frumentariæ prospiciendum existimavit. Bibracte ire contendit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

These things were announced by fugitives. Because they thought that the Romans departed dismayed. Because they had not committed battle. That they would be able to intercept the provisions of the Romans. They began to follow. On the day after that. It was necessary to measure out corn to the army. He was distant from Bibracte, not more than eighteen thousand paces.

The learner should be well exercised in declining the nouns of the above five declensions, as his attention is successively directed to each of them, and as they occur in the lessons.

ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES may be considered under the heads of Declension, and of Comparison.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

It may here be also observed, that adjectives are in the same number, gender, and case, as the noun they qualify.

Adjectives have gender, number, and case, denoted by their terminations.

Adjectives are declined in the same manner as nouns, and,

as respects their declension, may be divided into two classes; the first, those which follow the first and second declension—the masculine and neuter gender being in the second declension, and the feminine gender in the first declension: as, *bonus, bona, bonum*—the masculine always ending in *us* or *r*, the feminine in *a*, and the neuter in *um*. The second class contains all those which follow the forms of the third declension, and have different terminations to denote gender.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

The Form in "us," "a," "um."

SINGULAR.

Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.		
1. *Nom.* Bonus	(us)	bona	(a)	bonum	(um)	good.
2. *Gen.* Boni	(i)	bonæ	(æ)	boni	(i)	of good.
3. *Dat.* Bono	(o)	bonæ	(æ)	bono	(o)	to good.
4. *Acc.* Bonum	(um)	bonam	(am)	bonum	(um)	good.
5. *Voc.* Bone	(e)	bona	(a)	bonum	(um)	O good.
6. *Abl.* Bono	(o)	bonâ	(â)	bono	(o)	in, with, &c., good.

PLURAL.

Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.		
pl. 1. *N.* Boni	(i)	bonæ	(æ)	bona	(a)	good.
pl. 2. *G.* Bonorum	(orum)	bonarum ..	(arum)	bonorum ..	(orum)	of good.
pl. 3. *D.* Bonis	(is)	bonis	(is)	bonis	(is)	to good.
pl. 4. *A.* Bonos	(os)	bonas	(as)	bona	(a)	good.
pl. 5. *V.* Boni	(i)	bonæ	(æ)	bona	(a)	O good.
pl. 6. *Ab.* Bonis	(is)	bonis	(is)	bonis	(is)	in, with, &c., good.

The letters between the parentheses ( ), denote the terminations of the different cases, in masculine, feminine, and neuter singular, and the same in the plural.

The cases are denoted in the same manner as in the first and second declension of nouns; *s*, placed before the figures denoting cases, denotes the form in *us*, or the masculine, of the second declension. So, also, *er* or *r*, the masculine form in *er* or *r*, of the second declension; *a*, or only the figures

denoting cases, denotes the first declension, or feminine; *m* denotes the second declension, or neuter. The nominative masculine singular, of all adjectives, is to be looked for in the dictionaries.

Lesson 23.

Quum venisset eò de [s.6]improviso, que·
| When he-had-come thither from unexpected, and

celeriùs· [o–onis.6]opinione (*f.*)•• [is–is.pl.2]omnium,
more-quickly (than) (the) opinion of-all [when he had ar-

[s.pl.1]Rhemi,
rived more speedily there, than all had supposed he would do], (the) Rhemi,

qui sunt [s.pl.1]proximi ex [pl.6]Belgis [3]Galliæ, miserunt ad
who are (the) nearest of (the) Belgæ to-Gaul, sent to

eum [s.pl.4]legatos [s.4]Iccium et [s.4]Antebrogium
him (as) ambassadors Iccius and Antebrogius

[s.pl.4]primos [2]suæ [as–atis.2]civitatis, qui dicerent
(the) first (men) of-their state, who said (that)

"permittere se, que· [e–is.pl.4]omnia [m.pl.4]sua·
"they-confided themselves, and all their (property)

in [ei.4]fidem atque [as–atis.4]potestatem [s.2]Romani [s.2]populi,
to (the) faith and power [1]of (the) [1]Roman people,

neque se consensisse cum [s.pl.6]reliquis [pl.6]Belgis,
nor [1]had they [1]consented with (the) remaining Belgæ,

neque conjurasse omnino contra [s.4]Romanum
nor had-they-conspired at-all against (the) Roman

[s.4]populum; que· paratos· esse, et dare [es–idis.pl.4]obsides,
people; and (that) they-were-ready, both to-give hostages,

et facere [m.pl.4]imperata, et recipere [m.pl.6]oppidis,
and to-do (their) commands, and to-receive (them) [1]in (their) [1]towns,

et juvare [m.6]frumento, que· [pl.6]cæteris· [ei.pl.6]rebus;
and to-assist (them) with-corn, and with-other things;

[is–is.pl.4]omnes [s.pl.4]reliquos [pl.4]Belgas esse in [m.pl.6]armis;
(that) all (the) remaining Belgæ were in arms;

que· [s.pl.4]Germanos·, qui incolunt cis [s.4]Rhenum
and (that) (the) Germans, who dwell on-this-side (the) Rhine

conjunxisse sese cum his; que· tantum·
had-joined themselves with these (Belgæ); and (that) so-great

esse [or–oris.4]furorem [is–is.pl.2]omnium eorum, ut potuerint
was (the) fury of-all of-them, that they-had-been-able

deterrere,	ne	quidem	[o–onis.pl.4] Suessiones,	[s.pl.4] suos	[er.pl.4] fratres	
to-deter,	not	even	(the) Suessiones,	their	brothers	
que·	[s.pl.4] consanguineos·,	qui	utantur	eodem	[us–uris.6] jure,	
and	relations,	who	use	(the) same	right, (and)	
iisdem	[x–gis.pl.6] legibus,	habeant	[m.4] unum	[m.4] imperium,	que·	
(the) same	laws,	have	one	government,	and	
[s.4] unum·	[us.4] magistratum	cum	ipsis,	quin		
one	magistracy	with	themselves,	but-that		
consentirent	cum	his."				
they-would-join	with	these (Belgæ)."				

Lesson 24.

Eò quum de improviso, celeriùsque omnium opinione venisset, Rhemi, qui proximi Galliæ ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Antebrogium primos civitatis suæ miserunt; qui dicerent, "se suaque omnia in fidem atque potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum reliquis Belgis consensisse, neque contra populum Romanum, omnino conjurâsse; paratosque esse et obsides dare, et imperata facere, et oppidis recipere, et frumento cæterisque rebus juvare: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse; Germanosque qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure, iisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium, unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent."

Exercises on Lessons 23 and 24.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Incolunt. Omnes. Omnia. Imperium. Lex. Frater. Furor. Proximus. Primus. Fides. Civitas. Miserunt. Potestas. Contra. Dare. Oppidum. Reliquus. Arma.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Magistracy. Government. So great. Relations. In the opinion. Nearest to. Ambassadors. Of the state. They sent. Power. Hostages. To receive.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Celeriùs omnium opinione venisset. Germani incolunt cis Rhenum. Unum imperium cum ipsis habeant. Qui eodem jure, iisdem legibus utantur. Ad eum legatos miserunt. Se omnia in potestatem populi Romani permittere. Paratos esse imperata facere. Frumento juvare. Reliquos Belgas esse in armis.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

That all the Belgæ were in arms. They sent as ambassadors to him the first men of the state. That they were ready to give hostages. To receive them in their towns. Who dwell on this side of the Rhine. With other things. So great was the fury of all. Who use the same laws. Their brothers and relations.

The Forms of Declension in "er" and "r," in place of "us"—Form in "er."

SINGULAR.

Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.		
1. *Nom.* Tener.........	(er)	tenera.......	(era)	tenerum...	(erum)	tender.
2. *Gen.* Teneri........	(eri)	teneræ......	(eræ)	teneri.......	(eri)	of tender.
3. *Dat.* Tenero.......	(ero)	teneræ......	(eræ)	tenero......	(ero)	to tender.
4. *Acc.* Tenerum	(erum)	teneram...	(eram)	tenerum...	(erum)	tender.
5. *Voc.* Tener........	(er)	tenera.......	(era)	tenerum...	(erum)	O tender.
6. *Abl.* Tenero......	(ero)	tenerâ.......	(erâ)	tenero......	(ero)	in, with, &c., tender.

PLURAL.

Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.		
pl. 1. *N.* Teneri......	(eri)	teneræ......	(eræ)	tenera.......	(era)	tender
pl. 2. *G.* Tenero-rum.............	(erorum)	tenera-rum...	(erarum)	tenero-rum...	(erorum)	of tender.
pl. 3. *D.* Teneris.....	(eris)	teneris......	(eris)	teneris......	(eris)	to tender.
pl. 4. *A.* Teneros....	(eros)	teneras......	(eras)	tenera.......	(era)	tender.
pl. 5. *V.* Teneri......	(eri)	teneræ......	(eræ)	tenera.......	(era)	O tender.
pl. 6. *Ab.* Teneris.....	(eris)	teneris......	(eris)	teneris......	(eris)	in, with, &c., tender.

Form in "r."

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.		
1. *Nom.*	Piger.........	(er)	pigra	(ra)	pigrum......(rum)		slothful.
2. *Gen.*	Pigri	(ri)	pigræ	(ræ)	pigri..........	(ri)	of slothful.
3. *Dat.*	Pigro.........	(ro)	pigræ	(ræ)	pigro.........	(ro)	to slothful.
4. *Acc.*	Pigrum.....(rum)		pigram......(ram)		pigrum......(rum)		slothful.
5. *Voc.*	Piger.........	(er)	pigra.........	(ra)	pigrum......(rum)		O slothful.
6. *Abl.*	Pigro.........	(ro)	pigrâ.........	(râ)	pigro.........	(ro)	in, with, &c., slothful.

PLURAL.

	Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.		
pl. 1. *N.*	Pigri	(ri)	pigræ	(ræ)	pigra.........	(ra)	slothful.
pl. 2. *G.*	Pigrorum	(rorum)	pigrarum	(rarum)	pigrorum	(rorum)	of slothful.
pl. 3. *D.*	Pigris........	(ris)	pigris.........	(ris)	pigris.........	(ris)	to slothful.
pl. 4. *A.*	Pigros.......	(ros)	pigras........	(ras)	pigra.........	(ra)	slothful.
pl. 5. *V.*	Pigri.........	(ri)	pigræ.........	(ræ)	pigra.........	(ra)	O slothful.
pl. 6. *Ab.*	Pigris........	(ris)	pigris.........	(ris)	pigris.........	(ris)	in, with, &c., slothful.

Nine adjectives of frequent occurrence, and having the above forms of the first and second declensions, have their genitive singular in *ius*, in place of *i* and *æ*, for all the genders; and their dative singular in *i*, in place of *o* and *æ*, for all the genders. Of these, there are six in *us*: as, *alius — another; nullus — no one; solus — alone; totus — whole; ullus — any; unus — one.* There is one in *er*: as, *alter — the other;* and there are two in *r*: as, *uter — which of the two; neuter—neither.* Also, the compounds of *alter, and, uter.*

Alius—another, has *aliud* in place of *alium,* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular neuter; and the same word, in the genitive singular, has *alius* in place of *aliius.*

The following is a specimen of the declension of these words:

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.		
1. *Nom.*	Unus.........	(us)	una...........	(a)	unum.........(um)		one.
2. *Gen.*	Unius.........(ius)		unius.........(ius)		unius.........(ius)		of one.
3. *Dat.*	Uni	(i)	uni...........	(i)	uni............	(i)	to one.
4. *Acc.*	Unum........(um)		unam.........(am)		unum.........(um)		one.
5. *Voc.*	Une...........	(e)	una...........	(a)	unum.........(um)		O one.
6. *Abl.*	Uno...........	(o)	unâ...........	(â)	uno...........	(o)	in, with, &c., one.

The plurals of these adjectives in *us* are declined like *bonus*, the plurals of *er* like *tener*, and the plurals of *r* like *piger*.

Lesson 25.

[r–is.1] Cæsar, cohortatus [s.pl.4] Rhemos, que·
Cæsar, having-encouraged (the) Rhemi, | and

prosecutus liberaliter· [o–onis.6] oratione, (*f.*) ••
having-followed-up liberally with-speech [and having spoken

jussit [is–is.4] omnem [ûs.4] senatum
kindly and encouragingly to them], ordered all (their) senate

convenire ad se, que· [r.pl.4] liberos
to-assemble | to himself [in his presence], and (the) children

[eps–ipis.pl.2] principum· adduci [es–idis.pl.4] obsides ad se; [e–is.pl.1] omnia
[1] of (the) [1] chiefs to-be-brought as hostages to him; all

quæ diligenter facta sunt ab his ad [ei.4] diem.
which (things) [1] were diligently [1] done by them to (the) day.

Ipse, magnoperè cohortatus [s.4] Divitiacum [s.4] Æduum,
He, [1] having greatly [1] encouraged Divitiacus (the) Æduan,

docet quantoperè intersit [ei.2 and a.2] Reipublicæ, que·
shows how-greatly it-concerns (the) Republic, and

[is–is.2] communis· [us–utis.2] salutis, (*f.*) •• [ûs.pl.4] manus (*f.*) ••
(the) common safety, (that) (the) bands

[is–is.pl.2] hostium distineri, ne sit
[1] of (the) [1] enemy should-be-dispersed, (that) it [1] might not [1] be

confligendum [m.6] uno [us–oris.6] tempore cum [6] tantâ
necessary-to-fight at-one time with so-great

[do–dinis.6] multitudine (*f.*) •• [is–is.pl.2] hostium; id posse
(a) multitude of-enemies; (that) this might

fieri, si [s.pl.1] Ædui introduxerint [pl.4] suas [pl.4] copias in
be-done, if (the) Ædui should-introduce their forces into

[is–is.pl.4] fines [s.pl.2] Bellovacorum, et cœperint populari
(the) territories [1] of (the) [1] Bellovaci, and should-begin to-ravage

[er.pl.4] agros eorum. His mandatis, dimittit
(the) lands of-them. These (things) being-commanded, he-dismissed

eum ab se. Postquam cognovit [is–is.pl.4] omnes
him from himself. After he-knew (that) all

[pl.4] copias [pl.2] Belgarum [pl.4] coactas in [s.4] unum [s.4] locum
(the) forces [1] of (the) [1] Belgæ were collected in one place

venire ad se, neque jam longè
to-march against him, nor (that) they-[1]were now far

abesse ab his [or–oris.pl.6]exploratoribus, quos miserat,
[1]distant from those scouts, that he-had-sent (out),

et ab [s.pl.6]Rhemis; maturavit transducere [ûs.4]exercitum
and from (the) Rhemi; he-hastened to-lead-over (his) army

[en–inis.4]flumen [4]Auxonam, quod est in [pl.6]extremis
(across) the the river Aisne, which is in the extreme

[is–is 6]finibus [s.pl.2]Rhemorum, atque ibi posuit
confines [1]of (the) [1]Rhemi, and there he-placed

[m.pl.4]castra.
(his) camp.

Lesson 26.

Cæsar Rhemos cohortatus, liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit: quæ omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Æduum magnoperè cohortatus, docet quantoperè Reipublicæ communisque salutis intersit, manus hostium distineri, ne cum tantâ multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit; id fieri posse, si suas copias Ædui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint, et eorum agros populari cœperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias, in unum locum coactas, ad se venire, neque jam longè abesse, ab his, quos miserat exploratoribus, et ab Rhemis cognovit; flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Rhemorum finibus, exercitum transducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit.

Exercises on Lessons 25 and 26.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Dies. Oratio. Liberi. Jussit. Obsides. Salus. Magnoperè. Manus. Multitudo. Hostis. Ager. Mandatum. Exercitus. Flumen. Coactus. Cognovit. Castra. Maturavit.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Common. Time. Safety. Of the enemies. Hand. To be done. Fields. From. All. One. From the scouts. The river. Army. Camp. Speech. Children. Hostages. Diligently. Day.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Liberos ad se adduci jussit. Senatum convenire jussit. Reipublicæ intersit. Omnia ad diem facta sunt. Ne cum tantâ multitudine confligendum sit. Tantâ multitudine hostium. Si Ædui eorum agros populari cœperint. His mandatis eum dimittit. Ibi castra posuit. Flumen est in extremis Rhemorum finibus. Omnes copias in unum locum coactas. Longè abesse cognovit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

These things being ordered, he dismissed him. He knew that all the forces of the Belgæ. He pitched his camp there. He led the army across the river. He knew that they were not far distant. Whom he had sent. He shows how greatly it concerns the Republic. That it may not be necessary to fight at one time with so great a multitude. He ordered all the children to be brought as hostages to him. All which was done to the day.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three forms, namely: those having three endings in the nominative singular, those having two endings in the nominative singular, and those having only one ending in the same.

Form of Third Declension of Adjectives, of three endings in Nominative Singular.

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
1. *Nom.*	Acer.......... (er)	acris.......... (ris)	acre .... (re)	sharp.
2. *Gen.*	Acris......... (ris)	acris.......... (ris)	acris.......... (ris)	of sharp.
3. *Dat.*	Acri .... (ri)	acri .... (ri)	acri .... (ri)	to sharp.
4. *Acc.*	Acrem.......(rem)	acrem........(rem)	acre........... (re)	sharp.
5. *Voc.*	Acer.......... (er)	acris.......... (ris)	acre........... (re)	O sharp.
6. *Abl.*	Acri.......... (ri)	acri .... (ri)	acri .... (ri)	in, with, &c., sharp.

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
pl. 1. *N.*	Acres........ (res)	acres......... (res)	acria......... (ria)	sharp.
pl. 2. *G.*	Acrium...(rium)	acrium......(rium)	acrium .....(rium)	of sharp.
pl. 3. *D.*	Acribus...(ribus)	acribus.....(ribus)	acribus.....(ribus)	to sharp.
pl. 4. *A.*	Acres........ (res)	acres......... (res)	acria......... (ria)	sharp.
pl. 5. *V.*	Acres........ (res)	acres......... (res)	acria......... (ria)	O sharp.
pl. 6. *Ab.*	Acribus...(ribus)	acribus.....(ribus)	acribus.....(ribus)	in, with, &c., sharp.

It is here to be observed, that the ablative singular, for all the genders, ends in *i* alone; the genitive plural, for all the genders, in *ium;* and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter, in *ia*.

Lesson 27.

[m.1] Oppidum [s.pl.2] Rhemorum, [x-cis.1] Bibrax [en-inis.6] nomine,
A town [1] of (the) [1] Rhemi, Bibrax by-name,

aberat octo millia [ûs.pl.2] passuum ab [m.pl.6] castris ipsis;
was-distant eight thousand paces from (the) camp itself;

[pl.1] Belgæ cœperunt oppugnare id [s.6] magno [û.6] impetu
(the) Belgæ began to-assault it with-great violence

ex [er-ineris.6] itinere; (*n.*)•• ægrè sustentatum est
on (their) march; (the assault) [1] was difficultly [1] sustained

eo [ei.6] die. (*m.*)•• [io-ionis.1] Oppugnatio (*f.*)•• [s.pl.2] Gallorum
on-that day. (The) attack [1] of (the) [1] Gauls

atque [pl.2] Belgarum est eadem. Ubi, [o-inis.6] multitudine (*f.*)••
and [1] of (the) [1] Belgæ is (the) same. When, a multitude

[o-inis.pl.2]hominum circumjectâ [s.pl.3]totis [pl.ia.ium.3]mœnibus,
of-men being-thrown-round (the) whole wall,

[is-idis.pl.1]lapides (*m.*)•• cœpti sunt jaci in [s.4]murum
stones were-begun to-be-thrown against (the) wall

undique, que· [s.1]murus· nudatus est [or-oris.pl.6]defensoribus,
on-all-sides, and (the) wall was-stripped of-defenders,

[o-inis.6]testudine (*f.*)•• [6]factâ,
(a) testudo being made, (by the men placing their shields

hi succedunt [pl.3]portis, que·
over their heads), these [the Belgæ] approach the gates, and

subruunt [s.4]murum·. Quod tum facilè fiebat; nam
undermine (the) wall. Which [1]was then easily [1]done; for

[1]tanta [o-onis.1]multitudo (*f.*)•• conjiciebant [is-idis.pl.4]lapides (*m.*)••
so-great (a) multitude did-throw stones

ac [m.pl.4]tela, ut [as-atis.1]potestas consistendi in [s.6]muro esset
and darts, | that (the) power of-standing on (the) wall was

[s.3]nulli. Quum [x-ctis.1]nox
to-none [that no one could stand on the wall]. When night

fecisset [is-is.4]finem oppugnandi, [s.1]Iccius [s.1]Rhemus
had-made (an) end of-assaulting, Iccius (the) Rhemian

[6]summâ [as-atis.6]nobilitate et [6]gratiâ, inter [s.pl.4]suos,
of-the-highest nobility and favor, among his (people),

qui tum præerat [m.3]oppido; [s.1]unus ex iis, qui venerant
who then commanded (the) town; one of those, who had-come

ad [r-ris.4]Cæsarem [s.pl.1]legati de [x-cis.6]pace, mittit
to Cæsar (as) ambassadors about peace, sends

[s.pl.4]nuntios ad eum, "se non posse sustinere
messengers to him, "(that) he [1]was not [1]able to sustain

diutiùs, nisi [m.4]subsidium mittatur sibi."
(the assault) longer, unless a subsidy is sent to-him."

Lesson 28.

Ab ipsis castris oppidum Rhemorum, nomine, Bibrax, aberat millia passuum octo: id ex itinere, magno impetu, Belgæ oppugnare cœperunt; ægrè eo die sustentatum est; Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est. Hi, ubi circumjectâ multitudine hominum totis mœnibus, undique in murum lapides jaci cœpti sunt, murusque defensoribus nu-

datus est; testudine factâ, portis succedunt, murumque subruunt. Quod tum facilè fiebat: nam tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjiciebant, ut in muro consistendi potestas esset nulli. Quum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Rhemus, summâ nobilitate et gratiâ inter suos, qui tum oppido præerat, unus ex iis, qui legati de pace ad Cæsarem venerant, nuncios ad eum mittit, "nisi subsidium sibi mittatur, se diutiùs sustinere non posse."

Exercises on Lessons 27 and 28.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Nox. Nobilitas. Nuncius. Diutiùs. Oppidum. Multitudo. Facile. Lapis. Murus. Potestas. Fiebat. Finis. Nomen. Impetus. Oppugnatio. Est. Atque.

English words to be translated into Latin.

In the camp. He sends. Was distant. Road. Day. A pace. They began. The attack. An end. Night. Who. One. Peace. Longer. Easily. Stones. The wall. Power. Men. A stone. A gate.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Oppidum nomine Bibrax. Ægrè sustentatum est. Ex itinere oppugnare cœperunt. Hi in murum lapides jaci cœpti sunt. Portis succedunt. Se diutiùs sustinere non posse. Iccius oppido præerat. Nuncios ad eum mittit. Finem nox fecit. Potestas esset nulli. Quod facilè fiebat. Unus ex iis, qui legati ad Cæsarem venerant.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

One of those who had come to Cæsar. That he was not able to sustain the assault longer. He sends a messenger to him. The town Bibrax was distant eight thousand paces. They began to attack it with great violence. A multitude of men. Stones were begun to be thrown. The wall was

stripped of defenders. Which was easily done. They threw stones and darts. No one could stand on the wall. Night made an end of the assault.

Form of the Third Declension of Adjectives, of two terminations in Nominative Singular.

SINGULAR.

Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.		
1. *Nom.* Mitis	(is)	mite	(e)	mild.
2. *Gen.* Mitis	(is)	mitis	(is)	of mild.
3. *Dat.* Miti	(i)	miti	(i)	to mild.
4. *Acc.* Mitem	(em)	mite	(e)	mild.
5. *Voc.* Mitis	(is)	mite	(e)	O mild.
6. *Abl.* Miti	(i)	miti	(i)	in, with, &c., mild.

PLURAL.

Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.		
pl. 1. *N.* Mites	(es)	mitia	(ia)	mild.
pl. 2. *G.* Mitium	(ium)	mitium	(ium)	of mild.
pl. 3. *D.* Mitibus	(ibus)	mitibus	(ibus)	to mild.
pl. 4. *A.* Mites	(es)	mitia	(ia)	mild.
pl. 5. *V.* Mites	(es)	mitia	(ia)	O mild.
pl. 6. *Ab.* Mitibus	(ibus)	mitibus	(ibus)	in, with, &c., mild.

Adjectives of this form have their masculine and feminine alike in the nominative and vocative singular, and end in *is;* the nominative singular of the neuter gender ends in *e*. In all the other cases, this form exactly resembles the form of three terminations in the nominative singular.

Comparatives have also two terminations in the nominative singular, but differ from the above form. Their masculine and feminine end in *or*, in the nominative singular; and their neuter, in the same case, in *us*. They are thus declined:

SINGULAR.

Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.		
1. *Nom.* Mitior	(or)	mitius	(us)	milder.
2. *Gen.* Mitioris	(oris)	mitioris	(oris)	of milder.
3. *Dat.* Mitiori	(ori)	mitiori	(ori)	to milder.
4. *Acc.* Mitiorem	(orem)	mitius	(us)	milder.
5. *Voc.* Mitior	(or)	mitius	(us)	O milder.
6. *Abl.* Mitiore *or* ri	(re *or* ri)	mitiore *or* ri	(re *or* ri)	in, with, &c., milder.

PLURAL.

	Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.		
pl. 1. *N.*	Mitiores.........	(ores)	mitiora............	(ora)	milder.
pl. 2. *G.*	Mitiorum.......	(orum)	mitiorum.........	(orum)	of milder.
pl. 3. *D.*	Mitioribus	(oribus)	mitioribus......	(oribus)	to milder.
pl. 4. *A.*	Mitiores.........	(ores)	mitiora............	(ora)	milder.
pl. 5. *V.*	Mitiores.........	(ores)	mitiora............	(ora)	O milder.
pl. 6. *Ab.*	Mitioribus	(oribus)	mitioribus......	(oribus)	in, with, &c., milder.

This comparative form differs from the form of three terminations, and from the general form above of two terminations, in having *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, in place of *i* only; and of having *um*, in place of *ium*, in the genitive plural; and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter, *a*, in place of *ia*.

Lesson 29.

[r–ris.1] Cæsar primò statuit supersedere [m.6] prœlio, et
Cæsar at-first resolved to-forego battle, both

propter [o–inis.4] multitudinem (*f.*)•• [is–is.pl.2] hostium, et
on-account-of (the) multitude [1] of (the) [1] enemy, and

propter [4] eximiam [o–onis.4] opinionem (*f.*)••
on-account-of (their) eminent reputation

[us–utis.2] virtutis; (*f.*)•• tamen quotidiè periclitabatur
for-valor; however he-[1] did daily [1] try

[is–is.pl.6] equestribus [m.pl.6] prœliis, quid [is–is.1] hostis posset
by cavalry battles, what (the) enemy could-do

[us–utis.6] virtute, (*f.*)•• et quid [er.pl.1] nostri
[1] by (their) [1] bravery, and what our (men)

auderent. Ubi intellexit [er.pl.4] nostros esse
might-dare (to do). When he-understood (that) our (men) were

non [or–oris.pl.1] inferiores, [s.6] loco pro [m.pl.6] castris
not inferior, (the) place before (the) camp (being)

[s.6] opportuno, atque [s.6] idoneo [6] naturâ, ad [ei.4] aciem
opportune, and fit by-nature, | to (the) line (of battle)

instruendam; quòd is
to-be-drawn-up [for forming a line of battle]; because that

[is–is.1] collis, (*m.*)•• ubi [m.pl.1] castra possita erant, editus
hill, where (the) camp had-been-placed, being-raised

paululùm ex [ei.6]planitie patebat in [o–inis.4]latitudinem (*f.*)••
(a) little from (the) plain extended in breadth

adversùs, tantum [s.2]loci, quantum
towards (the enemy), | so-much of-place [so much in space], as

[ei.1]acies [1]instructa poterat occupare, atque
(our) line (of battle) drawn-up was-able to-occupy, and

habebat [s.pl.4]dejectus [us–eris.2]lateris ex [6]utrâque
it-had abrupt-descents [1]on (the) [1]flanks from either

[s–tis.6]parte, et leniter [s.1]fastigiatus in [s–tis.6]fronte, paulatim
part, and gently sloped on (the) front, gradually

redibat ad [ei.4]planitiem; ab utroque [us–eris.6]latere ejus
returned to (the) plain; from each side of-that

[is–is.2]collis (*m.*)•• obduxit [4]transversam [4]fossam,
hill [1]he [Cæsar] [1]led-over a transverse trench,

circiter [s.pl.2]quadringentorum [ûs.pl.2]passuum, et ad [pl.4]extremas
about four-hundred paces, and at (the) extreme

[pl.4]fossas constituit [m.pl.4]castella, que· ibi·
(ends of) (the) trenches he-constructed castles, and there

collocavit [m.pl.4]tormenta; ne, quum
he-placed engines-for-throwing-stones; lest, when

instruxisset [ei.4]aciem, [is–is.pl.1]hostes, (quòd poterant
he-had-drawn-up (his) line, (the) enemy, (because they-might-do

tantum [o–inis.6]multitudine, (*f.*)••) possent, à
so-much [1]by (their) [1]multitude,) might-be-able, on

[us–eris.pl.6]lateribus, circumvenire [s.pl.4]suos pugnantes.
(the) flanks, to-surround his (men) fighting.

Lesson 30.

Cæsar primò, et propter multitudinem hostium, et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis, prœlio supersedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus prœliis, quid hostis virtute posset, et quid nostri auderent, periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris, ad aciem instruendam naturâ opportuno atque idoneo, quòd is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululùm ex planitie editus, tantum adversùs in latitudinem patebat, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utrâque parte lateris dejectus habebat, et in fronte leniter fastigiatus, paulatim ad planitiem redibat; ab

utroque latere ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum; et ad extremas fossas castella constituit, ibique tormenta collocavit; ne, quum aciem instruxisset, hostes (quòd tantum multitudine poterant) à lateribus suos pugnantes circumvenire possent.

Exercises on Lessons 29 and 30.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Ubi. Inferiores. Propter. Prœlium. Equestris. Intellexit. Acies. Idoneus. Planities. Collis. Locus. Latus. Hostis. Collocavit. Castella. Tormenta. Pugnantes.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Engines for throwing stones. He determined. On the flanks. Enemy. In battle. Valor. Paces. A trench. Side. Part. In the place. In the camp. Line of battle. Hill. The plain.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Primò prœlio supersedere statuit. Quid hostes auderent. Ad extremas fossas castella constituit. Quod multitudine poterant. Hostes suos circumvenire possent. Ubi intellexit. Loco idoneo. Is collis paululùm ex planitie editus. Tantum in latitudinem patebat. Ab utroque latere fossam obduxit. Acies instructa. Leniter fastigiatus. Ab latere ejus collis.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

What the enemy could do by their courage. Daily in cavalry battles. On account of the reputation of their valor. On account of the multitude of the enemy he determined to forego battle. He erected castles at the extreme ends of the trench. From each side of the hill. It had abrupt sides. The hill where the camp was placed. Fit for a line of battle.

That our men were not inferior. When he had formed the line of battle. Lest the enemy might be able to surround his men.

Form of Adjectives of the Third Declension, with one termination in Nominative Singular.

SINGULAR.

Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.		
1. *Nom.* Felix...............	(x)	felix................	(x)	happy.
2. *Gen.* Felicis..............	(cis)	felicis...............	(cis)	of happy.
3. *Dat.* Felici...............	(ci)	felici................	(ci)	to happy.
4. *Acc.* Felicem............	(cem)	felix................	(x)	happy.
5. *Voc.* Felix...............	(x)	felix................	(x)	O happy.
6. *Abl.* Felice *or* ci....	(ce *or* ci)	felice *or* ci......	(ce *or* ci)	in, with, &c., happy.

PLURAL.

Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.		
pl. 1. *N.* Felices............	(ces)	felicia..............	(cia)	happy.
pl. 2. *G.* Felicium.........	(cium)	felicium...........	(cium)	of happy.
pl. 3. *D.* Felicibus.........	(cibus)	felicibus..........	(cibus)	to happy.
pl. 4. *A.* Felices............	(ces)	felicia..............	(cia)	happy.
pl. 5. *V.* Felices............	(ces)	felicia..............	(cia)	O happy.
pl. 6. *Ab.* Felicibus.........	(cibus)	felicibus..........	(cibus)	in, with, &c., happy.

In like manner are declined present participles, and adjectives in *ens*.

Lesson 31.

[us-udis.1] Palus (*f.*)** non maga erat inter [er.4] nostrum
(A) marsh not great was between our (men)

atque [us.4] exercitum [is-is.pl.2] hostium; [is-is.pl.1] hostes expectabant
and (the) army [1] of (the)[1] enemy; (the) enemy waited,

si [er.pl.1] nostri transirent hanc; autem
(to see) if our (men) would-pass-over this (marsh); but

[er.pl.1] nostri erant parati in [m.pl.6] armis, ut, si [m.1] initium
our (men) were prepared in arms, that, if (a) beginning

transeundi fieret ab illis,
of-crossing-over (the marsh) should-be-made by them,

aggrederentur [s.pl.4] impeditos. Interim
[1] they [his men] [1] might-attack (them) encumbered. In-the-mean-time

contendebatur [is-is.6] equestri [m.6] prœlio inter [pl.4] duas
| it-was-contended [1] by (a) [1] cavalry battle between (the) two

[ei.pl.4] acies.
lines [a cavalry engagement took place between the two armies].

Ubi [er.pl.1] neutri faciunt [m.4] initium transeundi,
When neither make (a) beginning of-crossing-over (the marsh),

[m.6] prœlio [er.pl.2] nostrorum [es-itis.pl.2] equitum
| (the) battle of-our horsemen (being the)

[or-oris.6] secundiore,
more-successful [our cavalry having the advantage in the contest],

[r-ris.1] Cæsar reduxit [s.pl.4] suos in [m.pl.4] castra. [is-is.pl.1] Hostes
Cæsar led-back his (men) to (the) camp. (The) enemy

protinùs contenderunt ex eo [s.6] loco ad [en-inis.4] flumen
immediately hastened from that place to the river

[4] Axonam, quod demonstratum est esse post [m.pl.4] nostra
Aisne, which has-been-shown to-be behind our

[m.pl.4] castra; ibi, [m.pl.6] vadis [m.pl.6] repertis, conati sunt
camp; there, fords being-found, they-endeavored

transducere [rs-rtis.4] partem [pl.2] suarum [pl.2] copiarum eo
to-lead-over (a) part of-their forces with-that

[m.6] consilio, ut, si possent, expugnarent [m.4] castellum,
design, that, if they-could, they-would-storm (the) castle,

cui Q. Titurius [s.1] legatus præerat
| to-which Q. Titurius (the) lieutenant was-over [which Q. Titurius

que· interscinderent
the lieutenant commanded] and would-cut-down

[ns-ntis.] pontem·; (*m.*)•• sin minùs, popularentur [er.pl.4] agros
(the) bridge; or at-least, would-ravage (the) fields

[s.pl.2] Rhemorum, qui erant [s.3] magno [ûs.3] usui nobis ad
[1] of (the) [1] Rhemi, which were (of) great use to-us for

[m.4] bellum gerendum, que· sustinebant [er.pl.4] nostros
(the) war to-be-carried-on, and supplied our

[ûs.pl.4] commeatus·.
(men with) provisions.

Lesson 32.

Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum: hanc si nostri transirent, hostes expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos

aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim prœlio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum nostrorum prœlio, Cæsar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est; ibi vadis repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui præerat Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscinderent; sin minùs, agros Rhemorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatusque nostros sustinebant.

Exercises on Lessons 31 and 32.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Legatus. Pons. Ager. Magnus. Usus. Commeatus. Bellum. Qui. Prœlium. Eques. Reduxit. Secundior. Flumen. Vadum. Pars. Consilium. Exercitus. Hostis. Initium. Interim. Palus. Inter.

English words to be translated into Latin.

In the battle. Horsemen. The enemy. River. Place. Fords. A part. Forces. Castle. The army. Prepared. A beginning. Battle. When. Marsh. Great. Bridge. Fields. Use. Provisions.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Prœlio equestri contendebatur. Nostri parati in armis erant. Palus erat inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Ut hostes impeditos aggrederentur. Nostri transeundi initium faciunt. Exercitum in castra reduxit. Hostes ad flumen contenderunt. Ibi partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt. Castellum cui præerat legatus. Qui magno nobis usui erant.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Or at least would ravage the fields. Which were of use for carrying on the war. Our cavalry having the advantage. He led back his men to the camp. The enemy hastened from that place to the river. Fords being found there. With the design, that they would storm the castle. They endeavored to lead over a part of their forces. Between our army and the army of the enemy. Our men were prepared. A cavalry engagement took place between the two armies. If a beginning of crossing over should be made by them.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison, the *positive, comparative,* and *superlative:* as, positive, *mitis—mild;* comparative, *mitior—milder;* superlative, *mitissimus — mildest.*

It is in the positive form, nominative singular masculine, that an adjective is to be looked for in the dictionary.

The positive is declined according to the different forms given above.

The comparative is regularly formed, for adjectives declined according to the first and second declensions, by adding *or* to the genitive masculine singular of the positive: as, positive, *altus—high,* Gen. mas. *alti—of high;* comparative, *altior—higher;* and for adjectives declined according to the third declension, by changing the *s* of the genitive singular masculine positive into *or:* as, positive, *mitis—mild,* Gen. *mitis—of mild;* comparative, *mitior—milder;* or, positive, *felix—happy,* Gen. *felicis—of happy;* comparative, *felicior—more happy.* The comparatives are declined like *mitior—milder,* as given above.

The superlative is regularly formed, for adjectives declined according to the first and second declensions, by adding *ssimus* to the genitive masculine singular of the positive: as, positive, *altus—high,* Gen. *alti—of high;* superlative, *altis-*

simus—highest; and for adjectives declined according to the third declension, by changing the *s* of the genitive singular masculine or feminine into *ssimus:* as, positive, *mitis—mild,* Gen. *mitis—of mild;* superlative, *mitissimus—mildest.* The superlatives are declined according to the first and second declensions, like *bonus—good,* as above.

All adjectives in *er,* as well those of the first and second declensions, as those of the third declension, form their superlatives by adding *rimus* to the nominative singular masculine: as, *tener—tender;* superlative, *tenerrimus—most tender; acer—sharp;* superlative, *acerrimus—sharpest;* but their comparatives are formed in the general manner, as above.

Some adjectives, ending in *ilis,* form their superlatives by substituting *limus,* in place of *is:* as, *facilis—easy;* superlative, *facillimus—easiest.*

Some adjectives, ending in *ficus,* as *beneficus—beneficent,* form their comparatives by changing *us* into *entior:* as, *beneficentior—more beneficent;* and their superlatives by changing *us* into *entissimus:* as, *beneficentissimus—most beneficent.*

Some few adjectives are regular in the comparative, but irregular in the superlative, or have even double irregular superlatives: as,

Dexter—right; dexterior; dextimus.
Exterus—outward; exterior; extimus *or* extremus.
Posterus—hind; posterior; postremus *or* postumus—hindmost.
Inferus—low; inferior; infimus *or* imus.
Superus—high; superior; supremus *or* summus.

Some adjectives are altogether irregular in their comparisons: as,

Bonus—good; melior—better; optimus—best.
Malus—bad; pejor—worse; pessimus—worst.
Magnus—great; major—greater; maximus—greatest.
Parvus—little; minor—less; minimus—least.
Multus—much; (plus)—more; plurimus—most.

It will not generally be necessary to designate the positive, but, when required, the comparative may be designated by a *c*, placed after the word between parentheses, and the superlative by an *s*, placed in like manner: as, *mitior* (*c.*); *mitissimus* (*s.*). When the comparison is irregular, the positive may sometimes be placed before the *c* or the *s*, in parentheses: as, *melior* (*bonus*, *c.*); *maximus* (*magnus*, *s.*).

Lesson 33.

[r–ris.1] Cæsar factus certior (*c.*)•• à

Cæsar | having-been-made more-sure [being informed] by

[s.6] Titurio, transducit [ns–tis.4] pontem (*m.*)•• [is–is.4] omnem

Titurius, leads-over (the) bridge all

[ûs.4] equitatum et [pl.4] Numidas [is is.2] levis [2] armaturæ,

(the) cavalry and (the) Numidians of-light armor,

[or–oris.pl.4] funditores que· [s.pl.4] sagittarios·, atque contendit

(the) slingers and (the) archers, and hastens

ad eos. Pugnatum est acriter in eo [s.6] loco; [er.pl.1] nostri

to them. It-was-fought sharply in that place; our

aggressi [is–is.pl.4] hostes, [s.pl.4] impeditos in

(men) having-attacked (the) enemy, entangled in

[en–inis.6] flumine, occiderunt [s.4] magnum [s.4] numerum eorum:

(the) river, slew (a) great number of-them:

repulerunt [do–dinis.6] multitudine (*f.*)•• [m.pl.2] telorum

[1] they [our men] [1] repulsed [1] with (a) [1] multitude of-darts

[s.pl.4] reliquos [ns–ntis.pl.4] conantes

(and other weapons) (the) remainder (of the enemy) endeavoring

audacissimè transire per [us–oris.pl.4] corpora eorum;

most-boldly to-cross-over | on (the) bodies of-them [on

interfecerunt [s.pl.4] primos,

the bodies of their own men]; [1] they [our men] [1] killed (the) first,

qui transierant [s.pl.4] circumventos [ûs.6] equitatu. Ubi

who had-passed surrounded [1] by (the) [1] cavalry. When

[is–is.pl.1] hostes intellexerunt [ei.4] spem fefelisse se, et

(the) enemy understood (that) hope had-deceived them, both

de [m.6] oppido expugnando, et de

as-respects the town (intended) to-be-stormed, and as-respects

[en-inis.6] flumine transeundo, neque viderunt
(the) river (intended) to-be-crossed-over, nor saw-they

[er.pl.4] nostros progredi in [r-ris.4] iniquiorem (*c.*) ••
our (men) to-advance into (a) more-disadvantageous

[s.4] locum, [6] causâ pugnandi, atque [1] frumentaria
place, [1] for (the) [1] purpose of-fighting, and | corn

[ei.1] res cœpit deficere eos [m.6] concilio
thing [provisions] began to-fail them; (a) council

[m.6] convocato, constituerunt esse
being-called, they-resolved (that) it-was

[m.1] optimum (*bonus, s.*) •• quemque reverti [4] suam
best (for) every-one to-return (to) his

[s.4] domum, (*f.*) •• et convenire undique ad eos
home, and to-assemble from-all-sides to those

defendendos, in [is-is.pl.4] fines
(whom it was necessary) to-be-defended, (and) into (the) territories

quorum [s.pl.1] Romani primùm introduxissent
of-whom (the) Romans [1] might first [1] have-led

[ûs.4] exercitum; ut potiùs decertarent,
(an) army; so-that they-[1] might rather [1] contend (with them),

in suis, quàm [s.pl.6] alienis [is-is.pl.6] finibus,
| in their-own, than in-others borders [in their own coun-

et uterentur [pl.6] domesticis
try, than in that of others], and might-use (their) domestic

[pl.6] copiis [2] frumentariæ [ei.2] rei. Quoque hæc [o-onis.1] ratio (*f.*) ••
supplies of provisions. Also this reason

cum [pl.6] reliquis [pl.6] causis deduxit eos ad eam [4] sententiam,
with (the) remaining motives led them to that determination,

quòd cognoverant, [s.4] Divitiacum atque [s.pl.4] Æduos
because they-knew, (that) Divitiacus and (the) Ædui

appropinquare [is-is.pl.3] finibus [s.pl.2] Bellovacorum.
were-approaching to-the-territories [1] of (the) [1] Bellovaci. | It-[1] was

non poterat persuaderi his, ut morarentur
not [1] able to-be-persuaded to-these, that they-should-delay

diutiùs, neque
longer [they could not be persuaded to remain longer], | nor

ferrent [m.4] auxilium [s.pl.3] suis.
should bring [nor from bringing] assistance to-their (countrymen).

Lesson 34.

Cæsar certior factus à Titurio, omnem equitatum, et levis armaturæ Numidas, funditores, sagittariosque pontem transducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est; hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt: per eorum corpora reliquos audacissimè transire conantes, multitudine telorum repulerunt: primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido, et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causâ viderunt, atque eos res frumentaria deficere cœpit; concilio convocato, constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti; et quorum in fines primùm Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenire; ut potiùs in suis, quàm alienis finibus decertarent; et domesticis copiis rei frumentariæ uterentur. Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, hæc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quòd Divitiacum atque Æduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant; his persuaderi, ut diutiùs morarentur, neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

Exercises on Lessons 33 and 34.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Locus. Corpus. Transire. Telum. Primus. Equitatus. Omnis. Pons. Oppidum. Flumen. Spes. Nostri. Causa. Res. Cœpit. Optimum. Finis. Domus. Exercitus. Potiùs. Auxilium. Diutiùs. Ratio. Cognoverant.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Longer. Assistance. First. Army. Rather. Than. Supplies. Reason. Led. Hope. Town. River. More. Disadvantageous. Thing. Place. They resolved. Best. House. Archers. The enemy. Great. Slew. The re-

mainder. Number. Most boldly. Bodies. Cavalry. When. Bridge. Slingers.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Acriter pugnatum est. Cæsar ad eos contendit. Nostri magnum numerum occiderunt. Reliquos multitudine telorum repulerunt. Hostes ubi intellexerunt. In locum progredi pugnandi causâ. Constituerunt optimum esse domum reverti. Ad eos defendendos convenire. Ad eam sententiam hæc ratio eos deduxit. Quod Divitiacum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi non poterat.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

That they should delay longer. Into whose territories the Romans might have led an army. So that they might rather contend with them in their own country, than in that of others. This reason led them to that determination. They knew that Divitiacus was approaching. They understood that hope had deceived them. They saw our men advance into a more disadvantageous place. Provisions began to fail them. They resolved that it was best to return home. It was sharply fought in that place. Our men slew a great number of them. To cross over on the bodies of their own men. Cæsar being informed. He leads all the cavalry over the bridge.

NUMERALS.

		Cardinals.	Ordinals.
I.	1.	Unus, one	Primus, first.
II.	2.	Duo, two	Secundus, second.
III.	3.	Tres, three	Tertius, third.
IV.	4.	Quatuor, four (and so for the rest)	Quartus, fourth (and so for the rest.)
V.	5.	Quinque	Quintus.
VI.	6.	Sex	Sextus.
VII.	7.	Septem	Septimus.
VIII.	8.	Octo	Octavus.
IX.	9.	Novem	Nonus.
X.	10.	Decem	Decimus.

		Cardinals.	Ordinals.
XI.	11.	Undecim	Undecimus.
XII.	12.	Duodecim	Duodecimus.
XIII.	13.	Tredecim	Tertius decimus.
XIV.	14.	Quatuordecim	Quartus decimus.
XV.	15.	Quindecim	Quintus decimus.
XVI.	16.	Sedecim *or* sexdecim	Sextus decimus.
XVII.	17.	Septendecim	Septimus decimus.
XVIII.	18.	Octodecim	Octavus decimus.
XIX.	19.	Novendecim *or* novemdecim	Nonus decimus.
XX.	20.	Viginti	Vicesimus *or* vigesimus.
XXI.	21.	Viginti unus *or* unus et viginti	Vicesimus primus.
XXII.	22.	Viginti duo *or* duo et viginti	Vicesimus secundus.
XXX.	30.	Triginta	Tricesimus *or* trigesimus.
XL.	40.	Quadraginta	Quadragesimus.
L.	50.	Quinquaginta	Quinquagesimus.
LX.	60.	Sexaginta	Sexagesimus.
LXX.	70.	Septuaginta	Septuagesimus.
LXXX.	80.	Octoginta.	Octogesimus.
XC.	90.	Nonaginta	Nonagesimus.
C.	100.	Centum	Centesimus.
CI.	101.	Centum unus *or* centum et unus	Centesimus primus.
CC.	200.	Ducenti, æ, a	Ducentesimus.
CCC.	300.	Trecenti, æ, a	Trecentesimus.
CD.	400.	Quadringenti, æ, a.	Quadringentesimus.
D.	500.	Quingenti, æ, a	Quingentesimus.
DC.	600.	Sexcenti, æ, a	Sexcentesimus.
DCC.	700.	Septingenti, æ, a	Septingentesimus.
DCCC.	800.	Octingenti, æ, a	Octingentesimus.
DCCCC.	900.	Nongenti, æ, a	Nongentesimus.
M.	1000.	Mille	Millesimus.

All the ordinal numbers are declined like *bonus, bona, bonum.*

Some of the cardinal numbers are declined, others are not. *Unus—one* is declined, as above denoted, under the head of adjectives declined according to the first and second declensions.

Duo — two is thus declined:

PLURAL.

	Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.	
pl. 1. *N.*	Duo............	(o)	duæ	(æ)	duo...............	(o).
pl. 2. *G.*	Duorum.......	(orum)	duarum.........	(arum)	duorum............	(orum).
pl. 3. *D.*	Duobus........	(obus)	duabus..........	(abus)	duobus..........	(obus).
pl. 4. *A.*	Duos *or* duo.	(os *or* o)	duas............	(as)	duo...............	(o).
pl. 5. *V.*	Duo............	(o)	duæ	(æ)	duo...............	(o).
pl. 6. *Ab.*	Duobus........	(obus)	duabus..........	(abus)	duobus..........	(obus).

Ambo—both is declined like *duo.*

Tres—three is declined like adjectives of the third declension in the plural, with two endings: as, like *mitis,* pl. *mites.*

Cardinal numbers, from *quatuor—four* to *centum—a hundred,* both included, are indeclinable; that is, their terminations remain the same, and are not changed, either by case, number, or gender.

From *ducenti* to *nongenti,* both included, those numbers are declined as the plural of *bonus:* as, *boni, æ, a,* as denoted above.

Mille—a thousand is indeclinable when used as an adjective; when used as a substantive it is indeclinable in the singular, but is declinable in the plural: as, *millia.*

Lesson 35.

[s.pl.4] Bellovacos valere plurimùm inter eos, et
(That) (the) Bellovaci prevail most among them, both

[us-utis.6] virtute,(*f.*)•• et [as-atis.6] auctoritate, et [s.6] numero
[1] by (their) [1] valor, and authority, and [1] by (the) [1] number

[o-inis.pl.2] hominum; hos posse conficere centum
[1] of (their) [1] men; (that) these were-able to-raise a hundred

[pl.4] millia [m.pl.4] armata; [s.pl.4] pollicitos sexaginta
thousand armed [armed men]; having-promised sixty

[pl.4] millia [m.pl.4] lecta ex eo [s.6] numero, que·
thousand chosen out-of that number, and (that)

postulare [m.4] imperium [m.2] totius· [m.2] belli
they-demand (the) chief-command of-all (the) war

sibi. [pl.4] Suessiones esse [s.pl.4] suos [s.pl.4] finitimos;
for-themselves. (That the) Suessiones are their neighbors;

possidere [s.pl.4]latissimos (*s.*)•• que·
(and that) they-possess (the) most-extended and

[s.pl.4]feracissimos·(*s.*)•• [er.pl.4]agros; [s.4]Divitiacum fuisse
most-fertile lands; (that) Divitiacus had-been

[x-gis.4]regem apud eos, etiam [6]nostrâ [6]memoriâ,
king over them, even in-our memory,

[s.4]potentissimum (*s.*)•• [a-ius.2]totius [2]Galliæ, qui quum
(the) most-powerful (man) of-all Gaul, who not-only

obtinuerit [m.4]imperium [a.2]magnæ [rs-rtis.2]partis harum
had-obtained (the) empire [1]of (a) [1]great part of-these

[io-ionis.pl.2]regionum,(*f.*)•• tum etiam [2]Britanniæ; [4]Galbam
regions, but also of-Britain; (that) Galba

esse nunc [x-gis.4]regem; [4]summam
was now (their) king; (that) (the) supreme-command

[m.ius.2]totius [m.2]belli deferri ad hunc propter
[1]of (the) [1]whole war is-conferred on him on-account-of (his)

[4]justitiam que· [4]prudentiam· [as-atis.6]voluntate [is-is.pl.2]omnium;
justice and prudence [1]by (the) [1]will of-all;

habere duodecim [m.pl.4]oppida
(that) [1]they [the Suessiones] [1]have twelve towns

[s.6]numero polliceri quinquaginta [pl.4]millia
in-number (that) they-promise fifty thousand

[m.pl.4]armata; [s.pl.4]Nervios totidem,
armed [armed men]; (that) (the) Nervi (promise) as-many,

qui habeantur maximè [s.pl.1]feri inter ipsos,
| who [they] are-deemed (the) most wild among these-same

que· longissimè· absint; [as-atis.pl.4]Atrebates,
(nations), and [1]are farthest [1]distant; (that) (the) Atrebates,

quindecim [pl.4]millia; [s.pl.4]Ambianos, decem
(promise) fifteen thousand; (that) (the) Ambiani, ten

[pl.4]millia; [s.pl.4]Morinos, viginti et quinque [pl.4]millia;
thousand; (that) (the) Morini, twenty and five thousand;

[s.pl.4]Menapios, novem [pl.4]millia; [s.pl.4]Caletos, decem
(that) (the) Menapii, nine thousand; (that) (the) Caleti, ten

[pl.4]millia; [pl.4]Velocasses et [s.pl.4]Veromanduos totidem;
thousand; (that) (the) Velocasses and Veromandui as-many;

[s.pl.4]Aduaticos, viginti novem [pl.4]millia;
(that) (the) Aduatici, twenty nine thousand; (that)

[s.pl.4]Condrusos, [pl.4]Eburones, [s.pl.4]Cæræsos, [s.pl.4]Pæmanos, qui
(the) Condrusi, Eburones, Cæresi, Pæmani, who

appellantur	[m.6] uno	[en-inis.6] nomine	[s.pl.1] Germani,	arbitrari
are-called	by-one	name	Germans,	are-reckoned

ad	quadraginta	[pl.4] millia.
at	forty	thousand.

Lesson 36.

Plurimùm inter eos Bellovacos, et virtute, et auctoritate, et hominum numero valere; hos posse conficere armata millia centum; pollicitos ex eo numero lecta millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; latissimos, feracissimosque agros possidere; apud eos fuisse regem, nostrâ etiam memoriâ, Divitiacum, totius Galliæ potentissimum; qui quum magnæ partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniæ, imperium obtinuerit, nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter justitiam, prudentiamque, summam totius belli omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero duodecim; polliceri millia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maximè feri inter ipsos habeantur, longissimèque absint; quindecim millia Atrebates; Ambianos decem millia; Morinos viginti quinque millia; Menapios novem millia; Caletos decem millia; Velocasses et Veromanduos totidem; Aduaticos viginti novem millia; Condrusos, Eburones, Cæræsos, Pæmanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

Exercises on Lessons 35 and 36.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Quadraginta. Nomen. Appellantur. Virtus. Inter. Potentissimus. Rex. Agri. Latissimus. Finitimi. Imperium. Sexaginta. Millia. Auctoritas. Magnus. Pars. Bellum. Duodecim. Quinquaginta. Ferus. Centum. Quindecim. Decem. Viginti. Quinque. Qui.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Forty. Name. One. Twenty. Ten. Nine. Fifteen. Distant. Among. Farthest. Of all. Part. Now. King.

War. Will. Towns. In number. As many. Who. Men. A hundred. Chosen. Most extended. Lands. Among. Most powerful. Valor.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Qui Germani appellantur. Ambianos polliceri millia armata decem. Qui longissimè absint. Nervii maximè feri inter ipsos habeantur. Omnium voluntate deferri. Ad hunc summam totius belli deferri. Magnæ partis harum regionum imperium obtinuerit. Rex Galba. Totius Galliæ potentissimus. Nostrâ memoriâ. Suessiones feracissimos agros possidere. Totius belli imperium postulare. Hos posse conficere armata millia centum. Bellovacos, auctoritate, et hominum numero valere.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

The Germans are reckoned at forty thousand. They are deemed the most wild among these same nations. They are the farthest distant. That the Atrebates promise fifteen thousand. The Veromandes as many. Who are called Germans. The most powerful man of all Gaul. He had obtained the empire of these regions. That Galba was now their king. The supreme command of the whole war. That they could raise a hundred thousand armed men. That the Suessiones possess the most extended lands. A most powerful king. That the Bellovaci prevail most by their valor.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns, in Latin, may be divided into two principal classes, the *substantive pronouns*, and the *adjective pronouns.*

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

The substantive pronouns are: *ego—I; tu—thou; sui—of himself, herself, itself. Ego—I,* or the first person, is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.
1. *Nom.* Ego; I.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Nos; we.
2. *Gen.* Mei; of me.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Nostrûm *or* nostri; of us.
3. *Dat.* Mihi; to me.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Nobis; to us.
4. *Acc.* Me; me.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Nos; us.
5. *Voc.* ————.	*pl.* 5. *V.* ————
6. *Abl.* Me; in, from, with, by, &c., me.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Nobis; in, from, with, by, &c., us.

This first person, or *ego*, is denoted by placing 1, in parentheses, after the pronoun: as, *me*[(1)]; the cases are denoted, for the singular, by placing the numbers for cases before this pronoun; and the same numbers, with *pl.*, for the plural: as, [3]*mihi*[(1)]; [pl.3]*nobis.*[(1)]

Lesson 37.

[s.pl.3]Conscripti [er–ris.pl.5]patres video [os–oris.pl.4]ora (*n.*)•• atque
Conscript fathers I-see (the) countenances and

[s.pl.4]oculos vestrûm [is–is.pl.2]omnium esse conversos in [4]me;[(1)]••
eyes of-you all to-be turned on me;

video vos esse [s.pl.4]sollicitos non solùm de [er.6]vestro
I-see you to-be solicitous not only concerning your (own)

[m.6]periculo, ac [ei.2 and 2]reipublicæ, verùm etiam, si id
danger, and (that) [1]of (the) [1]republic, but also, if that

depulsum sit, de [m.6]meo
(danger) may-have-been-repelled (by me), concerning my (own)

[m.6]periculo. [1]Vestra [as–atis.1]voluntas erga
peril (in accomplishing it). Your good-will towards

[4]me[(1)]•• est [1]jucunda [3]mihi[(1)]•• in [m.pl.6]malis, et grata
me is pleasant to-me in danger, and grateful

in [or–oris.6]dolore; sed quæso per [is–is.pl.4]immortales
in grief; but I-entreat (you) by the immortal

[s.pl.4]deos! deponite eam, atque
gods! lay-aside this (your good will towards me), and

obliti [2]meæ [us-utis.2]salutis, (*f.*) •• cogitate de vobis
having-forgotten my safety, think of yourselves

ac de [er.pl.6]vestris [r.pl.6]liberis. Si quidem hæc
and of your children. If indeed | this

[io-onis.1]conditio (*f.*) •• [ûs.2]consulatûs data est
condition [1]of (the) [1]consulship has-been-given

[3]mihi, [(1)] •• ut
me [this condition, of being consul, has been imposed on me], that

perferrem [is-is.pl.4]omnes [as-atis.pl.4]acerbitates, [is is pl.4]omnes
I-should-bear all bitter-inflictions, all

[or oris.pl.4]dolores que· [ûs.pl.4]cruciatus·, feram non solùm
griefs and torments, I-will-bear (them) not only

fortiter, sed etiam libenter, dummodo [as-atis.1]dignitas
courageously, but even willingly, provided-that dignity

que· [us-utis.1]salus· (*f.*) •• pariatur vobis que·
and safety may-be-procured for-you and

[s.3]Romano [s.3]populo· [s.pl.6]meis [or-oris.pl.6]laboribus.
[1]for (the) [1]Roman people by-my labors.

[1]Ego [(1)] •• sum ille [l-lis.1]Consul, [s.5]conscripti [er-ris.5]patres,
I am that Consul, O conscript fathers,

cui non [m.1]forum, in quo [is-is.1]omnis [as-atis.1]æquitas
to-whom not (the) forum, in which all equity

continetur; non [s.1]campus, [s.1]consecratus
is-contained; not (the) Campus-Martius, consecrated

[is-is.pl.3]consularibus [m.pl.3]auspiciis; non [1]curia,
to-consular auspices; not (the) senate-chamber,

[m.1]summum [m.1]auxilium [is-is.pl.2]omnium
(the) highest aid (and refuge) of-all

[ns-ntis.pl.2]gentium; non [s.1]domus, (*f.*) ••
nations; not (my) house, (for a man's house is his),

[e-is.1]commune [m.1]perfugium; non [s.1]lectus
common (and inviolable) refuge; not (my) bed

[s.1]datus ad [es-etis.4]quietem; (*f.*) •• denique non hæc
given for repose; finally not this (consular)

[es-is.1]sedes [or-oris.2]honoris unquam fuit [1]vacua
seat of-honor [1]has ever [1]been free

[m.6]periculo [rs-rtis.2]mortis, atque [pl.6]insidiis.
from (the) danger of death, and from-snares.

Lesson 38.

Video, patres conscripti, in me omnium vestrûm ora atque oculos esse conversos; video vos non solùm de vestro ac reipublicæ, verùm etiam, si id depulsum sit, de meo periculo esse sollicitos. Est mihi jucunda in malis, et grata in dolore, vestra erga me voluntas; sed eam, per deos immortales! quæso, deponite, atque, obliti salutis meæ, de vobis ac de liberis vestris cogitate. Mihi quidem si hæc conditio consulatûs data est, ut omnes acerbitates, omnes dolores cruciatusque perferrem; feram non solùm fortiter, sed etiam libenter, dummodo meis laboribus vobis populoque Romano dignitas salusque pariatur. Ego sum ille consul, patres conscripti, cui non forum, in quo omnis æquitas continetur; non campus, consularibus auspiciis consecratus; non curia, summum auxilium omnium gentium; non domus, commune perfugium; non lectus, ad quietem datus; non denique hæc sedes honoris, unquam vacua mortis periculo, atque insidiis fuit.

As the substantive pronouns are very irregular, the student should be made to decline them as they occur. So also, hereafter, the demonstrative and relative pronouns, which also are irregular.

Exercises on Lessons 37 and 38.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Quies. Sedes. Mors Unquam. Labor. Pater. Æquitas. Summus. Domus. Gens. Perfugium. Lectus. Salus. Liberi. Consulatus. Mihi. Dolores. Cruciatus. Fortiter. Oculos. Me. Video. Respublica. Gratus.

English words to be translated into Latin.

I. Repose. Bed. A nation. To me. Aid. With me. Senate chamber. Consular. We. Equity. To

whom. Of me. Father. To us. People. For you. My. Willingly. Torments. Griefs. Indeed. Children. Of us. Think. Us. Safety. Pleasant. Towards. Peril. Also. Only. Countenances. Eyes.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Non hæc sedes unquam vacua periculo fuit. Lectus ad quietem datus. Ego sum ille consul. Forum, in quo omnis æquitas continetur. Consularibus auspiciis consecratus. Auxilium omnium gentium. Video, in me omnium oculos esse conversos. Video, vos de meo periculo esse sollicitos. Est mihi jucunda et grata vestra erga me voluntas. Quæso, de vobis ac de liberis vestris cogitate. Mihi quidem, si hæc conditio consulatûs data est. Omnes dolores perferrem. Non solum fortiter, sed etiam libenter. Meis laboribus populo Romano salus pariatur.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Not my bed given for repose. This seat of honor. That safety may be procured for you by my labors. I am that consul. The forum in which all equity is contained. Consecrated to consular auspices. The aid of all nations. Think of yourselves and of your children. If this condition, of being consul, has been imposed on me. That I should bear all griefs and torments. Not only courageously, but even willingly. I see the eyes of you all to be turned on me. I see you to be solicitous concerning my peril. Your good will towards me is pleasant.

Tu—thou, the second person, is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.
1. *Nom.* Tu; thou.	*pl.* 1. *N.* Vos; ye *or* you.
2. *Gen.* Tui; of thee.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Vestrûm *or* vestri; of you.
3. *Dat.* Tibi; to thee.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Vobis; to you.
4. *Acc.* Te; thee.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Vos; you.
5. *Voc.* Tu; O thou.	*pl.* 5. *V.* Vos; O ye *or* you.
6. *Abl.* Te; in, with, by, &c., thee.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Vobis; in, with, by, &c., you.

Sui—*of himself, of herself, of itself,* or the third person, is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.
1. *Nom.* ————.	*pl.* 1. *N.* ————.
2. *Gen.* Sui; of himself, of herself, of itself.	*pl.* 2. *G.* Sui; of themselves.
3. *Dat.* Sibi; to himself, to herself, to itself.	*pl.* 3. *D.* Sibi; to themselves.
4. *Acc.* Se; himself, herself, itself.	*pl.* 4. *A.* Se; themselves.
5. *Voc.* ————.	*pl.* 5. *V.* ————.
6. *Abl.* Se; in, with, by, &c., himself, &c.	*pl.* 6. *Ab.* Se; in, with, by, &c., themselves.

In *sui*, the third person, the nominative and vocative singular and plural are wanting. The plural of *sui* is like the singular.

As the first person, *ego*, has been denoted by placing (1) between parentheses, after the pronoun, so the second person, *tu*, is denoted by placing (2) between parentheses after it, and the third person, *sui*, by placing (3) in like manner, after it.

The syllable *met* is sometimes added to the end of these substantive pronouns, for the sake of emphasis: as, *egomet*—*I myself.* In the nominative and vocative singular of *tu*—*thou*, *te* or *tement* is used: as, *tute* or *tutement;* and in the accusative and ablative singular of the same *tu*, *te* is added: as, *tete;* and *se* is added to *se:* as, *sese;* all in the same emphatic sense as *met.*

Lesson 39.

Quid, quòd [1] tu (2)•• ipse
| What [what shall I say of this], that you yourself

dedisti [4] te (2)•• in [4] custodiam?
have-given yourself into (the) custody (of a private person)?

Quid, quòd [6] causâ [io-ionis.2] suspicionis (*f.*)••
What, that | for-(the)-sake of-suspicion (necessary)

[2] vitandæ, dixisti,
to-be-avoided [for the purpose of doing away with suspicion], you-said,

[4]te[(2)] •• velle habitare apud [s.4]M. Lepidum? A quo
(that) you wished to-reside with M. Lepidus? By whom

non receptus, ausus es etiam venire ad
not having-been-received, you-dared even to-come to

[4]me;[(1)] •• atque rogasti, ut asservarem [4]te[(2)] •• [2]meæ
me; and you-asked, that I-would-guard you (in) my

[s.2]domi, (*f.*) •• cùm tulisses id [m.4]responsum quoque
house, when you-had-received this answer also

à [6]me,[(1)] •• [4]me[(1)] •• posse esse [s.6]nullo [s.6]tuto [s.6]modo
from me, (that) I could be in-no safe manner

cum· [6]te·[(2)] •• iisdem [es–etis.pl.6]parietibus, qui
with you [1]in (the) [1]same walls (of my house), who

essem in [m.6]magno [m.6]periculo, quòd contineremur
was in great danger, because we-were-contained

iisdem [e–is.pl.6]mœnibus; venisti ad
[1]in (the) [1]same walls-[1]of (the) [1]city; [1]you (then) [1]came to

[s.4]Q. Metellum, [or–oris.4]prætorem; à quo [s.1]repudiatus,
Q. Metellum, (the) prætor; by whom being rejected,

demigrasti ad [s.4]tuum [is–is.4]sodalem (*m.*) ••
you-went-away to your companion (that)

[s.4]optimum (*s.*) •• [r.4]virum [s.4]M. Marcellum,
most-excellent man [said ironically] M. Marcellus,

quem [1]tu[(2)] •• videlicet putasti fore et
whom you certainly thought would-be-both

[s.4]diligentissimum (*s.*) •• ad [s.4]custodiendum [4]te,[(2)] •• et
most-diligent for guarding you, and

[s.4]sagacissimum (*s.*) •• ad [s.4]suspicandum, et
most-sagacious for suspecting (you), and

[s.4]fortissimum (*s.*) •• ad [s.4]vindicandum. Sed quàm
most-resolute for punishing (you). But how

longè videtur, debere abesse à [er–eris.6]carcere
far does-it-seem, (that) he-ought to-be-distant from prison

atque à [m.pl.6]vinculis, qui ipse jam judicaverit [4]se[(3)] ••
and from bonds, who himself now has-judged himself

[s.4]dignum [6]custodiâ?
worthy (of) custody?

Lesson 40.

Quid, quòd tu te ipse in custodiam dedisti? Quid, quòd vitandæ suspicionis causâ, apud M. Lepidum te habitare velle dixisti? A quo non receptus, etiam ad me venire ausus es; atque ut domi meæ te asservarem, rogasti; cùm à me quoque id responsum tulisses, me nullo modo posse iisdem parietibus tuto esse tecum, qui magno in periculo essem, quod iisdem mœnibus contineremur; ad Q. Metellum prætorem venisti; à quo repudiatus, ad sodalem tuum, virum optimum, M. Marcellum demigrasti; quem tu videlicet et ad custodiendum te diligentissimum, et ad suspicandum sagacissimum, et ad vindicandum fortissimum fore putasti. Sed quàm longè videtur à carcere atque à vinculis abesse debere, qui se ipse jam dignum custodiâ judicaverit.

Exercises on Lessons 39 and 40.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Sodalis. Vir. Fortissimus. Fore. Optimum. Te. Carcere. Se. Sibi. Sui. Custodia. Dignus. Vobis. Vos. Vestrum. Me. Domus. Responsum. Modus. Paries. Tibi. Dixisti. Habitare.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Me. You. House. Answer. Manner. Wall. Danger. In the same. Great. Yourself. Custody. What. Suspicion. You said. Companion. Best, or most excellent. Most sagacious. Whom. Most diligent. Prison. To be distant.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Ad prætorem venisti. Ad sodalem tuum demigrasti. Quem tu ad custodiendum te diligentissimum fore putasti. Se ipse dignum custodiâ judicaverit. Tu te ipse in costodiam dedisti. Ad me venire ausus es. Cùm id responsum tulisses. Quod iisdem mœnibus contineremur.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

By whom being rejected. That most excellent man, M. Marcellus. Whom you thought would be most diligent. Most resolute for punishing you. How far ought he to be distant from a prison. You dared to come to me. You asked that I would guard you in my house. Who was in great danger. For the purpose of doing away with suspicion.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Adjective pronouns are those pronouns which, like adjectives, denote gender in addition to number and case. They may be divided into several classes, as *demonstrative*, *relative*, *possessive*, &c.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are those which specify or point out a person or thing. They are: *is—this, that, he, she, it; ille—that, he, she, it; hic—this, he, she, it; iste—this, he, she, it;* used often in contempt.

Hic—this, is thus declined:

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
1. *Nom.*	Hic	hæc	hoc	this.
2. *Gen.*	Hujus	hujus	hujus	of this.
3. *Dat.*	Huic	huic	huic	to this.
4. *Acc.*	Hunc	hanc	hoc	this.
5. *Voc.*				[&c., this.
6. *Abl.*	Hoc	hac	hoc	in, with, by,

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
pl. 1. *N.*	Hi	hæ	hæc	these.
pl. 2. *G.*	Horum	harum	horum	of these.
pl. 3. *D.*	His	his	his	to these.
pl. 4. *A.*	Hos	has	hæc	these.
pl. 5. *V.*				[&c., these.
pl. 6. *Ab.*	His	his	his	in, with, by,

It is here to be observed, that the neuter nominative, accusative, and ablative singular, with the masculine ablative singular, are alike; that the feminine nominative singular, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural, are alike; that the genitive singular, for all genders, is alike; that the dative singular, for all genders, is alike; that the masculine and neuter genitive plural are alike; that the dative and ablative plural, for all the genders, are alike.

The emphatic *ce* is sometimes added to the end of the cases of *hic:* as, *hujusce*, *hosce*, &c.

To designate this demonstrative pronoun *hic*, *ic* is placed for the masculine, *æc* for the feminine, and *oc* for the neuter.

Lesson 41.

[æc.6] Hac [ei.6] re statim [6] cognitâ per
This thing [1] being immediately [1] known by

[or–oris.pl.4] speculatores, [ar–aris.1] Cæsar [s.1] veritus [pl.4] insidias,
(the) scouts, Cæsar having-feared snares,

quòd nondum perspexerat de quâ [6] causâ
because he-[1] had not yet [1] perceived from what cause

discederent, continuit [ûs.4] exercitum que· [ûs.4] equitatum·
they-departed, kept (his) army and cavalry

[m.pl.6] castris. Primâ [x–cis.6] luce, [ei.6] re
in-camp. | [1] In (the) [1] first light [at daybreak], the thing

[6] confirmatâ ab [or–oris.pl.6] exploratoribus, præmisit
being-confirmed by (the) scouts, he-sent-before

[is–is.4] omnem [ûs.4] equitatum, qui moraretur [m.4] novissimum (*s.*)••
all (the) cavalry, | who might-detain (the) last

[en–inis.4] agmen.
troop [who might detain the rear of the retreating enemy].

Præfecit [ic.pl.3] his [s.pl.4] legatos [s.4] Quintum [s.4] Pedium,
He-placed-over these (the) lieutenants Quintus Pedius,

et [s.4] Lucium [s.4] Aurunculeium [4] Cottam. Jussit [s.4] Titum
and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta. He-ordered Titus

[s.4] Labienum [s.4] legatum subsequi cum [is–is.pl.6] tribus
Labienus (the) lieutenant to-follow with three

[io–onis pl.6] legionibus; (*f.*)•• [ic.pl.1] hi [s.pl.1] adorti
legions; these having-attacked

[s.pl.4] novissimos,(*s.*)•• et [s.pl.1] prosecuti
| the-last [the rear], and having-pursued (them)

[m.pl.4] multa [pl.4] millia [ûs.pl.2] passuum, conciderunt [4] magnam
many thousand paces, cut-up a great

[do–dinis.4] multitudinem (*f.*)•• eorum [ns–ntis.pl.2] fugientium. Quum
multitude of-them flying. When

[ic.pl.1] hi ab [m.6] extremo [en–inis.6] agmine, ad quos
these | from (the) hindmost troop [in the rear], to | whom

ventum erat, consisterent,
it-had-been-come [with whom our men had come up], halted,

que· fortiter· sustinerent [ûs.4] impetum [er.pl.2] nostrorum
and bravely sustained (the) attack of-our

[es–itis.pl.2] militum ; [or–oris.pl.1] priores,(*c.*)•• quòd
soldiers; | (those) first [those in the front], because

viderentur abesse à [m.6] periculo, neque continerentur
they-seemed to-be-distant from danger, nor were-held-together

[6] ullâ [as–atis.6] necessitate, neque [m.6] imperio, [or–oris.6] clamore
by-any necessity, or authority, (the) noise

[s.6] exaudito, [do–dinis.pl.6] ordinibus [s.pl.6] perturbatis, [is–is.pl.1] omnes
being-heard, (the) ranks being-disturbed, all

posuerunt [m.4] subsidium [pl.3] sibi [(3)]•• in [6] fugâ.
placed safety to-themselves in flight.

Lesson 42.

Hac re statim, Cæsar, per speculatores cognitâ, insidias veritus, quòd quâ de causâ discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primâ luce, confirmatâ re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, præmisit. His, Q. Pedium, et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos præfecit: T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi novissimos adorti, et multa millia passuum prosecuti, magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt. Quum ab extremo agmine hi, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent, fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent; priores, quòd abesse à periculo viderentur, neque ullâ necessitate, neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus, omnes in fugâ sibi subsidium posuerunt.

Exercises on Lessons 41 and 42.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Hi. Passus. Fugiens. Agmen. Fortiter. Miles. Impetum. Abesse. Periculum. Hos. Clamor. Hanc. Fuga. Hujus. Speculator. Exercitus. Harum. Lux. Equitatus. His. Legatus. Huic. Jussit.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Bravely. Attack. To be distant. Danger. Authority. Noise. Flight. He ordered. Three. These. Many. To this. Paces. Of this. Immediately. To these. Scouts. Snares. Not yet. Army. Cavalry. Light.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quum hi consisterent. Fortiter impetum militum sustinerent. Quòd abesse à periculo. Omnes in fugâ sibi subsidium posuerunt. Cæsar insidias veritus. Exercitum castris continuit. Primâ luce omnem equitatum præmisit. Legatum subsequi jussit. Magnam multitudinem conciderunt.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

From the rear. They sustained the attack of our soldiers. Nor were they held together by any authority. All placed safety to themselves in flight. He placed lieutenants over these. He ordered the lieutenant to follow with two legions. They cut up a great multitude of them flying. Because he had not yet perceived. At daylight he sent forward all the cavalry. He kept his army in camp.

Is—this, that, is thus declined:

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.	
1. *Nom.*	Is	he, this	ea	she, this	id	it, this.
2. *Gen.*	Ejus		ejus		ejus	of this.
3. *Dat.*	Ei		ei		ei	to this.
4. *Acc.*	Eum		eam		id	this.
5. *Voc.*						[&c., this,
6. *Abl.*	Eo		eâ		eo	in, with, by,

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
pl. 1. *N.*	Ii (ei)...........	eæ....................	ea.....................	these.
pl. 2. *G.*	Eorum...........	earum...............	eorum...............	of these.
pl. 3. *D.*	Iis *or* eis........	iis *or* eis...........	iis *or* eis...........	to these.
pl. 4. *A.*	Eos	eas	ea.....................	these.
pl. 5. *V.*	....	....	....	[&c., these.
pl. 6. *Ab.*	Iis *or* eis........	iis *or* eis...........	iis *or* eis...........	in, with, by,

Observe, that the nominative and ablative feminine singular, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural, are alike; that the genitive singular, for all genders, is alike; that the dative singular, for all genders, is alike; that the dative and ablative plural are alike, for all genders.

Dem is sometimes added to the end of *is*, in all the cases, numbers, and genders, the *s* of the nominative singular masculine, and the *d* of the nominative and accusative singular neuter being omitted: as, nominative singular, *idem, eadem, idem.*

The *m* of the accusative singular masculine and feminine, and of the genitive plural, is changed into *n*: as, accusative singular, *eundem, eandem*; genitive plural, *eorundem, earundem, eorundem.*

To designate the demonstrative pronoun *is*, *is* is placed for the masculine, *ea* for the feminine, and *id* for the neuter.

Lesson 43.

[s.pl.1] Helvetii	[s.pl.1] commoti	[s.6] repentino	[us.6] adventu	[is.2] ejus,
The Helvetians	moved	[1] by (the) [1] sudden	arrival	of-him

	quum	intelligerent,	illum	fecisse	[s.6] uno	[ei.6] die
[Cæsar],	when	they-understood, (that)	he	had-done	in-one	day

[id.4] id,	quod	ipsi		ægerrimè	confecerant	viginti
that,	which	themselves	[1] had	scarcely	[1] accomplished	in-twenty

[ei.pl.6] diebus,		ut	transirent	[en–inis.4] flumen,
days,	(namely)	that	they-might-pass	the river,

mittunt	[s.pl 4] legatos	ad	[is.4] eum;	cujus
they-sent	ambassadors	to	him;	of-which

[io-ionis.2] legationis (*f.*) •• Divico fuit [ps-pis.1] princeps, qui fuerat
embassy Divico was chief, who was

[x-cis.1] dux [s.pl.2] Helvetiorum [m.6] Cassiano [m.6] bello.
(the) leader [1] of (the) [1] Helvetians [1] in (the) [1] Cassian war.

[is.1] Is ita egit cum [ar-aris.6] Cæsare;
| He thus acted with Cæsar [he thus addressed Cæsar];

"si [s.1] Romanus [s.1] populus faceret [x-cis.4] pacem cum
"if (the) Roman people would-make peace with

[s.pl.6] Helvetiis, [s.pl.4] Helvetios [s.pl.4] ituros in
(the) Helvetians, (the) Helvetians | would-be-going [would go] into

[ea.4] eam [rs-rtis.4] partem, atque [s.pl.4] futuros ibi, ubi [r-ris.1] Cæsar
that part, and would-remain there, where Cæsar

constituisset, atque voluisset esse;
might-have-appointed (for them), and wished (them) to-be;

sin perseveraret persequi [m.6] bello, reminisceretur
but-if he-should-persevere to-follow with-war, he-should-remember

et [us-eris.2] veteris [m.2] incommodi [s.2] Romani [s.2] populi, et
both (the) old misfortune [1] of (the) [1] Roman people, and

[2] pristinæ [us-utis.2] virtutis (*f.*) •• [s.pl.2] Helvetiorum. Quòd
(the) ancient valor [1] of (the) [1] Helvetians. Because

improvisò adortus esset [s.4] unum
unexpectedly he-had-attacked (a part of the army composed of) one

[s.4] pagum, quum [is.pl.1] ii, qui transîssent [en-inis.4] flumen
canton, when those, who had-passed-over the river [1] were

non possent ferre [m.4] auxilium [s.pl.3] suis;
not [1] able to-bring assistance to-their (people); [1] he [Cæsar]

ne tribueret aut magnoperè [3] suæ [us-utis.3] virtuti (*f.*) ••
[1] should not [1] attribute either too-much to-his valor

ob [ea.4] eam [ei.4] rem, aut despiceret ipsos.
on-account-of that thing, or despise themselves.

[pl.4] Se [(3)] •• ita didicisse à [s.pl.6] suis [er-ris.pl.6] patribus que·
That they [1] had so [1] learned from their fathers and

[or-oris.pl.6] majoribus·, ut contenderent magis
ancestors, that they-should-contend more

[us-utis.6] virtute (*f.*) •• quàm [s.6] dolo, aut niterentur
by-valor than by-deceit, or strive (to succeed)

[pl.6] insidiis. Quare ne committeret,
by-snares (or ambushes). Wherefore he-[1] should not [1] act-so,

ut [is.1] is [s.1] locus, ubi constitissent, caperet [en-inis.4] nomen
that (the) place, where they-had-stood, should-take (its) name

ex	[as-atis.6] calamitate	[s.2] Romani	[s.2] populi,	et
from	(the) calamity	[1] of (the) [1] Roman	people,	and

[io-onis.6] internecione (*f.*)••	[ûs.2] exercitûs,	ac	proderet
(the) massacre	[1] of (the) [1] army,	and	should-deliver

[4] memoriam."
(the) memory (thereof to posterity)."

Lesson 44.

Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, quum id quod ipsi diebus viginti ægerrimè confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Cæsare egit: "Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi Cæsar constituisset, atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristinæ virtutis Helvetiorum. Quòd improvisò unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transîssent, suis auxilium ferre non possent: ne ob eam rem, aut suæ magnoperè virtuti tribueret, aut ipsos despiceret. Se ita à patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quàm dolo contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani, et internecione exercitûs nomen caperet, ac memoriam proderet."

Exercises on Lessons 43 and 44.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Improvisò. Flumen. Ferre. Virtus. Patres. Locus. Internecio. Nomen. Adventus. Ejus. Dies. Id. Ægerrimè. Legati. Eum. Mittunt. Ei. Princeps. Hac. Pax. Bello. Eis. Pars. Eorum. Ubi. Ii. Pristinus.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Assistance. This. Fathers. Ancestors. More. Deceit. Place. Peace. Old. Ancient. Unexpectedly. Canton. Arrival. Day. Twenty. Embassy. Chief. Leader. War. Moved.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quòd unum pagum adortus esset. Qui suis auxilium ferre non possent. Ne ob eam rem, ipsos despiceret. Se à majoribus suis didicisse. Is locus ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet. Helvetii ejus adventu commoti. Legatos ad eum mittunt. Divico ita cum Cæsare egit. Si pacem faceret. Ibi futuros, ubi Cæsar voluisset. Reminisceretur pristinæ virtutis Helvetiorum.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

And should deliver the memory thereof to posterity. They were not able to bring assistance to their people. He should not despise them on account of that thing. They had learned from their fathers that they should contend more by valor than by deceit. The place where they had stood. If they would make peace with the Helvetians. He should remember the old misfortune. Because he had attacked one canton. Moved by his arrival. That which they had accomplished in twenty days. They send ambassadors to Cæsar. He thus acted with Cæsar.

Ille—that, is thus declined:

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
1. *Nom.*	Ille	illa	illud	that.
2. *Gen.*	Illius	illius	illius	of that.
3. *Dat.*	Illi	illi	illi	to that.
4. *Acc.*	Illum	illam	illud	that.
5. *Voc.*				[&c., that.
6. *Abl.*	Illo	illâ	illo	in, with, by,

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
pl. 1. *N.*	Illi	illæ	illa	those.
pl. 2. *G.*	Illorum	illarum	illorum	of those.
pl. 3. *D.*	Illis	illis	illis	to those.
pl. 4. *A.*	Illos	illas	illa	those.
pl. 5. *V.*	....	....	....	[&c., those.
pl. 6. *Ab.*	Illis	illis	illis	in, with, by,

Iste—this is declined like *ille;* so is also the intensive or emphatic pronoun *ipse—himself, ipsa—herself,* and *ipsum —itself. Ipse* has *ipsum,* instead of *ipsud,* in the nominative and accusative singular; in all the other cases, numbers, and genders, it is like *ille.*

Observe, that the nominative and ablative singular feminine, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural, are alike; that the genitive singular, for all genders, is the same; that the dative singular, for all genders, is the same; as are also the dative and ablative plural, for all genders.

To designate the demonstrative pronoun *ille, le* is placed for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *lud* for the neuter; in *iste, te* is placed for the masculine, *ta* for the feminine, and *tud* for the neuter; in *ipse, se* is placed for the masculine, *sa* for the feminine, and *sum* for the neuter.

Lesson 45.

[s.1] Divitiacus [s.1] complexus [ar–aris.4] Cæsarem cum [pl.6] multis
Divitiacus having-embraced Cæsar with many

[pl.6] lacrymis cœpit obsecrare, "ne statueret
tears began to-entreat, "(that) he-[1] would not [1] determine

quid graviùs in [er–ris.4] fratrem; [4] se [(3)] •• scire
any-thing severely against (his) brother; (that) he knew

[lud.pl.4] illa esse [m.pl.4] vera; nec quemquam capere
those (things) to-be true; nor (that) any-one took

plus [or–oris.2] doloris ex [id.6] eo, quàm [4] se; [(3)] •• propterea
more grief from that (thing), than himself; because

quòd (quum [se.1] ipse posset plurimum
that (| when he-himself was-able (to do) (the) most

[s.2]domi (*f.*)•• atque in [6]reliquâ [6]Galliâ, [le.1]ille minimum,
at-home and in remaining Gaul, he (the) least,

propter [4]adolescentiam),
on-account-of (his) youth), [when, he, Divitiacus, had the greatest

influence at home, and in the rest of Gaul, he, his brother, on account of

crevisset per [4]se [(3)]••
his youth, had least], | he-had-grown by himself [he, his brother,

quibus
had grown in power through his, Divitiacus', means] which

[ps–pis.pl.6]opibus ac [s-pl.6]nervis uteretur non solùm ad
power and strength he-did-use not only to

[4]minuendam [4]gratiam, sed penè ad [4]suam
diminishing (his, Divitiacus',) authority, but almost to his

[ei.4]perniciem; [4]sese [(3)]•• tamen commoveri
[Divitiacus'] destruction; (that) he however was-moved

et [s.6]fraterno [or–oris.6]amore, et [io–ionis.6]existimatione (*f.*)••
both by-fraternal love, and [1]by (the) [1]opinion

[s.2]vulgi, quòd si quid [us–oris.1]gravius (*c.*)••
[1]of (the) [1]common-people, because if any-thing serious

accidisset [is.3]ei à [ar–aris.6]Cæsare, quum [se.1]ipse
had-happened to-him from Cæsar, when he-himself

teneret [is.4]eum [s.4]locum [2]amicitiæ apud [is.4]eum,
[Divitiacus] held that place of-friendship with him,

[o–inis.4]neminem existimaturum
[Cæsar] (that) no-one would-think (that this) [1]was

non factum [6]suâ [as–atis.6]voluntate; ex quâ
not [1]done with-his [Divitiacus'] consent; from which

[ei.6]re futurum utì [s.pl.1]animi [a-ius.2]totius [2]Galliæ
thing it-would-be that (the) minds of-all Gaul

averterentur à [4]se." [(3)]•• Quum [ns–ntis.1]flens
would-be-turned-away from himself." When weeping

peteret [oc.pl.4]hæc à [ar–aris.6]Cæsare,
he-sought those (things) from Cæsar,

[s–ris.pl.6]pluribus (*multum, c.*)•• [m.pl.6]verbis, [ar–aris.1]Cæsar
with-many words, Cæsar

prehendit [is.2]ejus [4]dextram; [s.1]consolatus, rogat
takes his right-hand; having-consoled (him), he-asks

faciat [is–is.4]finem orandi; ostendit
(that) he-would-make (an) end of-entreating; he-shows (that)

[is.2]ejus	[4]gratiam	esse	[m.2]tanti	apud	[4]se,[(3)]••	utì
his	favor	was	so-much	with	himself,	that
condonet	et	[4]injuriam	[2]reipublicæ,	et	[s.4]suum	
he-would-forgive	both	(the) injury	[1]of (the) [1]republic,	and	his-own	
[or-oris.4]dolorem		[is.2]ejus	[as-atis.3]voluntati	ac	[x-cis.pl.3]precibus.	
grief	[1]to	his	[1]good-will	and	prayers.	

Lesson 46.

Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis Cæsarem complexus obsecrare cœpit, "ne quid gravius in fratrem statuerit, scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus, quàm se, doloris capere; propterea quòd, (quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi, atque in reliquâ Galliâ, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset) per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis, non solùm ad minuendam gratiam, sed penè ad perniciem suam uteretur; sese tamen et amore fraterno, et existimatione vulgi commoveri; quòd si quid ei à Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiæ apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non suâ voluntate factum; quâ ex re futurum, utì totius Galliæ animi à se averterentur." Hæc quum pluribus verbis flens à Cæsare peteret, Cæsar ejus dextram prehendit; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, utì et reipublicæ injuriam, et suum dolorem, ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet.

Exercises on Lessons 45 and 46.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Cœpit. Flens. Dextra. Finis. Dolor. Preces. Frater. Illa. Vera. Gratia. Domi. Adolescentia. Ille. Penè. Pernicies. Amor. Vulgus. Ipse. Amicitiæ. Nemo. Voluntas.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Authority. Destruction. However. Fraternal. The common people. He himself. Friendship. No one. Con-

sent. Brother. More. Grief. Because. At home. Youth. Minds. Right hand. End. Prayers. Many

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Si quid ei accidisset. Suâ voluntate factum. Animi à se averterentur. Hæc quum à Cæsare peteret. Ejus dextram prehendit. Rogat finem orandi faciat. Utì injuriam ejus precibus condonet. Divitiacus obsecrare Cæsarem cœpit. Scire se, illa esse vera. Quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi posset. Quibus ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese amore fraterno commoveri.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

When weeping he sought these things from Cæsar. Having consoled him, he takes his right hand. He shows that his favor was so much with himself. Almost to his destruction. That he, however, was moved by the opinion of the common people. If any thing had happened to him. It was done with his consent. Which he did use. He began to entreat.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns are *qui—who*, with the compounds *quicunque — whoever*, and *quisquis — whoever*. They are always in the same gender and number as the nouns to which they relate.

Qui—who, is thus declined :

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.	
1. *Nom.*	Qui	who,	quæ	who,	quod	which.
2. *Gen.*	Cujus	whose,	cujus	whose,	cujus	of which.
3. *Dat.*	Cui	to whom,	cui	to whom,	cui	to which.
4. *Acc.*	Quem	whom,	quam	whom,	quod	which.
5. *Voc.*		[whom,		[whom,		[which.
6. *Abl.*	Quo	in, with, &c.,	quâ	in, with, &c.,	quo	in, with, &c.,

PLURAL

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
pl. 1. *N.*	Qui.......... who,	quæ .... who,	quæ........... which.
pl. 2. *G.*	Quorum..... whose,	quarum ...... whose,	quorum ....of which.
pl. 3. *D.*	Quibus......to whom,	quibus ....to whom,	quibus ....to which.
pl. 4. *A.*	Quos......... whom,	quas.......... whom,	quæ........... which.
pl. 5. *V.*	.... [whom,	.... [whom,	.... [which.
pl. 6. *Ab.*	Quibus..in, with, &c.,	quibus....in, with, &c.,	quibus.....in, with, &c.,

The nominative masculine singular and plural are alike. The nominative feminine singular and plural, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural, are alike. The genitive singular, in all genders, is the same. The dative singular, in all genders, is the same. The dative and ablative plural, in all genders, are the same.

Quicunque—whoever, is declined like *qui*, *cunque* being added to the end of each case: as, *cujuscunque*.

In *quisquis—whoever*, both words are declined: as, *quemquem*.

Quî is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders. *Queis* or *quîs* occurs for *quibus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

These relative pronouns are denoted by *ui* for the masculine, *uæ* for the feminine, and *od* for the neuter.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are *quis* and *qui—who, what; quisnam* and *quinam—who, what;* likewise, *ecquis, ecquisnam, numquis—is there any;* also, *cujus, cujæ, cujum—whose;* and *cujas, cujatis—of what country.*

Qui is declined like the relative *qui;* so also *quinam*, *nam* being added to all the cases.

Quis is declined like *qui*, except that it has *quis* in the nominative singular masculine, and *quid* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter; this variation is denoted by *uis* and by *id. Quisnam* is declined like *quis;* so also *ecquis, ecquisnam, numquis—is there any; ecquis* has some-

times *ecqua* in the nominative singular feminine; *numquis*, or *nunquis*, has *nunqua* in the neuter plural nominative and accusative.

Lesson 47.

[is.6] Eodem [ei.6] die [s.1] factus [or–oris.1] certior (*c.*)•• ab
[1] On (the) [1] same day | being-made sure by

[or–oris.pl.6] exploratoribus
(the) scouts [being informed with certainty by the scouts]

[is–is.pl.4] hostes consedisse sub
(that) (the) enemy had-set-down | under [at the foot of]

[ns–ntis.4] montem, (*m.*)•• octo [pl.1] millia [ûs.pl.2] passuum ab
(the) mountain, eight thousand paces from

[m.pl.6] castris [se.2] ipsius; misit,
| the camp of-him [from his, Cæsar's, camp]; he-sent (those),

[ui.pl.1] qui cognoscerent, [is–is.1] qualis esset [1] natura
who might-ascertain, what might-be (the) nature

[ns–ntis.2] montis, et [is–is.1] qualis [ûs.1] ascensus in [ûs.6] circuitu
[1] of (the) [1] mountain and what (the) ascent in (the) circuit

Renuntiatum est esse [is–is.4] facilem. De [6] tertiâ
(thereof). It-was-announced to-be easy. At (the) third

[6] vigiliâ, jubet [s.4] Titum [s.4] Labienum [s.4] legatum, pro
watch, he-orders (his) lieutenant, | for

[or–oris.6] prætore, cum [pl.6] duabus
pretor [with pretorian power], with two

[io–inis.pl.6] legionibus, (*f.*)•• et [is.pl.6] iis [x–cis.pl.6] ducibus,
legions, and (the) same guides,

[ui,pl.1] qui cognoverant [er–ineris.4] iter, (*n.*)•• ascendere [m.4] summum
who knew (the) road, to-ascend (the) highest

[m.4] jugum [ns–ntis.2] montis; (*m.*)•• ostendit [id.1] quid sit [m.2] sui
top [1] of (the) [1] mountain; he-shows what was his

[m.2] consilii. [se.1] Ipse de [6] quartâ [6] vigiliâ contendit
intention. He-himself about (the) fourth watch hastened

ad [is.pl.4] eos [is.6] eodem [er–ineris.6] itinere, (*m.*)•• [od.6] quo
to them [1] by (the) [1] same road, by-which

[is–is.pl.1] hostes ierant; que· mittit [is–is.4] omnem [ûs.4] equitatum·
(the) enemy had-gone; and sends all (the) cavalry

ante [4] se.[(3)]•• [s.1] Publius [s.1] Considius, [ui.1] qui habebatur
before him. Publius Considius, who was-held

[s.1] peritissimus (*s.*)•• [is–is.2] militaris [ei.2] rei, et fuerat in
most-skilled (in) military affairs, and had-been in

[ûs.6] exercitu [s.2] Lucii [2] Syllæ, et postea [s.2] Marci
(the) army of-Lucius Syllæ, and afterwards (in that) of-Marcus

[s.2] Crassi, præmittitur cum [or–oris.pl.6] exploratoribus.
Crassus, is-sent-forward with (the) scouts.

Lesson 48.

Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub montem consedisse, millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset natura montis, et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit; renunciatum est, facilem esse. De tertiâ vigiliâ Titum Labienum legatum, pro prætore, cum duabus legionibus, et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Syllæ, et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus, præmittitur.

Exercises on Lessons 47 and 48.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Vigiliâ. Dux. Iter. Mons. Jubet. Quid. Ipse. Eodem. Hostes. Contendit. Equitatus. Mittit. Peritissimus. Exploratores. Passus. Octo. Qualis. Ascensus. Misit. Facilis.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Mountain. Paces. Who. Ascent. Circuit. Easy. Guides. Third. Two. Watch. The same. He orders. Day. Scouts. Enemy. He is sent forward. They knew. The highest. Road. Top. What. He hastened. He sends. Cavalry. Most skilled. Army.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Titum Labienum summum jugum montis ascendere jubet. Ipse eodem itinere ad eos contendit. Equitatum ante se mittit. Publius Considius cum exploratoribus præmittitur. Certior factus, hostes sub montem consedisse. Qui cognoscerent, misit. Qualis esset natura montis. Renunciatum est, facilem esse.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Considius is sent forward with the scouts. Who knew the road. He shows what his intention was. He himself hastened to them. By the same road he sends all the cavalry before him. Who was held most skilled in military affairs. At the foot of the mountain. He sent those, who might ascertain what might be the nature of the mountain. It was announced to be easy. With two legions and the same guides.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns are *meus—my*, *tuus—thy*, *suus—his*, *noster—our*, *vester—yours*, and *cujus—whose*. *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus* and *cujus*, are declined and designated like *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum—good*; *noster* and *vester* like *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum—slothful*. *Pte* is sometimes added to the ablative singular of possessive pronouns: as, *suapte manu—by his own hand*. *Met* is sometimes added to *meus*, &c

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns are *aliquis—some one*, *siquis—if any*, *nequis—lest any*, *quisque—every one*, *quisquam—any one*, *quispiam—some one*, *unusquisque—each*, *aliquispiam—any, some*, *quidam—a certain one*, *quilibet* and *quivis—any one you please*.

Aliquis is declined like *quis*, except that it has *aliqua* in the nominative singular feminine, and in the nominative and

accusative plural neuter; also, in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, it has *aliquod* or *aliquid*.

Siquis and *nequis* are declined like *aliquis*, but sometimes have *siquæ*, *nequæ*, in the nominative singular feminine.

Quisque, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*, with some slight variation in the nominative and accusative neuter singular.

Unusquisque is declined like *unus* and *quis*: as, nominative, *unusquisque*; genitive, *uniuscujusque*.

Quidam, *quilibet*, and *quivis*, are declined like *qui*. *Quidam* has generally an *n* before *d*, in the accusative singular and genitive plural: as, accusative singular, *quendam*; genitive plural, *quorundam*.

VERBS.

The changes that a verb undergoes are called *conjugations*. There are four conjugations. The first has *ā* (long) before the infinitive active present: as, *amāre—to love*; the second has *ē* (long) before the same: as, *monēre—to advise*; the third has *ĕ* (short) before the same: as, *regĕre—to rule*; and the fourth has *ī* (long) before the same: as, *audīre—to hear*.

To the conjugations of Latin verbs belong *voices*, *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*; besides *participles*, *gerunds*, and *supines*.

Voices.—There are two voices, *active* and *passive*: as, active, *amo—I love*; passive, *amor—I am loved*.

Moods.—There are four moods:—1st, the *indicative*, which absolutely asserts an action: as, *amo—I love*; 2d, the *subjunctive*, which expresses an action as modified by some condition or circumstance, or asserts an action in an indirect or not absolute manner: as, *amem—I may love, si amem—if I love*; or indirect assertion, *amem—I love*; 3d, the *imperative mood*, which commands: as, *ama—love thou*; and 4th,

the *infinitive mood*, which expresses an action in an indefinite or unlimited sense, and has neither number nor person.

In Latin, there is often a peculiar construction, or use, of the infinitive, namely: when the nominative of the verb in the indicative, in English, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the indicative, in English, is put in the infinitive. This construction is denoted in the interlinear translations above, in English, by placing (*that*) in parentheses, before the sentence: as, *hostes consedisse*—(*that*) *the enemy had set down*. So that, in English, this form of the infinitive is expressed by the indicative, with *that* commencing the sentence.

Tenses.—There are six tenses in Latin, denoted by their termination in the active voice:—1st, the *present:* as, *amo*—*I love*, or *am loving;* 2d, the *imperfect:* as, *amabam*—*I was loving*, or *did love*, in the sense of not having completed the action; 3d, *future:* as, *amabo*—*I shall love;* 4th, the *perfect*, which denotes an action finished: as, *amavi*—*I have loved;* 5th, the *pluperfect:* as, *amaveram*—*I had loved;* 6th, *future perfect:* as, *amavero*—*I shall have loved.*

Numbers.—There are two numbers, the *singular* and *plural.*

Persons.—There are three persons, the *first*, *second*, and *third.*

Participles.—Under this name adjective participles are denoted: that is, uniting the sense of an adjective with that of the verb, and having voice and tense, but no persons, and are declined like an adjective. There are four participles, namely:—two in the active voice: as, present, *amans*—*loving;* future, *amaturus*—*about to love;* and two in the passive voice: as, perfect, *amatus*—*loved*, or *having been loved;* future, *amandus*—*to be loved.*

Gerunds.—Under this name noun participles are denoted: that is, uniting the sense of a noun with that of the verb. The gerund is declined like a noun of the second declension, but has no nominative and no plural; as, *amandi*—*of loving.*

Supines.—There are two supines, the supine in *um*, and the supine in *u*. The supine in *um* is a modified meaning of the noun participle; its principal meaning is to be about to be occupied in the action, or carrying on of the action. It is generally used after a verb of motion or transfer: as, *pabulatum mittere—to send a foraging.* The supine in *u* may be considered as a species of adverb participles, and is principally used with, or to limit, or modify adjectives: as, *mirabile dictu—wonderful to tell*, or *to be told*, or *wonderful in telling*, or *wonderful, tellingly.*

It is in the first person singular, indicative mood, active voice, that words are to be looked for in the dictionary: as, *amo, moneo, rego, audio.*

There are three principal tenses, or forms, from which all the other tenses and forms, in the different voices and moods, are derived, namely: first, the *present active indicative*, or the *present infinitive* of the same; second, the *perfect active indicative;* and third, the supine in *um.*

From the present active indicative, or present active infinitive, are derived, or formed, the present, the imperfect, and the future tenses, in each voice; the present and imperfect subjunctive of each voice; the present infinitive of each voice; also, the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

From the perfect active indicative are derived, or formed, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active voice; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, active voice; and the perfect infinitive, active voice.

From the supine in *um* are derived, or formed, the supines in *um* and *u*, the perfect participle, and all the compound tenses of the passive voice, formed by this participle and *sum;* likewise, the future active participle; also, the future infinitive passive, formed by the supine in *um*, and the passive infinitive of the verb *iri*, and the future active infinitive, formed by the future active participle and *esse.*

These principal forms, from which all the other tenses are

derived, are denoted in the dictionary: that is, the terminations of the infinitive, perfect, and supine, are placed after the indicative present, first person, active voice.

In order to indicate the above different parts and modifications of the verb, the following signs and abbreviations are used:

VOICES.—*P* placed before the numbers indicating tense, or before the sign of the subjunctive mood, denotes the passive voice; the active voice does not require to be indicated. When the verb is deponent, *d* is used, in place of *p*.

MOODS.—The indicative mood does not require to be particularly designated. The subjunctive mood is denoted by an *s*, or *sb*, placed before the numbers indicating tense. The imperative mood has an *im*, placed in like manner; and the infinitive an *in*.

TENSES.—Tenses are denoted by numbers placed in parentheses before the verb: as, (1) indicates the present tense, (2) the imperfect tense, (3) the future, (4) the perfect, (5) the pluperfect, and (6) the future perfect.

NUMBERS AND PERSONS.—Persons are denoted by placing 1 for the first person, 2 for the second person, and 3 for the third person, in brackets [1], after the verb. The plural is indicated by placing *pl.* before these numbers: as, (1) *amamus* [pl.1], *we love*. The singular requires no sign: as, (1) *amo.* [1]

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.—Participles are denoted by placing *par.*, in brackets, after the verb: as, (1) *amans* [par.]; the declension of the participle is placed next it, after the sign of tense: as, (1).ns-ntis.1 *amans* [part.]. Gerunds are, in like manner, indicated by placing [*ger.*] after the verb. These gerunds have not the signs of tense, but only those of declension before them. The supine in *um* is denoted by placing [*um*] in brackets after the verb, and that in *u* by, in like manner, placing [*u*].

The letters, or terminations, indicating the three principal tenses or parts, from which all the other tenses and forms are

derived, are placed first before the verb : as, | ar–avi–atum.(1) *amo* [1], *I love.*

The first conjugation is denoted by *ar–avi–atum ; ar* denoting either the first person singular, present indicative active, by dropping *ar* and adding *o :* as, *amo—I love ;* or the infinitive of the same, by adding *e :* as, *amare—to love.* When any irregular form of this conjugation occurs, other letters must be added to all or some of these three principal tenses or forms : as, in *do—I give, ar–edi–atum* indicating that these, and the tenses formed from them, are added to the commencing *d* of *do.*

The second conjugation is denoted by *ēr–ui–itum,* or by *ēr–evi–etum ;* the *r* of the first form is dropped, and *o* is added, to form the present tense, first person singular, and *e* is added to the end of *ēr* for the present infinitive. Besides these, there are irregularities in these principal forms, which will require to be indicated by other or additional letters.

The third conjugation is very irregular as respects these three principal tenses, or forms, especially in the perfect and supine. The conjugation itself is always denoted by *ĕr* for the present and infinitive present ; the *ĕr* being dropped, and *o* added for the present, first person singular, and an *e* added to *ĕr* for the infinitive ; but, on account of the great irregularities, the *ĕr* would often require more letters before it : as in *rego—to rule, gĕr–xi–ctum ;* making *rego, regĕre, rexi, rectum.* Sometimes the perfect begins with a different letter from the present, when it may be necessary to put the entire verb in italics to denote this : as in *ago—to act, gĕr–egi–ctum ;* making *ago, agĕre, egi, actum.*

The fourth conjugation is denoted by *ir–ivi–itum ;* the *r* of the first form *ir* is dropped, and *o* added to form the first person present singular, and *e* is added to the end of *ir* to form the infinitive. Those verbs of this conjugation that are irregular, are designated as above.

When, in any of the four conjugations, a letter, or letters, that belong to the first principal part, are dropped in the

second or third principal part, or in both, such dropped letter, or letters, are placed in parentheses ( ) before the first principal part: as in *jubeo—I order, (b) ĕr–ssi–ssum;* making *jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum.*

A perpendicular line is placed before one of these principal tenses, or forms, to denote that the tense or form of the verb is derived from it: as, ar– | avi-atum.(5) *amaveram* [1], *I had loved;* or, | ar-avi-atum.(2) *amabat* [3], *he did love,* or *was loving.*

When the present differs altogether from the infinitive, both are denoted entire in italics, between parentheses: as in *sum—I am (sum–esse), e–ui;* or, as in *eo—I go (eo–iri), ir–ivi–itum;* all the principal parts being in this last example entire, and in italics. When any principal part differs entirely from its regular termination, it will be necessary to substitute the entire verb, in italics, therefor: as in *do—I give, ar–dedi–datum;* making *do, dare, dedi, datum.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Indicative.	Present Infinitive.	Perfect Indicative.	Supine.
Amo.	Amare (ar).	Amavi (avi).	Amatum (atum).
I-love.	to-love.	I-have-loved.	a-loving.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Ar." (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., love.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(1) Amo [1], I love	o.
(1) Amas [2], thou lovest	as.
(1) Amat [3], he loves	at.
PLURAL.	
(1) Amamus [pl. 1], we love	amus.
(1) Amatis [pl. 2], ye *or* you love	atis.
(1) Amant [pl. 3], they love	ant.

"*Ar.*" (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was loving, or did love.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(2) Amabam [1], I was loving, *or* did love	abam.
(2) Amabas [2], thou wast loving, *or* didst love	abas.
(2) Amabat [3], he was loving, *or* did love	abat.

PLURAL.

(2) Amabamus [pl. 1], we were loving, *or* did love	abamus.
(2) Amabatis [pl. 2], you were loving, *or* did love	abatis.
(2) Amabant [pl. 3], they were loving, *or* did love	abant.

"*Ar.*" (3) *Future Tense. I, &c., shall or will love.*

SINGULAR.

(3) Amabo [1], I shall love	abo.
(3) Amabis [2], thou wilt love	abis.
(3) Amabit [3], he will love	abit.

PLURAL.

(3) Amabimus [pl. 1], we shall love	abimus.
(3) Amabitis [pl. 2], you will love	abitis.
(3) Amabunt [pl. 3], they will love	abunt.

"*Avi.*" (4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., have loved, or loved.*

SINGULAR.

(4) Amavi [1], I have loved	avi.
(4) Amavisti [2], thou hast loved	a[vi]sti.
(4) Amavit [3], he has loved	avit.

PLURAL.

(4) Amavimus [pl. 1], we have loved	avimus.
(4) Amavistis [pl. 2], you have loved	a[vi]stis.
(4) Amaverunt *or* amavere [pl. 3], they have loved	a[ve]runt *or* avere.

"*Avi.*" (5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had loved.*

SINGULAR.

(5) Amaveram [1], I had loved	a[ve]ram.
(5) Amaveras [2], thou hadst loved	a[ve]ras.
(5) Amaverat [3], he had loved	a[ve]rat.

PLURAL.

(5) Amaveramus [pl. 1], we had loved	a[ve]ramus.
(5) Amaveratis [pl. 2], you had loved	a[ve]ratis.
(5) Amaverant [pl. 3], they had loved	a[ve]rant.

"Avi." (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have loved.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(6) Amavero [1], I shall have loved	a[ve]ro.
(6) Amaveris [2], thou wilt have loved	a[ve]ris.
(6) Amaverit [3], he will have loved	a[ve]rit.
PLURAL.	
(6) Amaverimus [pl. 1], we shall have loved	a[ve]rimus.
(6) Amaveritis [pl. 2], you will have loved	a[ve]ritis.
(6) Amaverint [pl. 3], they will have loved	a[ve]rint.

In the above it will be seen, that the (1) present, (2) imperfect, and (3) future tenses, with their numbers and persons, are formed from the first principal part, *ar;* and that the (4) perfect, (5) pluperfect, and (6) perfect future tenses, with their numbers and persons, are formed from the second principal part, *avi.*

In the (1) present tense, the *ar* is changed into *o* in the first person singular, into *as* in the second, and into *at* in the third person singular; in the plural, this *ar* is changed into *amus* in the first, into *atis* in the second, and into *ant* in the third person.

In the (2) imperfect tense, the *ar* is changed, in the singugar, into *abam* in the first person, into *abas* in the second person, and into *abat* in the third person; in the plural, the *ar* is changed into *abamus* in the first person, into *abatis* in the second person, and into *abant* in the third person.

In the (3) future tense, this *ar* is changed, in the singular, into *abo* in the first person, into *abis* in the second person, and into *abit* in the third person; in the plural, it is changed into *abimus* in the first person, in the second into *abitis,* and in the third into *abunt.*

In the (4) perfect tense, *avi* is the same as the second principal part, and denotes the first person singular; in the second person, *sti* is added to *avi;* and in the third, *t* is added to the same; in the plural, *mus* is added to *avi* in the

first person, *stis* in the second person, and in the third the *i* of *avi* is changed into *e*, and *runt* or *re* added.

In the (5) pluperfect tense, the *i* of *avi* is changed into *e* in all the numbers and persons. In the singular, first person, *ram* is added to this *e*, in the second *ras*, and in the third *rat;* in the plural, *ramus* is added for the first person, *ratis* for the second, and *rant* for the third.

In the (6) future perfect tense, the *i* of *avi* is changed into *e* in all the numbers and persons. In the singular, first person, *ro* is added to this *e*, in the second *ris*, and in the third *rit;* in the plural, *rimus* is added to the first person, *ritis* to the second, and *rint* to the third.

Av is properly the distinctive form of the second principal part, the *i* being added to form the first person singular.

In the perfect tense, in the second person singular, *amavisti*, the *vi* in the termination, *a*[*vi*]*sti*, is placed in brackets; this denotes that the *vi* may be omitted, and the second person singular contracted into *amâsti*, instead of *amavisti;* so, in like manner, the *vi* in the second person plural may be omitted, and *amavistis* contracted into *amâstis*. In the third person plural of the same, the *ve* in brackets in the termination may be omitted, and *amaverunt* contracted into *amârunt*.

In the pluperfect tense, the *ve* in brackets, in the terminations of all the numbers and persons, may be omitted, and the verb contracted: as, *amaveram* into *amâram*, *amaveras* into *amâras*, &c., &c.

In the future perfect, the *ve* in brackets, in the terminations of all the numbers and persons, may be omitted, and the verb contracted: as, *amavero* into *amâro*, *amaveris* into *amâris*, &c., &c.

These contractions only take place when *s* follows *vi*, or when *r* follows *ve*. They are here denoted by a circumflex over the vowel preceding the *s* or *r*.

Lesson 49.

[1]Ego [(1)••] [ul-ulis.1]consul video [ic.pl.4]hosce, et
I (the) consul see these (persons), and

[ar-avi-atum.(1)]rogo [[1]••] [4]sententiam de [6]republicâ;
I-ask (their) opinion concerning (the) republic;

et nondum [ar-avi-atum.(1)]vulnero [[1]••] [is.pl.4]eos
and | [1]do not yet [1]wound those

[x-cis.6]voce,
[1]with (my) [1]voice [I do not yet publicly charge them with their guilt],

[ui.pl.4]quos oportebat trucidari [m.6]ferro.
whom it-did-behove to-be-slaughtered with iron [the sword].

Igitur [5]Catilina fuisti apud [4]Leccam,
Therefore O Catiline you-were at Lecca's (house),

[la.6]illâ [x-ctis.6]nocte; distribuisti [rs-rtis.pl.4]partes [2]Italiæ;
on that night; you-distributed (the) parts of-Italy (to

statuisti quò placeret
your followers); you-appointed whither it-might-please (you) (for)

[uis.4]quemque proficisci; delegisti [ui.pl.4]quos
each-one to-go; you-selected (those) whom

relinqueres [2]Romæ [ui.pl.4]quos educeres
you-might-leave at-Rome (and those) whom you-might-lead-out

cum [4]te; [(2)••] descripsisti [rs-rtis.pl.4]partes
(of the city) with you; you-designated (the) parts

[bs-bis.2]urbis ad [m.pl.4]incendia; [ar-avi-atum.(4)]confirmâsti, [[2]••]
of-the-city for conflagration; you-affirmed, (that)

[4]te [(2)••] [se.4]ipsum esse jam exiturum; dixisti
you yourself were now about-to-depart; you-said (that)

esse etiam tum paullulum [2]moræ [3]tibi, [(2)••] quòd
there-was even then (a) very-little delay to-you, because

[1]ego [(1)••] viverem. [pl.1]Duo [s.pl.1]Romani [es-itis.pl.1]equites
I (yet) lived. Two Roman knights

reperti sunt, [ui.pl.1]qui liberarent [4]te [(2)••] [ta.6]istâ [6]curâ,
were found, who would-free you from-that care,

et pollicerentur [pl.4]sese [(3)••] interfecturos [4]me [(1)••] in
and promised (that) they would-kill me in

[s.6]meo [s.6]lectulo [6]illâ [x-ctis.6]nocte [sa.6]ipsâ, paullo ante
my bed on-that night itself, (a) little before

[x-cis.4]lucem. [1]Ego [(1)••] comperi [e-is.pl.4]omnia [oc.pl.4]hæc,
(day) light. I discovered all these (things),

etiam er.6 vestro ûs.6 cœtu vix dum dimisso: munivi
even your assembly ¹being scarcely yet ¹dismissed: I-fortified

atque ar- | avi-atum.(4) firmavi [1] •• ⁴meam s.4 domum (*f.*) ••
and strengthened my house

or-oris.pl.6 majoribus (*c.*) •• m.pl.6 præsidiis; exclusi is.pl.4 eos
with-stronger guards; I-excluded those

ui.pl.4 quos ¹tu (2) •• miseras ad ⁴me (1) •• ar-avi- | atum. salutatum [um] ••
whom you had-sent to me a-saluting

mane; quum le.pl.1 illi se.pl.1 ipsi venissent,
¹in (the) ¹morning; when those (persons) themselves had-come,

ui.pl.4 quos ¹ego (1) •• jam prædixeram
(and concerning) whom I ¹had already ¹foretold

s.pl.3 multis ac s.pl.3 summis r.pl.3 viris
to-many and ¹to (the) ¹highest men (that)

esse venturos ad ¹me (1) •• is.4 id us.oris.2 temporis.
they-were-about-to-come to me (at) that time.

The stroke before | *ar*, in *rogo*, denotes that it is formed from the first principal part, as also *ar*, in *vulnero*. The stroke before | *avi*, in *confirmâsti*, denotes that it is derived from the second principal part, and the circumflex over *â*, that it is contracted from *confirmavisti*.

The learner, as in the declensions, must make himself gradually acquainted with the conjugations. In the above lesson, he is only to conjugate the indicative mood, active voice.

Lesson 50.

Hosce ego video consul, et de republicâ sententiam rogo; et, quos ferro trucidari oportebat, eos nondum voce vulnero. Fuisti igitur apud Leccam illâ nocte, Catilina: distribuisti partes Italiæ: statuisti quò quemque proficisci placeret; delegisti quos Romæ relinqueres; quos tecum educeres; descripsisti urbis partes ad incendia; confirmâsti, te ipsum jam esse exiturum; dixisti paullulum tibi esse etiam tum moræ, quòd ego viverem. Reperti sunt duo equites Romani, qui te istâ curâ liberarent, et sese illâ ipsâ nocte paullo ante lucem me meo in lectulo interfecturos pollicerentur. Hæc

ego omnia, vix dum etiam cœtu vestro dimisso, comperi; domum meam majoribus præsidiis munivi atque firmavi; exclusi eos, quos tu mane ad me salutatum miseras, quum illi ipsi venissent; quos ego jam multis ac summis viris ad me id temporis venturos esse prædixeram.

Exercises on Lessons 49 and 50.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Equites. Nox. Lux. Cœtus. Firmavi. Domus. Quibus. Salutatum. Salutabo. Illi. Viris. Tempus. Rogat. Ferrum. Vulnerant. Confirmâsti. Confirmaverat. Mora.

English words to be translated into Latin.

I. All. Scarcely. They strengthened. House. Guards. In the morning. Already. Many. City. Conflagration. You. You said. Who. Care. Night. I asked. They will ask. Not yet. He wounds. To be slaughtered. Whither. To go. I see.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Tu mane ad me miseras. Exclusi eos quum venissent. Multis viris prædixeram. Reperti sunt, qui te istâ curâ liberarent. Me interfecturos pollicerentur. Hæc ego omnia comperi. Domum meam munivi atque firmavi. Hosce ego video. De republica sententiam rogat. Eos nondum voce vulneravi. Fuisti apud Leccam. Delegisti quos tecum educeres. Quò proficisci placeret. Descripsisti urbis partes ad incendia. Confirmavit se ipsum esse exiturum. Paullulum tibi esse tum moræ. Quòd ego viverem.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

That they were about to come to me. A little before daylight. Your assembly being scarcely yet dismissed. I fortified and strengthened my house. Whom he had sent to

me a saluting. When those persons had come. You designated the parts of the city for conflagration. He affirmed that he was about to depart. You said that there was a very little delay to you. Two Roman knights were found. They promised that they would kill me. I discovered all these things. You strengthened your house. When those had come, whom I foretold.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — ACTIVE VOICE.

"Ar." *sb.* (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may love, if I love, &c.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (1) Amem [1], I may, &c., love	em.
sb. (1) Ames [2], thou mayst, &c., love	es.
sb. (1) Amet [3], he may, &c., love	et.
PLURAL.	
sb. (1) Amemus [pl. 1], we may, &c., love	emus.
sb. (1) Ametis [pl. 2], ye *or* you may, &c., love	etis.
sb. (1) Ament [pl. 3], they may, &c., love	ent.

"Ar." *sb.* (2) *Imperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should love.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (2) Amarem [1], I might, &c., love	arem.
sb. (2) Amares [2], thou mightst, &c., love	ares.
sb. (2) Amaret [3], he might, &c., love	aret.
PLURAL.	
sb. (2) Amaremus [pl. 1], we might, &c., love	aremus.
sb. (2) Amaretis [pl. 2], you might, &c., love	aretis.
sb. (2) Amarent [pl. 3], they might, &c., love	arent.

"Avi." *sb.* (4) *Perfect. I may, &c., have loved.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (4) Amaverim [1], I may have loved	a[ve]rim.
sb. (4) Amaveris [2], thou mayst have loved	a[ve]ris.
sb. (4) Amaverit [3], he may have loved	a[ve]rit.
PLURAL.	
sb. (4) Amaverimus [pl. 1], we may have loved	a[ve]rimus.
sb. (4) Amaveritis [pl. 2], you may have loved	a[ve]ritis.
sb. (4) Amaverint [pl. 3], they may have loved	a[ve]rint.

"Avi." sb. (5) Pluperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should have loved.

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (5) Amavissem [1], I might, &c., have loved	a[vi]ssem.
sb. (5) Amavisses [2], thou mightst, &c., have loved	a[vi]sses.
sb. (5) Amavisset [3], he might, &c., have loved	a[vi]sset.

PLURAL.

sb. (5) Amavissemus [pl. 1], we might, &c., have loved	a[vi]ssemus.
sb. (5) Amavissetis [pl. 2], you might, &c., have loved	a[vi]ssetis.
sb. (5) Amavissent [pl. 3], they might, &c., have loved	a[vi]ssent.

"AR." IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

im. Ama *or* amato [2], love thou	a *or* ato.
im. Amato [3], let him love	ato.

PLURAL.

im. Amate *or* amatote [pl. 2], love ye	ate *or* atote.
im. Amanto [pl. 3], let them love	anto.

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ar." in. (1) Present.

in. (1) Amare, to love	are.

"Avi." in. (4) Perfect.

in. (4) Amavisse, to have loved	avisse.

"Atum." in. (3) Future.

in. (3) Amaturus esse, to be about to love	aturus esse.

PARTICIPLE [PART.].

"Ar." (1) Present.

(1) ns–ntis. 1. Amans [part.], loving	ans.

"Atum." (3) Future.

(3) us–a–um. 1. Amaturus [part.], about to love	aturus–a–um.

"AR." GERUND [GER.].

	Terminations.
2. *G.* Amandi, of loving	andi.
3. *D.* Amando, to *or* for loving	ando.
4. *A.* Amandum, loving	andum.
6. *Ab.* Amando, by, &c., loving	ando.

"ATUM." SUPINE [UM] IN UM.

Amatum [um], a loving	atum.

In the above, it will be perceived that the (1) present, and the (2) imperfect subjunctive, with the imperative, and all their numbers and persons, are formed from the first principal part, *ar;* also, the present infinitive, present participle, and the gerunds, are formed from the same principal part, *ar*. The (4) perfect and (5) pluperfect subjunctive, with their numbers and persons, are formed from the second principal part, *avi;* also, the (4) perfect infinitive is formed from the same. The future participle, the future infinitive, and the supine in *um*, are formed from the third principal part, *atum*.

In the present tense, the *ar* is changed into *em* in the first person singular subjunctive, in the second person singular into *es*, and in the third person singular into *et;* in the plural of the same, *ar* is changed into *emus* in the first, into *etis* in the second, and into *ent* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, subjunctive, the *ar* is changed, in the singular, into *arem* in the first, *ares* in the second, and *aret* in the third person; in the plural, the *ar* is changed into *aremus* in the first, into *aretis* in the second, and into *arent* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, subjunctive, *avi*, in the singular, is changed into *averim* in the first, into *averis* in the second, and into *averit* in the third person; in the plural, *avi* is changed into *averimus* in the first person, into *averitis* in the second person, and into *averint* in the third person.

In the pluperfect subjunctive, *avi*, in the singular, is changed into *avissem* in the first, into *avisses* in the second,

and into *avisset* in the third person; in the plural, *avi* is changed into *avissemus* in the first, into *avissetis* in the second, and into *avissent* in the third person.

In the imperative mood, in the singular, *ar* is changed into *a* or *ato* in the second, and into *ato* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *ate* or *atote* in the second, and into *anto* in the third person.

In the infinitive, in the present tense, *ar* is changed into *are;* in the perfect tense, *avi* is changed into *avisse;* and in the future, *atum* is changed into *aturus.*

In the participle present, *ar* is changed into *ans;* in the future, *atum* is changed into *aturus.*

In the gerunds, *ar* is changed into Gen. *andi,* Dat. *ando,* Acc. *andum,* Ab. *ando.*

The supine, *amatum,* is the same as the third principal part, *atum.*

The *ve* included in brackets, in the terminations of the perfect indicative subjunctive, and the *vi* included in brackets in the pluperfect subjunctive, may be omitted in the same manner as in the indicative perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

Lesson 51.

[ea.6] Eâ [ei.6] re [6] impetratâ, [part.] •• [is-is.pl.1] omnes [ns-ntis.pl.1] flentes
That thing being-obtained, all weeping

projecerunt [pl.4] sese [(3)] •• ad [ar-aris.3] Cæsari [es-edis.pl.4] pedes
threw themselves at Cæsar's feet (saying),

[pl.4] "se [(3)] •• contendere et [| ar-avi-atum.in.(1)] laborare non
(that) "they endeavored and labored no

minùs [id.4] id, [id.pl.4] ea, [od.pl.4] quæ dixissent
less (for) that, (that) those (things), which they-may-have-said,

ne enuntiarentur, quàm utì
[1] should not [1] be-divulged, than that

[| ar-avi-atum.sb.(2)] impetrarent [pl.3] •• [id.pl.4] ea [od.pl.4] quæ
they-might-obtain those (things) which

vellent; propterea quòd si enuntiatum esset,
they-might-wish; because that if it-should-be-divulged,

viderent [4]se [(3)••] venturos in
they-perceived | (that) they were-about-to-come in

[s.4]summum [ûs.4]cruciatum."
(the) greatest torture [that they would have to suffer the ex-

[s.1]Divitiacus [s.1]Æduus locutus est pro
treme of torture]." Divitiacus (the) Æduan spoke for

[ic.pl.6]his; "esse [pl.4]duas [io-ionis.pl.4]factiones (*f.*) ••
these; (he said, that) "there-were two factions

[a-ius.2]totius [2]Galliæ; [s.pl.4]Æduos tenere [ûs.4]principatum
(in) all Gaul; (that the) Ædui held (the) sovereignty

[a-ius.2]alterius [æc.pl.2]harum, [s.pl.4]Arvernos [a-ius.2]alterius. Quum
of-one of-these, (the) Averni [1]of (the) [1]other. When

[ic.pl.1]hi contenderent tantoperè inter [pl.4]se [(3)••] de
these contended so-earnestly between themselves for

[ûs.6]potentatu [s.pl.4]multos [s.pl.4]annos, factum esse,
dominion (during) many years, | it-was-done [it

utì [s.pl.1]Germani accerserentur ab [s.pl.6]Arvernis
happened], that (the) Germans were-called-in by (the) Arverni

que· [s.pl.6]Sequanis·, [es-edis.6]mercede. Primò circiter
and Sequani, for-hire. (At) first about

quindecim millia [ic.pl.2]horum transîsse [s.4]Rhenum;
fifteen thousand of-these had-crossed-over (the) Rhine;

posteaquam [s.pl.1]feri ac [s.pl.1]barbari [o-inis.pl.1]homines
after-that (these) wild and barbarous men

[ar- | avi-atum.sb.(5)]adamâssent [(pl.3)] •• [er.pl.4]agros et [ûs.4]cultum,
had-fallen-in-love (with) (the) lands and cultivation,

et [pl.4]copias [s.pl.2]Gallorum, [us-uris.pl.4]plures (*c.*) ••
and stores of-the-Gauls, (that) more

transductos; nunc esse in [6]Galliâ centum et
were-led-over; (that) now there-were in Gaul (a) hundred and

viginti [pl.2]millium, ad [m.4]numerum."
twenty thousand (Germans), in number."

Lesson 52.

Eâ re impetratâ, sese omnes flentes Cæsari ad pedes projecerunt; "non minùs se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quæ dixissent, enunciarentur, quàm utì ea, quæ vellent, impetrarent; propterea, quòd si enunciatum esset, summum in

cruciatum se venturos viderent." Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Æduus; "Galliæ totius factiones esse duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Æduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi quum tantoperè de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse, utì ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede accerserentur. Horum primò circiter millia quindecim Rhenum transîsse; posteaquam agros, et cultum, et copias Gallorum, homines feri ac barbari adamâssent, transductos plures; nunc esse in Galliâ ad centum et viginti millium numerum."

Exercises on Lessons 51 and 52.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Tantoperè. Potentatus. Anni. Merces. Homo. Ferus. Adamâssent. Adamavisset. Plus. Ager. Sese. Pedes. Dixissent. Vellent. Impetrarent. Impetrarem. Impetraretis. Totus. Duæ. Alter. Principatus. Tenere. Laborare. Laborans. Laboravisse. Laboraturus. Laborandi.

English words to be translated into Latin.

About. After that. Wild. The lands. Stores. More. Now. Hundred. He spoke. Sovereignty. Dominion. Many. Hire. Weeping. Foot. He will labor. Less. He might obtain. Because. They perceived.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Locutus est Divitiacus. Principatum tenere Æduos. De potentatu multos annos contenderent. Factum est utì Germani accerserentur. Agros, et cultum Gallorum adamâssent. Sese omnes flentes Cæsari ad pedes projecerunt. Non minùs se id laborare. Ne ea enunciarentur. Utì ea, quæ vellent, impetrarent. Si enunciatum esset.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Fifteen thousand of these had crossed over the Rhine. After that they had fallen in love with the lands, and stores of the Gauls. Divitiacus spoke for these. That the Ædui held the sovereignty. These contended for dominion. The Germans were called in by the Arverni. All threw themselves at Cæsar's feet. That those things should not be divulged. That they might obtain those things which they might wish.

Before proceeding to the passive form of this first conjugation, it will be necessary to give the conjugation of the verb *sum—I am;* for many of the tenses in the passive voice are formed by this verb *sum*, and the past participle.

SUM — I AM.

This verb, *sum*, is very irregular; and, from its nature, has no passive voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Sum.	Esse (e).	Fui (ui).
I-am.	to-be.	I-have-been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Sum." (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am.*

Terminations.

SINGULAR.

(1) Sum [1], I am.......... *sum.*
(1) Es [2], thou art.......... *es.*
(1) Est [3], he is.......... *est.*

PLURAL.

(1) Sumus [pl. 1], we are.......... *sumus.*
(1) Estis [pl. 2], ye *or* you are.......... *estis.*
(1) Sunt [pl. 3], they are.......... *sunt.*

"*E.*" (2) *Imperfect. I, &c., was.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(2) Eram [1], I was	ram.
(2) Eras [2], thou wast	ras.
(2) Erat [3], he was	rat.
PLURAL.	
(2) Eramus [pl. 1], we were	ramus.
(2) Eratis [pl. 2], you were	ratis.
(2) Erant [pl. 3], they were	rant.

"*E.*" (3) *Future. I, &c., shall or will be.*

SINGULAR.	
(3) Ero [1], I shall be	ro
(3) Eris [2], thou wilt be	ris.
(3) Erit [3], he will be	rit
PLURAL.	
(3) Erimus [pl. 1], we shall be	rimus.
(3) Eritis [pl. 2], you will be	ritis.
(3) Erunt [pl. 3], they will be	runt.

"*Ui.*" (4) *Perfect. I, &c., have been.*

SINGULAR.	
(4) Fui [1], I have been	ui.
(4) Fuisti [2], thou hast been	uisti.
(4) Fuit [3], he has been	uit.
PLURAL.	
(4) Fuimus [pl. 1], we have been	uimus.
(4) Fuistis [pl. 2], you have been	uistis.
(4) Fuerunt *or* fuere [pl. 3], they have been	uerunt *or* uere.

"*Ui.*" (5) *Pluperfect. I, &c., had been.*

SINGULAR.	
(5) Fueram [1], I had been	ueram.
(5) Fueras [2], thou hast been	ueras.
(5) Fuerat [3], he had been	uerat.
PLURAL.	
(5) Fueramus [pl. 1], we had been	ueramus
(5) Fueratis [pl. 2], you had been	ueratis.
(5) Fuerant [pl. 3], they had been	uerant.

"*Ui.*" (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have been.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(6) Fuero [1], I shall have been	uero.
(6) Fueris [2], thou wilt have been	ueris.
(6) Fuerit [3], he will have been	uerit.
PLURAL.	
(6) Fuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have been	uerimus.
(6) Fueritis [pl. 2], you will have been	ueritis.
(6) Fuerint [pl. 3], they will have been	uerint.

There are only two principal parts in *sum*, namely: that denoted by *e*, and that denoted by *ui; sum* having no supine.

The present tense is so very irregular, that it can scarcely be considered as formed from *e*, the first part; the full verb is therefore given, in italics, in place of the terminations.

The imperfect may be considered as formed from the first principal part, *e*. This *e* is placed before the terminations denoting number and person, as given in the imperfect tense above.

The future, in like manner, is formed from the first principal part, *e*, by placing *e* before the terminations of the future.

The perfect is formed from the second principal part, *ui*, by placing *f* before the terminations of numbers and persons, as above given.

The pluperfect is also formed from the second principal part, *ui; f* being placed before the terminations of numbers and persons.

The future perfect is, in like manner, formed from *ui;* and *f* is placed before the terminations of numbers and persons, as above given.

Lesson 53.

[ix–igis.1] Orgetorix deligitur ad [ea.pl.4] eas [ei.pl.4] res
Orgetorix | is-chosen to those things

conficiendas. [is.1] Is
to-be-accomplished [is chosen to accomplish those things]. He

suscepit [3] sibi [(3)] •• [io–onis.4] legationem (*f.*) •• ad
accepted for-himself an embassy to (the different)

[as–atis.pl.4] civitates. In [id.6] eo [er–ineris.6] itinere (*n.*) •• persuadet
states. In that journey he-persuades

[s.3] Castico [s.3] filio [es–is.2] Catamantaledis, [s.3] Sequano, [ui.2] cujus
Casticus (the) son of-Catamantaledes, a Sequanian, | whose

[ter–'ris.1] pater obtinuerat [m.4] regnum in [s.pl.6] Sequanis
father had-held (the) kingdom in (the) Sequani (for)

[s.pl.4] multos [s.pl.4] annos,
many years [whose father had ruled over the Sequani for

et appellatus erat [s.1] amicus à [ûs.6] senatu que·
many years], and had-been-called friend by (the) senate and

[s.6] Romano [s.6] populo·, ut | [ar–avi–atum.sb.(2)] occuparet [3] ••
Roman people, that he-would-seize

[m.4] regnum in [6] suâ [as–atis.6] civitate, [od.4] quod [ter–tris.1] pater
(the) sovereign-power in his state, which (his) father

habuerat antè. Que· item· persuadet [s.3] Æduo
had-had before (him). And [1] he also [1] persuades (the) Æduan

[ix–igis.3] Dumnorigi, [ter–tris.3] fratri [s.2] Divitiaci, [ui.1] qui [id.6] eo
Dumnorix, (the) brother of-Divitiacus, who at-that

[us–oris.6] tempore obtinebat [ûs.4] principatum in [6] suâ [as–atis.6] civitate,
time obtained (the) command in his state,

ac [(*sum–esse*) | e–ui.(2)] erat [3] •• maximè [s.1] acceptus [bs–bis.3] plebi,
and was chiefly acceptable [1] to (the) [1] people,

ut conaretur [id.4] idem, que·
that he-should-attempt (the) same-thing, and

| [ar–*dedi*–atum.(1)] dat [3] •• [4] suam [4] filiam in [m.4] matrimonium
he-gives his daughter in marriage

[is.3] ei·. | [ar–avi–atum.(1)] Probat [3] •• [le.pl.3] illis,
to-him. He-proves (it) to-them, (that it)

[(*sum–esse*) | e–ui.in.(1)] "esse perfacile factu, perficere
"is very-easy to-be-done, to-execute

[m.pl.4] conata, propterea quòd [se.1] ipse esset
(this) enterprise, because that he-himself was

obtenturus [m.4] imperium [2] suæ [as-atis.2] civitatis,
about-to-obtain (the) empire of-his (own) state, (that)

[(sum-esse) | e-ui.in.(1)] esse non [m.1] dubium, quin [s.pl.1] Helvetii
there-is no doubt, but-that (the) Helvetii

possent plurimum [a-ius.2] totius Galliæ." [| ar-avi-atum.(1)] Confirmat [3] ••
could-do the most of-all Gaul." He-affirms

[4] se [(3)] •• [ar-avi- | atum.(3)] conciliaturum [part.] •• [m.pl.4] regna
(that) he-was-about-to-procure kingdoms

[le.pl.3] illis [pl.6] suis [pl.6] copiis que· [s.6] suo· [ûs.6] exercitu.
for-them with-his means and with-his army.

[s.pl.1] Adducti [part.] •• [ec.6] hâc [io-ionis.6] oratione, (*f.*) ••
Induced by-this oration,

[| ar-dedi-atum.(1)] dant [pl.3] •• [ei.4] fidem et [m.4] jusjurandum inter
| they-give faith and oath among

[4] se; [(3)] •• et
themselves [they pledge themselves to one another by an oath]; and

[m.6] regno [m.6] occupato, [part.] •• per [pl.4] tres
(the) sovereign-power being-possessed, by three

[s.pl.4] potentissimos (*s.*) •• ac [s.pl.4] firmissimos (*s.*) •• [s.pl.4] populos,
most-powerful and most-firm people,

[| ar-avi-atum.(1)] sperant [pl.3] •• [4] sese [(3)] •• posse potiri
they-hope (that) they would-be-able to-possess

[a-ius.2] totius [2] Galliæ.
(themselves) of-all Gaul.

Lesson 54.

Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur; is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico Catamantaledis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et à senatu populoque Romano amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate suâ occuparet, quod pater antè habuerat: itemque Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate suâ obtinebat, ac maximè plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet; eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. "Perfacile factu esse," illis probat, "conata perficere; propterea quòd ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent; se

suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum," confirmat. Hâc oratione adducti, inter se fidem, et jusjurandum dant; et regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos, totius Galliæ sese potiri posse sperant.

Exercises on Lessons 53 and 54.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Jusjurandum. Do. Potentissimus. Sperat. Perfacile. Probavit. Propterea. Civitas. Esse. Totius. Dubium. Exercitu. Confirmant. Deligitur. Iter. Filius. Pater. Multi. Cujus. Amicus. Occupavit. Habuerat. Frater. Tempus. Plebs. Filia. Dedit.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Acceptable. He gives. Marriage. He will prove. To be. Enterprise. Daughter. He himself. State. The most. They affirm. Kingdom. Army. Faith. Most powerful. I shall hope. Years. Father. Had had. Persuades. Brother. Who. Time. For himself. Embassy. Journey. Whose.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Non esse dubium. Perfacile esse probat. Ipse imperium obtenturus esset. Se suo exercitu illis regna conciliaturum. Inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant. Totius Galliæ sese potiri posse sperant. Ad eas res conficiendas ille deligitur. Cujus pater amicus appellatus erat. Maximè plebi acceptus est. Filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

He affirms that he has procured kingdoms for them. He hopes that he would be able. He was acceptable to the people. He gives his daughter in marriage to him. I have proved it to them. There is no doubt, but that the Helvetii

could do the most. Which his father had had before him. He persuades the brother of Divitiacus. Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish those things. He persuades the son of Catamantaledes.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF "SUM."

"Sim." sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may or can be.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (1) Sim [1], I may be	*sim.*
sb. (1) Sis [2], thou mayst be	*sis.*
sb. (1) Sit [3], he may be	*sit.*

PLURAL.	
sb. (1) Simus [pl. 1], we may be	*simus.*
sb. (1) Sitis [pl. 2], you may be	*sitis.*
sb. (1) Sint [pl. 3], they may be	*sint.*

"E." sb. (2) *Imperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should be.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (2) Essem [1], I might be	ssem.
sb. (2) Esses [2], thou mightst be	sses.
sb. (2) Esset [3], he might be	sset.

PLURAL.	
sb. (2) Essemus [pl. 1], we might be	ssemus.
sb. (2) Essetis [pl. 2], you might be	ssetis.
sb. (2) Essent [pl. 3], they might be	ssent.

"Ui." sb. (4) *Perfect. I, &c., may have been.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (4) Fuerim [1], I may have been	uerim.
sb. (4) Fueris [2], thou mayst have been	ueris.
sb. (4) Fuerit [3], he may have been	uerit.

PLURAL.	
sb. (4) Fuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been	uerimus.
sb. (4) Fueritis [pl. 2], you may have been	ueritis.
sb. (4) Fuerint [pl. 3], they may have been	uerint.

"Ui." sb. (5) Pluperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should have been.

Terminations.

SINGULAR.

sb. (5) Fuissem [1], I might have been .... uissem.
sb. (5) Fuisses [2], thou mightst have been .... uisses.
sb. (5) Fuisset [3], he might have been .... uisset.

PLURAL.

sb. (5) Fuissemus [pl. 1], we might have been .... uissemus.
sb. (5) Fuissetis [pl. 2], you might have been .... uissetis.
sb. (5) Fuissent [pl. 3], they might have been .... uissent.

"E." IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

im. Es *or* esto [2], be thou .... s *or* sto.
im. Esto [3], let him be .... sto.

PLURAL.

im. Este *or* estote [pl. 2], by ye .... ste *or* stote.
im. Sunto [pl. 3], let them be .... *sunto.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

"E." in. (1) Present Tense.

in. (1) Esse, to be .... sse.

"Ui." in. (4) Perfect Tense.

in. (4) Fuisse, to have been .... uisse.

in. (3) Future.

in. (3) Futurus esse, to be about to be .... uturus–esse.

PARTICIPLE [PART.].

(3) Future Tense.

(3) Futurus [part.], about to be .... uturus.

The present tense, in the subjunctive, cannot be referred to the first principal part, *e*. All the numbers and persons of this tense are given entire, in italics, in place of the terminations.

The imperfect tense is formed from the first principal part, *e*. This *e* is placed before the terminations of the imperfect to form the different numbers and persons.

The perfect tense is formed from the second principal part, *ui; f* being placed before the terminations of the perfect in all the numbers and persons.

The pluperfect is formed from the second principal part, *ui; f* being placed before the terminations of the pluperfect in like manner.

The imperative mood, in the second and third persons singular, and second person plural, is formed from the first part, *e*, this *e* being placed before the terminations; but the third person plural cannot be referred to either the first or second principal parts; it is therefore given in full, in italics, in the terminations.

The infinitive mood in the present tense is derived from the first principal part, *e; this e* being placed before the termination. The perfect tense of the same is formed from the second principal part, *ui; f* being placed before the termination. The future is formed from a supposed supine and *esse; f* being placed before the termination.

Sum has properly no present participle ending in *ens;* but some of its compounds have: as, *absens—being absent.*

The future participle may be considered as formed from a supposed supine of *fuo; f* being placed before the termination.

The perfect, *fui*, is formed from the obsolete, *fuo*, from which are still in use the imperfect subjunctive: s.(2)*forem* [1], *I might be;* s.(2)*fores* [2], *thou mightst be;* s.(2)*foret* [3], *he might be;* s.(2)*foremus* [pl.1], *we might be;* s.(2)*foretis* [pl.2], *you might be;* s.(2)*forent* [pl.3], *they might be.* The infinitive present, *fore—to be*, has generally a future signification of *about to be.*

The compounds of *sum* are conjugated like *sum:* as, *absum—I am absent, abes, abest,* &c., &c.; but *prosum—I am useful,* or *advantageous,* or *I profit,* has a *d* inserted between *pro* and those tenses and persons that begin with a

vowel: as, indicative present, (1)*prosum*[1], *I am useful;* (1)*prodes*[2], *thou art useful;* (1)*prodest*[3], *he is useful*, &c., &c. Imperfect, (2)*proderam*[1], *I was useful;* (2)*proderas*[2], *thou wast useful;* (2)*proderat*[3], *he was useful*, &c., &c.

The compound, *possum—I can*, or *am able*, compounded of *potis—able* and *sum—I am*, is more irregular. In composition, the *is* of *potis* is omitted, and the *t* of *pot* is changed into *s* before another *s*. The commencing *es* of the present infinitive, and of the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*, is omitted; the commencing *f* of *sum*, in those tenses formed from the second principal part, *ui*, is dropped. In other respects, *possum* is conjugated like *sum;* but it has no imperative, or future participle. It is conjugated as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Possum.	Posse (e).	Potui (ui).
I-am-able.	to-be-able.	I-have-been-able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Sum." "E." (1) *Present Tense.*

SINGULAR.

	Terminations.
(1) Possum [1], I am able	ssum.
(1) Potes [2], thou art able	tes.
(1) Potest [3], he is able	test.

PLURAL.

(1) Possumus [pl. 1], we are able	ssumus.
(1) Potestis [pl. 2], you are able	testis.
(1) Possunt [pl. 3], they are able	ssunt.

"E." (2) *Imperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

(2) Poteram [1], I was able	teram.
(2) Poteras [2], thou wast able	teras.
(2) Poterat [3], he was able	terat.

PLURAL.

(2) Poteramus [pl. 1], we were able	teramus.
(2) Poteratis [pl. 2], you were able	teratis.
(2) Poterant [pl. 3], they were able	terant.

"E." (3) *Future.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(3) Potero [1], I shall be able	tero.
(3) Poteris [2], thou wilt be able	teris.
(3) Poterit [3], he will be able	terit.

PLURAL.	
(3) Poterimus [pl. 1], we shall be able	terimus.
(3) Poteritis [pl. 2], you will be able	teritis.
(3) Poterunt [pl. 3], they will be able	terunt.

"Ui." (4) *Perfect.*

SINGULAR.	
(4) Potui [1], I have been able	tui.
(4) Potuisti [2], thou hast been able	tuisti.
(4) Potuit [3], he has been able	tuit.

PLURAL.	
(4) Potuimus [pl. 1], we have been able	tuimus.
(4) Potuistis [pl. 2], you have been able	tuistis.
(4) Potuerunt *or* potuere [pl. 3], they have been able	tuerunt *or* tuere.

"Ui." (5) *Pluperfect.*

SINGULAR.	
(5) Potueram [1], I had been able	tueram.
(5) Potueras [2], thou hast been able	tueras.
(5) Potuerat [3], he has been able	tuerat.

PLURAL.	
(5) Potueramus [pl. 1], we had been able	tueramus.
(5) Potueratis [pl. 2], you had been able	tueratis.
(5) Potuerant [pl. 3], they had been able	tuerant.

"Ui." (6) *Future Perfect.*

SINGULAR.	
(6) Potuero [1], I shall have been able	tuero.
(6) Potueris [2], thou wilt have been able	tueris.
(6) Potuerit [3], he will have been able	tuerit.

PLURAL.	
(6) Potuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have been able	tuerimus.
(6) Potueritis [pl. 2], you will have been able	tueritis.
(6) Potuerint [pl. 3], they will have been able	tuerint.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

"*Sim.*" *sb.* (1) *Present Tense.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (1) Possim [1], I may be able....................................	ssim.
sb. (1) Possis [2], thou mayst be able....................................	ssis.
sb. (1) Possit [3], he may be able....................................	ssit.
PLURAL.	
sb. (1) Possimus [pl. 1], we may be able....................................	ssimus.
sb. (1) Possitis [pl. 2], you may be able....................................	ssitis.
sb. (1) Possint [pl. 3], they may be able....................................	ssint.

"*E.*" *sb.* (2) *Imperfect.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (2) Possem [1], I might be able....................................	ssem.
sb. (2) Posses [2], thou mightst be able....................................	sses.
sb. (2) Posset [3], he might be able....................................	sset.
PLURAL.	
sb. (2) Possemus [pl. 1], we might be able....................................	ssemus.
sb. (2) Possetis [pl. 2], you might be able....................................	ssetis.
sb. (2) Possent [pl. 3], they might be able....................................	ssent.

"*Ui.*" *sb.* (4) *Perfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (4) Potuerim [1], I may have been able....................................	tuerim.
sb. (4) Potueris [2], thou mayst have been able....................................	tueris.
sb. (4) Potuerit [3], he may have been able....................................	tuerit.
PLURAL.	
sb. (4) Potuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been able....................................	tuerimus.
sb. (4) Potueritis [pl. 2], you may have been able....................................	tueritis.
sb. (4) Potuerint [pl. 3], they may have been able....................................	tuerint.

"*Ui.*" *sb.* (5) *Pluperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (5) Potuissem [1], I had been able....................................	tuissem.
sb. (5) Potuisses [2], thou hadst been able....................................	tuisses.
sb. (5) Potuisset [3], he had been able....................................	tuisset.

PLURAL.	Terminations.
sb. (5) Potuissemus [pl. 1], we had been able	tuissemus.
sb. (5) Potuissetis [pl. 2], you had been able	tuissetis.
sb. (5) Potuissent [pl. 3], they had been able	tuissent.

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"E." in. (1) *Present.*

in. (1) Posse, to be able .... sse.

"Ui." in. (4) *Perfect.*

in. (4) Potuisse, to have been able .... tuisse.

All the moods, tenses, numbers and persons of *possum* may be considered, in the above conjugation, as formed by placing *po* before all of these terminations.

Lesson 55.

s.pl.4 Fractos [part.] •• ui.pl.6 quibus m.pl.6 prœliis que·
Broken by which battles and

as–atis.pl.6 calamitatibus·, ui.pl.1 qui antè plurimum
calamities, | (those) who before had-¹been most

(sum–esse).e- | ui.sb.(5) potuissent [pl.3] ••
¹able [those who before had been the most po—

in 6 Galliâ, et 6 suâ us–tute.6 virtute (*f.*) •• et m.6 ...o
in Gaul, both by-their valor and ¹by (the) ...ance

atque 6 amicitiâ s.2 Romani s.2 populi
and friendship ¹of (the) ¹Roman people (that they)

coactos esse | ar–*dedi*–atum.in.(1) dare s.pl.4 nobilissimos
have-been-forced to-give the-most-noble

as–at s.2 civitatis es–idis.pl.4 obsides s.pl.3 Sequanis, et
¹of (the) ¹state (as) hostages ¹to (the) ¹Sequani, and

obstringere as–atis.4 civitatem | ar–avi–atum.6 jurejurando, [ger.] ••
to-bind (the) state | ¹by (a) ¹swearing [by an

pl.4 sese (3) •• neque repetituros
oath], (that) they neither would-hereafter-re-demand

es–idis.pl.4 obsides, neque ar–avi- | atum.(3) imploraturos [part.] ••
(their) hostages, nor would-hereafter-implore

m.4 auxilium à s.6 Romano s.6 populo, neque
aid from (the) Roman people, nor

ar–avi– | atum.(3) recusaturos,[part.] •• quò minus
hereafter-refuse that they-[1] might not

(sum–esse) | e–ui.sb.(2) essent [pl.3] •• perpetuò sub
[1] be perpetually under

io–ionis.6 deditione (*f.*) •• atque m.6 imperio le.pl.2 illorum.
(the) subjection and dominion of-these (Germans).

4 Se (3) •• (sum–esse) | e–ui.in.(1) esse s.4 unum ex
(That) he-himself is (the only) one out-of

is–is.6 omni as–atis.6 civitate s.pl.2 Æduorum, ui.1 qui non
all (the) state [1] of (the) [1] Ædui, who [1] had not

(sum–esse).e– | ui.sb.(4) potuerit [3] •• adduci ut
[1] been-able to-be-brought that

| ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) juraret, [3] •• aut | ar–*dedi*–atum.sb.(2) daret s.pl.4 suos
he-should-swear, or give his

r.pl.4 liberos es–idis.pl.4 obsides. Ob ea.4 eam
children (as) hostages. (That) on-account-of that

ei.4 rem 4 se (3) •• profugisse ex as–atis.6 civitate et
thing he fled from (his own) state and

venisse 4 Romam ad ûs.4 senatum ar–avi– | atum. postulatum [um] ••
came to-Rome to (the) senate a-requesting

m.4 auxilium, quòd s.1 solus teneretur neque
aid, because [1] he alone [1] was-held neither

| ar–avi–atum.6 jurejurando, [ger.] •• neque es–idis.pl.6 obsidibus.
[1] by (a) [1] swearing [oath], nor by-hostages.

But (that) accidisse pejùs s.pl.3 Sequanis
it-had-happened worse [1] to (the) [1] Sequani

or–oris.pl.3 victoribus, quàm s.pl.3 Æduis s.pl.3 victis; propterea
conquerors, than [1] to (the) [1] Ædui conquered; because

quòd s.1 Ariovistus, x–gis.1 rex s.pl.2 Germanorum consedisset
that Ariovistus, king [1] of (the) [1] Germans had-settled

in is.pl.2 eorum is–is.pl.6 finibus, que· ar– | avi–atum.sb.(5) occupavisset [3] ••
in their territories, and had-occupied

4 tertiam· rs–rtis.4 partem s.2 Sequani er.2 agri, ui.1 qui
(the) third part [1] of (the) [1] Sequanian land, which

(sum–esse) | e–ui.sb.(2) esset [3] •• s.1 optimus (*bonus, s.*) •• a–ius.2 totius
was (the) best of-all

6 Galliæ; et nunc juberet s.pl.4 Sequanos decedere de
Gaul; and now he-ordered (the) Sequani to-depart from

a–ius.6 alterâ 6 tertiâ rs–rtis.6 parte.
another third part.

Lesson 56.

Quibus prœliis calamitatibusque, fractos, qui et suâ virtute et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitiâ, plurimum antè in Galliâ potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis, et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium à populo Romano imploraturos, neque recusaturos, quo minùs perpetuò sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Æduorum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut juraret aut suos liberos obsides daret; ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse, et Romam ad senatum venisse, auxilium postulatum; quòd solus neque jurejurando, neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed pejùs victoribus Sequanis, quàm Æduis victis accidisse; propterea quòd Ariovistus rex Germanorum in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliæ, occupavisset, et nunc de alterâ parte tertiâ Sequanos decedere juberet.

Exercises on Lessons 55 and 56.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Civitas. Possit. Fuistis. Fuerint. Potes. Juravit. Liberi. Dabo. Obsides. Postulatum. Jurejurando. Pejùs. Victor. Rex. Ager. Esset. Totius. Optimus. Alter. Decedere. Prœlium. Virtus. Amicitia. Dedi. Nobilis. Auxilium. Imperium.

English words to be translated into Latin.

The best. To depart. Subjection. State. He might be able. They have sworn. Children. Valor. Hostages. Friendship. He gave. To bind. The most noble. Aid. Battle. Before. They might have been able. He was. He may have been.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Sed pejùs Sequanis, quàm Æduis accidisse. Ariovistus in eorum finibus consedisset. Tertiam partem agri Sequani occupâsset. Unum se adduci non potuerit. Ut juraret, aut obsides daret. Ob eam rem se profugisse. Se venisse auxilium postulatum. Qui suâ virtute plurimum antè in Galliâ potuissent. Se coactos esse obsides dare. Jurejurando civitatem obstringere. Quo minùs sub illorum imperio essent.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

He ordered them to depart. That he came to Rome a requesting aid. It had happened worse to the Sequani. Because the king of the Germans had settled in their territories. They gave the most noble of the state as hostages. He implored aid from the Romans. That he is the only one that did not give hostages. Those who before had been most powerful.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Ar." p. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am loved.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
p. (1) Amor [1], I am loved	or.
p. (1) Amaris *or* amare [2], thou art loved	aris *or* are.
p. (1) Amatur [3], he is loved	atur.
PLURAL.	
p. (1) Amamur [pl. 1], we are loved	amur.
p. (1) Amamini [pl. 2], ye *or* you are loved	amini.
p. (1) Amantur [pl. 3], they are loved	antur.

"Ar." p. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was loved.*

SINGULAR.	
p. (2) Amabar [1], I was loved	abar.
p. (2) Amabaris *or* amabare [2], thou wast loved	abaris *or* abare.
p. (2) Amabatur [3], he was loved	abatur.

PLURAL. Terminations.

p. (2) Amabamur [pl. 1], we were loved.............................. abamur.
p. (2) Amabamini [pl. 2], you were loved.............................. abamini.
p. (2) Amabantur [pl. 3], they were loved.............................. abantur.

"Ar." p. (3) Future. I, &c., shall or will be loved.

SINGULAR.

p. (3) Amabor [1], I shall be loved.............................. abor.
p. (3) Amaberis *or* amabere [2], thou wilt be loved.......... aberis *or* abere.
p. (3) Amabitur [3], he will be loved.............................. abitur.

PLURAL.

p. (3) Amabimur [pl. 1], we shall be loved.............................. abimur.
p. (3) Amabimini [pl. 2], you will be loved .... abimini.
p. (3) Amabuntur [pl. 3], they will be loved.............................. abuntur.

"Atum." p. (4) Perfect. I, &c., have been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus—loved," and "sum—I am," or "fui—I have been."

SINGULAR.

p. (4) Amatus sum *or* fui [1], I have been loved.
p. (4) Amatus es *or* fuisti [2], thou hast been loved.
p. (4) Amatus est *or* fuit [3], he has been loved.

PLURAL.

p. (4) Amati sumus *or* fuimus [pl. 1], we have been loved.
p. (4) Amati estis *or* fuistis [pl. 2], you have been loved.
p. (4) Amati sunt *or* fuerunt *or* fuere [pl. 3], they have been loved.

"Atum." p. (5) Pluperfect. I, &c., had been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus—loved," and "eram—I was," or "fueram—I had been."

SINGULAR.

p. (5) Amatus eram *or* fueram [1], I had been loved.
p. (5) Amatus eras *or* fueras [2], thou hadst been loved.
p. (5) Amatus erat *or* fuerat [3], he had been loved.

PLURAL.

p. (5) Amati eramus *or* fueramus [pl. 1], we had been loved.
p. (5) Amati eratis *or* fueratis [pl. 2], you had been loved.
p. (5) Amati erant *or* fuerant [pl. 3], they had been loved

"Atum." *p.* (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus — loved," and "ero — I shall be," or "fuero—I shall have been."*

SINGULAR.

p. (6) Amatus ero *or* fuero [1], I shall have been loved.
p. (6) Amatus eris *or* fueris [2], thou wilt have been loved.
p. (6) Amatus erit *or* fuerit [3], he will have been loved.

PLURAL.

p. (6) Amati erimus *or* fuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have been loved.
p. (6) Amati eritis *or* fueritis [pl. 2], you will have been loved.
p. (6) Amati erunt *or* fuerint [pl. 3], they will have been loved.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ar;* the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the third principal part, *atum;* or, rather, the perfect or passive past participle is formed from the third principal part.

In the present tense, singular, *ar* is changed into *or* in the first, into *aris* or *are* in the second, and into *atur* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *amur* in the first, into *amini* in the second, and into *antur* in the third person.

In the imperfect, in the singular, *ar* is changed into *abar* in the first, into *abaris* or *abare* in the second, and into *abatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *abamur* in the first, into *abamini* in the second, and into *abantur* in the third person.

In the future, in the singular, *ar* is changed into *abor* in the first, into *aberis* or *abere* in the second, and into *abitur* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *abimur* in the first, into *abimini* in the second, and into *abuntur* in the third person.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, have properly no termination, they being formed by the perfect or past passive participle, and the tenses of *sum.* The perfect participle is used in the nominative, in the three genders,

and in the singular and plural, according to the gender and number of the passive nominative: as, singular, *amatus, amata, amatum;* plural, *amati, amatæ, amata.*

In the perfect tense, either *sum*—*I am,* or *fui*—*I was,* may be used in the perfect sense, with the perfect or passive participle. So, also, *eram* or *fueram,* both in the pluperfect sense; likewise, *ero* or *fuero,* both in the perfect future sense.

Lesson 57.

[s.pl.1] Nonnulli [s.pl.1] adducti [part.] •• [or–oris.6] pudore, ut
Some induced by-shame, that

[| ar–avi–atum.sb.(3)] vitarent [pl. [3]] •• [io–ionis.4] suspicionem (*f.*) ••
they-might-avoid (the) suspicion

[or–oris.2] timoris remanebant. [ic.pl.1] Hi neque
of-fear did-remain. These [1] were neither

[(sum–esse) | e–ui.(2)] poterant [pl.3] •• fingere [s.4] vultum,
[1] able to-compose (their) countenances,

neque interdum tenere [pl.4] lacrymas; [s.pl.1] abditi [part.] ••
nor sometimes to-restrain (their) tears; hidden

in [m.pl.6] tabernaculis, aut querebantur [m.4] suum
in (their) tents, [1] they either [1] did-bewail their

[m.4] fatum, aut cum [s.pl.6] suis [is–is.pl.6] familiaribus
fate, or with their intimate-friends

[| ar–avi–atum.d.(2)] miserabantur [pl.3] •• [e–is.4] commune [m.4] periculum.
did-deplore (their) common danger.

Vulgò [m.pl.4] testamenta [| ar–avi–atum.p.(2)] obsignabantur [pl.3] ••
Generally | wills were sealed [wills were

[m.pl.6] totis [m.pl.6] castris. [x–cis.pl.6] Vocibus ac
made] [1] in (the) [1] whole camp. [1] By (the) [1] words and

[or–oris.6] timore [ic.pl.2] horum etiam [is.pl.1] ii, [ui.pl.1] qui, in [m.pl.6] castris
[1] by (the) [1] fear of-these also those, who, in (the) camp

habebant [s.4] magnum [ûs.4] usum, [es–itis.1] milites que·
had great experience, (namely) (the) soldiers and

[io–ionis.pl.1] centuriones·, que· [ui.pl.1] qui·
centurions, and (those) who

[(sum–esse) | e–ui.(2)] præerant [pl.3] •• [ûs.3] equitatui paulatim
commanded (the) cavalry [1] were gradually

[| ar–avi–atum.p.(2)] perturbabantur. [pl.3] •• Ex [ic.pl.6] his [ui.pl.1] qui
[1] disturbed. (Those) of these who

volebant 4 se (pl.3) •• existimari minùs s.pl.4 timidos, dicebant
wished themselves to-be-thought less timid, said

4 se (pl.3) •• non vereri is–is.4 hostem, sed
(that) they 1 did not 1 dread (the) enemy, but (that they)

timere pl.4 angustias er–ineris.2 itineris (*n.*) •• et
feared | (the) defiles [difficulties] 1 of (the) 1 march and

do–dinis.4 magnitudinem (*f.*) •• pl.2 sylvarum, uæ.pl.1 quæ
(the) greatness 1 of (the) 1 woods, which

intercederent inter is.pl.4 eos et s.4 Ariovistum, aut, ut
intervened between them and Ariovistus, or, that

4 frumentariam ei.4 rem (*sum–esse*) | e–ui.sb.(2) posset [3] ••
corn affair [provisions] 1 might (not) 1 be-able

commodè satis supportari. Etiam s.pl.1 nonnulli
to-1 be conveniently enough 1 supplied. Also some

| ar–avi–atum.(2) renuntiabant [pl.3] •• ar–aris.3 Cæsari quum
reported to-Cæsar when

jussisset m.pl.4 castra moveri, et m.pl.4 signa
he-had-ordered (the) camp to-be-moved, and (the) standards

ferri, es–itis.pl.1 milites
to-be-borne-forwards [and the troops to advance], (that) (the) soldiers

non (*sum–esse*) | e–ui.in.(1) fore audientes m.3 dicto,
1 would not 1 be obedient 1 to (the) 1 word (of com-

neque s.pl.4 laturos [part.] •• m.pl.4 signa
mand), nor would-they-bear-forward (the) standards

propter or–oris.4 timorem.
on-account-of fear.

Lesson 58.

Nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant: hi neque vultum fingere, neque interdum lacrymas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgò totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus, ac timore, paullatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites, centurionesque, quique equitatui præerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minùs timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris, et magnitudinem silvarum, quæ inter eos atque

Ariovistum intercederent, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commodè supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsari renuntiabant, cùm castra moveri, ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites, neque propter timorem signa laturos.

Exercises on Lessons 57 and 58.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Nonnulli. Renuntiavit. Signa. Dictum. Timor. Timidus. Volebant. Hostis. Iter. Silvæ. Posset. Dicebant. Vulgò. Testamentum. Vox. Paullatim. Castris. Miles. Equitatui. Perturbabantur. Pudor. Vitabo. Vultus. Lacrymas. Poterant. Tabernaculis. Periculum. Miserabantur.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Standards. Fear. The greatness. Between. Them. Might be able. To be supplied. He reported. Camp. To be removed. A soldier. Experience. The command. Gradually. Cavalry. They were disturbed. They wished. The enemy. He might avoid. He did remain. Countenance. Fears. Tents. Danger. Will. In camp. Shame.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum timore perturbabantur. Se minùs timidos existimari volebant. Se vereri angustias itineris. Silvæ, quæ intercederent. Se hostem timere dicebant. Nonnulli Cæsari renuntiabant. Castra moveri jussisset. Non fore dicto audientes milites. Ut timoris suspicionem vitarent. Neque vultum fingere poterant. Abditi in tabernaculis suum fatum querebantur. Commune periculum miserabantur.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

That the soldiers would not be obedient to the word of command. The woods which intervened between them.

Cæsar ordered the camp to be moved. The soldiers, who had great experience. They commanded the cavalry. He wished to be thought less timid. They said that they did not fear the enemy. That they might avoid suspicion. These were not able to restrain their tears. They deplored their common danger. Wills were made. Some induced by shame.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — PASSIVE VOICE.

"Ar." p. sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may or can be loved, if I be loved, &c.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
p. sb. (1) Amer [1], I may *or* can, &c., be loved	er.
p. sb. (1) Ameris *or* amere [2], thou mayst, &c., be loved	eris *or* ere.
p. sb. (1) Ametur [3], he may, &c., be loved	etur.
PLURAL.	
p. sb. (1) Amemur [pl. 1], we may, &c., be loved	emur.
p. sb. (1) Amemini [pl. 2], you may, &c., be loved	emini.
p. sb. (1) Amentur [pl. 3], they may, &c., be loved	entur.

"Ar." p. sb. (2) *Imperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should be loved.*

SINGULAR.	
p. sb. (2) Amarer [1], I might, &c., be loved	arer.
p. sb. (2) Amareris *or* amarere [2], thou mightst be loved	areris *or* arere.
p. sb. (2) Amaretur [3], he might be loved	aretur.
PLURAL.	
p. sb. (2) Amaremur [pl. 1], we might be loved	aremur.
p. sb. (2) Amaremini [pl. 2], you might be loved	aremini.
p. sb. (2) Amarentur [pl. 3], they might be loved	arentur.

"Atum." p. sb. (4) *Perfect. I may have been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus," and "sim—I may be," or "fuerim—I may have been."*

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (4) Amatus sim *or* fuerim [1], I may have been loved.
p. sb. (4) Amatus sis *or* fueris [2], thou mayst have been loved.
p. sb. (4) Amatus sit *or* fuerit [3], he may have been loved.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (4) Amati simus *or* fuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been loved.
p. sb. (4) Amati sitis *or* fueritis [pl. 2], you may have been loved.
p. sb. (4) Amati sint *or* fuerint [pl. 3], they may have been loved.

"Atum." p. sb. (5) *Pluperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should have been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus," and "essem — I might be," or "fuissem — I might have been."*

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (5) Amatus essem *or* fuissem [1], I might have been loved.
p. sb. (5) Amatus esses *or* fuisses [2], thou mightst have been loved.
p. sb. (5) Amatus esset *or* fuisset [3], he might have been loved.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (5) Amati essemus *or* fuissemus [pl. 1], we might have been loved.
p. sb. (5) Amati essetis *or* fuissetis [pl. 2], you might have been loved.
p. sb. (5) Amati essent *or* fuissent [pl. 3], they might have been loved.

"AR." P. IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR. Terminations.

p. im. Amare *or* amator [2], be thou loved .... are *or* ator.
p. im. Amator [3], let him be loved .... ator.

PLURAL.

p. im. Amamini [pl. 2], be ye loved .... amini.
p. im. Amantor [pl. 3], let them be loved .... antor.

P. IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ar." p. in. (1) *Present Tense.*

p. in. (1) Amari, to be loved .... ari.

"Atum." p. in. (4) *Perfect Tense.*

p. in. (4) Amatus esse *or* fuisse, to have been loved.

"Atum." p. in. (3) *Future Tense.*

p. in. (3) Amatum iri, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"Atum." p. (4) *Perfect Tense [part.].*

p. (4) Amatus [part.], loved *or* having been loved .... atus.

"Ar." p. (3) *Future Tense* [*part.*].

	Terminations.
p. (3) Amandus [part.], to be loved, *or* necessary to be loved....	andus.

"ATUM." P. SUPINE IN U.

p. Amatu [u], to be loved	u.

The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive passive, the imperative, and the present tense of the infinitive, and the future participle, are formed from the first principal part, *ar*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, the perfect and future infinitive, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are formed from the third principal part, *atum;* or, rather, the perfect participle and the supine in *u* are thus formed.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ar* is changed into *er* in the first person, into *eris* or *ere* in the second, and in the third person into *etur;* in the plural, *ar* is changed into *emur* in the first, into *emini* in the second, and into *entur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, singular, *ar* is changed into *arer* in the first person, into *areris* or *arere* in the second, and into *aretur* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *aremur* in the first, into *aremini* in the second, and into *arentur* in the third person.

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive have properly no terminations; for the perfect is formed by adding *sim, sis, sit,* &c., or *fuerim, fueris,* &c., to the perfect participle, both in the sense of *I have been;* the pluperfect is, in like manner, formed by adding *essem* or *fuissem,* both in the sense of *I had been.*

The imperative mood is formed, in the second person singular, by changing *ar* into *are* or *ator;* in the third person singular, by changing *ar* into *ator;* the second person plural is formed by changing *ar* into *amini;* and the third person plural by changing *ar* into *antor.*

In the infinitive, present tense, *ar* is changed into *ari.*

The perfect tense of the same is formed by the perfect participle and *esse* or *fuisse*, both in the sense of *to have been*. The future is formed by the supine in *um* and *iri*—*to go*, in the sense of *to be about to be*.

The perfect participle is formed by changing the third principal part, *atum*, into *atus;* the future participle is formed by changing the first principal part, *ar*, into *andus*.

The supine in *u* is formed by changing *um* into *u*.

The syllable *er* is sometimes added to the end of the infinitive present passive: as, *amarier*—*to be loved*, for *amari*—*to be loved*. This may take place in all the conjugations.

The participles, which form the perfect and future infinitive, are used in all genders and numbers, but only in the nominative and accusative.

Deponent Verbs.

There are many verbs of the first conjugation, that have the passive form, but with an active signification. There are, also, verbs in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, which also have the passive form, with an active signification. Such verbs are called *deponents*.

Hortor—*I exhort*, is a deponent verb. It has all the moods of the passive voice, with the participles and supine in *u* of the same: exactly like *amor*—*I am loved*. Besides these, it has the present and future participles of the active voice, the gerunds of the active voice, and the supine in *um*.

These deponents, in the lessons, are denoted by a *d*, in place of a *p*.

Lesson 59.

[is.6] Eodem	[us–oris.6] tempore	[oc.pl.4] hæc	[m.pl.4] mandata
¹At (the) ¹same	time	these	charges

referebantur	[ar–aris.3] Cæsari;	et	[s.pl.1] legati	veniebant	ab
were-brought	to-Cæsar;	and	ambassadors	came	from

[s.pl.6] Æduis	et	[r.6] Treviris.	[s.pl.1] Ædui	questum,	quòd
(the) Ædui	and	(the) Treviri.	(The) Ædui	a-complaining,	that

[pl.1] "Harudes,	qui		nuper
"(the) Harudes,	who	¹had	lately

ar-avi- | atum.p.sb.(5) transportati essent [pl.3] •• in [4] Galliam
[1] been-carried-over into Gaul

| ar-avi-atum.d.sb.(3) popularentur [pl.3] •• is-is.pl.4 fines is.pl.2 eorum ;
laid-waste (the) | territories of-them

pl.4 sese (3) •• (sum-esse).e- | ui.in.(4) potuisse
[their territories]; (that) they [1] have (not) [1] been-able

redimere x-cis.4 pacem s.2 Ariovisti, ne quidem
to-purchase peace of-Ariovistus, not even

ar-dedi- | atum.p.(4).pl.6 datis [part.] •• es-idis.pl.6 obsidibus." Autem
having-given hostages." But

r.pl.1 Treviri "centum s.pl.4 pagos
(the) Treviri (complained, that a) "hundred cantons

s.pl.2 Suevorum consedisse ad [4] ripam s.2 Rheni, ui.pl.1 qui
[1] of (the) [1] Suevi had-settled on (the) banks [1] of (the) [1] Rhine, who

| ar-avi-atum.d.sb.(2) conarentur [pl.3] •• transire s.4 Rhenum ;
were-endeavoring to-cross-over (the) Rhine ; (that)

ter-tris.pl.1 fratres [4] Nasuam et s.4 Cimberium
(the) brothers Nasua and Cimberius

(sum-esse)e- | ui.in.(1) præesse is.pl.3 iis." ui.pl.6 Quibus ei.pl.6 rebus
command them." By-which things

r-ris.1 Cæsar vehementer s.1 commotus [part.] ••
Cæsar [1] being exceedingly [1] moved

ar- | avi-atum.(4) existimavit [3] •• [3] sibi (3) ••
thought that-it-would-be-[1] necessary for-himself

| ar-avi-atum.p.(3).m.6 maturandum, [part.] •• ne, si [1] nova ûs.1 manus (*f.*) ••
[1] to-hasten, lest, if (a) new band

s.pl.2 Suevorum conjunxisset [4] sese (3) •• cum
[1] of (the) [1] Suevi should-have-joined itself with

us-eris.pl.6 veteribus pl.6 copiis s.2 Ariovisti, minùs
(the) old forces of-Ariovistus, | it-might-[1] be less

(sum-esse) | e-ui.sb.(2) posset [3] •• facilè resisti.
[1] able easily to-be-withstood [he might be the

Itaque [6] frumentariâ ei.6 re
less able to resist them]. Therefore | corn thing [provisions]

ar-avi- | atum.p.(4).6 comparatâ, [part.] •• quàm celerrimè
being-provided, as most speedily (as)

(sum-esse).e- | ui.(4) potuit, [3] • contendit m.pl.6 magnis
he-could, he-marched | by-great

ter-tineris.pl.6 itineribus (*n.*) •• ad s.4 Ariovistum.
journeys [by forced marches] to Ariovistus.

Lesson 60.

Hæc, eodem tempore, Cæsari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Æduis et Treviris veniebant; Ædui, questum, quòd "Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese, ne obsidibus quidem datis, pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse;" Treviri autem, "pagos centum Suevorum ad ripam Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; iis præesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres." Quibus rebus Cæser vehementer commotus, maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suevorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minùs facilè resisti posset. Itaque re frumentariâ, quàm celerrimè potuit, comparatâ, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Exercises on Lessons 59 and 60.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Vehementer. Sibi. Existimavit. Manus. Vetus. Facilè. Possent. Celerrimè. Contendit. Tempus. Legati. Questum. Nuper. Transportati essent. Finis. Popularentur. Pax. Potuisse. Pagus. Ripa. Transire. Frater.

English words to be translated into Latin.

They laid waste. To purchase. Territories. Peace. Hostages. Hundred. Banks. Canton. To cross over. Brothers. Time. Charges. They came. A complaining. Moved. He thought. New. Old. Less. Forces. Easily. Therefore. Journey. Most speedily. He marched.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quibus rebus commotus. Minùs facilè resisti posset. Re frumentariâ comparatâ. Ad Ariovistum contendit. Eodem tempore mandata referebantur. Legati veniebant. Nuper in Galliam veniebant. Harudes, fines eorum popularentur.

Obsidibus Ariovisto datis. Ad ripam Rheni consedisse. Germani transire conarentur.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Cæsar being exceedingly moved. He thought it would be necessary. Therefore provisions being provided. He marched by forced march. They laid waste their territories. To purchase peace. Hostages having been given. On the banks of the Rhine. Ambassadors came from the Treviri to Cæsar.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

The second conjugation has its principal parts in *ēr–ui–itum;* but they are more irregular than these principal parts in the first conjugation, especially in the second and third parts.

Active Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Indicative.	Present Infinitive.	Perfect Indicative.	Supine.
Moneo.	Monēre (ēr).	Monui (ui).	Monitum (itum).
I-adviso.	to-advise.	I-have-advised.	an advising.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*Ēr.*" (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., advise.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(1) Moneo [1], I advise	eo.
(1) Mones [2], thou advisest	es.
(1) Monet [3], he advises	et.
PLURAL.	
(1) Monemus [pl. 1], we advise	emus.
(1) Monetis [pl. 2], ye *or* you advise	etis.
(1) Monent [pl. 3], they advise	ent.

"*Ēr.*" (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was advising, or did advise.*

SINGULAR.	
(2) Monebam [1], I was advising	ebam.
(2) Monebas [2], thou wast advising	ebas.
(2) Monebat [3], he was advising	ebat.

PLURAL.	Terminations.
(2) Monebamus [pl. 1], we were advising	ebamus.
(2) Monebatis [pl. 2], you were advising	ebatis.
(2) Monebant [pl. 3], they were advising	ebant.

"*Ēr.*" (3) *Future. I, &c., shall or will advise.*

SINGULAR.

(3) Monebo [1], I shall advise	ebo.
(3) Monebis [2], thou wilt advise	ebis.
(3) Monebit [3], he will advise	ebit.

PLURAL.

(3) Monebimus [pl. 1], we shall advise	ebimus.
(3) Monebitis [pl. 2], you will advise	ebitis.
(3) Monebunt [pl. 3], they will advise	ebunt.

"*Ui.*" (4) *Perfect. I, &c., have advised.*

SINGULAR.

(4) Monui [1], I have advised	ui.
(4) Monuisti [2], thou hast advised	uisti.
(4) Monuit [3], he has advised	uit.

PLURAL.

(4) Monuimus [pl. 1], we have advised	uimus.
(4) Monuistis [pl. 2], you have advised	uistis.
(4) Monuerunt *or* monuere [pl. 3], they have advised	uerunt *or* uere.

"*Ui.*" (5) *Pluperfect. I, &c., had advised.*

SINGULAR.

(5) Monueram [1], I had advised	ueram.
(5) Monueras [2], thou hadst advised	ueras.
(5) Monuerat [3], he had advised	uerat.

PLURAL.

(5) Monueramus [pl. 1], we had advised	ueramus.
(5) Monueratis [pl. 2], you had advised	ueratis.
(5) Monuerant [pl. 3], they had advised	uerant.

"*Ui.*" (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall have advised.*

SINGULAR.

(6) Monuero [1], I shall have advised	uero.
(6) Monueris [2], thou wilt have advised	ueris.
(6) Monuerit [3], he will have advised	uerit.

	PLURAL.	Terminations.
(6)	Monuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have advised	uerimus.
(6)	Monueritis [pl. 2], you will have advised	ueritis.
(6)	Monuerint [pl. 3], they will have advised	uerint.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr*. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the second principal part, *ui*.

In the present tense, in the singular, the *ēr* is changed into *eo* in the first, into *es* in the second, and into *et* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *emus* in the first, into *etis* in the second, and into *ent* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, the *ēr* is changed into *ebam* in the first, into *ebas* in the second, and into *ebat* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *ebamus* in the first, into *ebatis* in the second, and into *ebant* in the third person.

In the future, in the singular, the *ēr* is changed into *ebo* in the first, into *ebis* in the second, and into *ebit* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *ebimus* in the first, into *ebitis* in the second, and into *ebunt* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *ui* in the first, into *uisti* in the second, and into *uit* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *uimus* in the first, into *uistis* in the second, and into *uerunt* or *uere* in the third person.

In the pluperfect, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *ueram* in the first person, into *ueras* in the second, and into *uerat* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *ueramus* in the first, into *ueratis* in the second, and into *uerant* in the third person.

In the future perfect, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *uero* in the first, into *ueris* in the second, and into *uerit* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *uerimus* in the first person, into *ueritis* in the second person, and into *uerint* in the third person.

Lesson 61.

Quare quoniam | ĕr-ausus-sum.(1) audeo [1] •• nondum facere
Wherefore because I-dare not-yet do

id.4 id od.1 quod (*sum-esse*) | e-ui.(1) est [3] •• m.1 primum atque
that, which is (the) first and

m.1 proprium oc.2 hujus m.2 imperii que·
peculiar (duty) | of-this command [of this consular power] and

2 disciplinæ· or-oris.pl.2 majorum; faciam id.4 id
1 of (the) 1 institutions 1 of our 1 ancestors; I-shall-do that

od.1 quod (*sum-esse*) | e-ui.(1) est [3] •• us-oris.1 lenius (*c.*) •• ad
which is milder as-respects

as-atis.4 severitatem, et us-oris.1 utilius (*c.*) •• ad
severity, and more-useful as-respects

is-is.4 communem us-utis.4 salutem; (*f.*) •• nam si
(the) common safety; for if

(b)ĕr- | ssi-ssum(6) jussero [1] •• 2 te (2) •• interfici 1 reliqua
I-shall-have-ordered you to-be-slain (the) remaining

ûs.1 manus (*f*) •• or-oris.pl.2 conjuratorum
bands 1 of (the) 1 conspirators

| (sid)ĕr-sedi-sessum(3) residebit [3] •• in ei-6 *and* 6 republicâ; sin 1 tu (2) ••
will-settle in (the) republic; but-if you

exieris (quod jamdudum | ar-avi-atum.d(1) hortor [1] ••
will-depart (which now-for-a-long-time I exhort

4 te, (2)) 1 magna et 1 perniciosa 1 sentina ei 2 and 2 reipublicæ
you (to do), (that) great and pernicious sink 1 of (the) 1 republic

s.pl.2 tuorum es-itis.pl.2 comitum exhaurietur ex
(consisting) of-your companions will-be-drawn-off from

bs-bis.6 urbe. uid.1 Quid (*sum-esse*) | e-ui est, [3] •• 5 Catilina? Num
(the) city. What is-it, O-Catiline? Whether

| ar-avi-atum(1) dubitas [2] •• facere id.4 id, 6 me (1)
do-you-hesitate to-do that I

| ar-avi-atum(1) ns-ntis.6 imperante, [part.] •• od.4 quod jam faciebas
commanding, which just-now | you-did

6 tuâ ns-ntis.6 sponte? l-lis.1 consul
[were about to do] of-your-own accord? (the) consul

(b)ĕr-ssi-ssum(1) jubet [3] •• is-is.4 hostem exire ex bs-bis.6 urbe;
orders (you) (an) enemy to-go-out from (the) city;

| ar-avi-atum(1) interrogas [2] •• 4 me (1) •• num in m.4 exilium?
do-you-ask me whether into exile?

Non | (b)ēr-ssi-ssum(1) jubeo; [1] •• sed si consulis [4] me(1) ••
I-[1]do not [1]command but if you-consult me

| (d)ĕr-asi-asum(1) suadeo. [1] ••
I-persuade (you to do so).

Lesson 62.

Quare quoniam id, quod primum, atque hujus imperii disciplinæque majorum proprium est, facere nondum audeo; faciam id, quod est ad severitatem lenius, et ad communem salutem utilius; nam, si te interfici jussero, residebit in republicâ reliqua conjuratorum manus; sin tu (quod te jamdudum hortor), exieris, exhaurietur ex urbe tuorum comitum magna et perniciosa sentina reipublicæ. Quid est, Catilina? Num dubitas id, me imperante, facere, quod jam tuâ sponte faciebas? Exire ex urbe consul hostem jubet; interrogas me, num in exilium? Non jubeo; sed si me consulis, suadeo.

Exercises on Lessons 61 and 62.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Num. Dubito. Imperavi. Urbs. Hostis. Interrogavit. Jussit. Suadeo. Facere. Audemus. Severitas. Salus. Lenius. Interfici. Residebo. Manus. Hortor. Comes. Disciplina. Utilius.

English words to be translated into Latin.

To go out. He will ask. He persuades. They will settle. But if. He has exhorted. Companions. City. They hesitate. He commands. He orders. Enemy. Because. He dares. Peculiar. Command. Milder. I shall have ordered. Hand or band.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quod te hortor. Sin tu exieris ex urbe. Quid est? Dubitas id facere? Quod tuâ sponte faciebas. Non jubeo, sed suadeo. Quod proprium est, facere nondum audeo. Faciam

id, quod est ad communem salutem utilius. Si te interfici jussero. Residebit in republicâ reliqua conjuratorum manus.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Will you ask me. I do not command, but I persuade. He will settle in the republic. He exhorts me. What is it? Whether did you hesitate to do it. You did it of your own accord. The consul orders you. Because I dare to do it. Which is the first and peculiar duty of this command, which is more useful as respects the common safety.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — ACTIVE VOICE.

"Ēr." sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may, &c., advise.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (1) Moneam [1], I may, &c., advise	eam.
sb. (1) Moneas [2], thou mayst, &c., advise	eas.
sb. (1) Moneat [3], he may, &c., advise	eat.
PLURAL.	
sb. (1) Moneamus [pl. 1], we may, &c., advise	eamus.
sb. (1) Moneatis [pl. 2], you may, &c., advise	eatis.
sb. (1) Moneant [pl. 3], they may, &c., advise	eant.

"Ēr." sb. (2) *Imperfect. I, &c., might, could, &c., advise.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (2) Monerem [1], I might, &c., advise	erem.
sb. (2) Moneres [2], thou mightst, &c., advise	eres.
sb. (2) Moneret [3], he might, &c., advise	eret.
PLURAL.	
sb. (2) Moneremus [pl. 1], we might, &c., advise	eremus.
sb. (2) Moneretis [pl. 2], you might, &c., advise	eretis.
sb. (2) Monerent [pl. 3], they might, &c., advise	erent.

Ui." sb. (4) *Perfect. I, &c., may have advised.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (4) Monuerim [1], I may have advised	uerim.
sb. (4) Monueris [2], thou mayst have advised	ueris.
sb. (4) Monuerit [3], he may have advised	uerit.

PLURAL. Terminations.

sb. (4) Monuerimus [pl. 1], we may have advised.................... uerimus.
sb. (4) Monueritis [pl. 2], you may have advised.................... ueritis.
sb. (4) Monuerint [pl. 3], they may have advised.................... uerint.

"Ui." sb. (5) Pluperfect. I, &c., might, could, &c., have advised.

SINGULAR.

sb. (5) Monuissem [1], I might, &c., have advised.................. uissem.
sb. (5) Monuisses [2], thou mightst, &c., have advised............. uisses.
sb. (5) Monuisset [3], he might, &c., have advised.................. uisset.

PLURAL.

sb. (5) Monuissemus [pl. 1], we might, &c., have advised......... uissemus.
sb. (5) Monuissetis [pl. 2], you might, &c., have advised.......... uissetis.
sb. (5) Monuissent [pl. 3], they might, &c., have advised......... uissent.

"ĒR." IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

im. Mone *or* moneto [2], advise thou.................................. e *or* eto.
im. Moneto [3], let him advise.. eto.

PLURAL.

im. Monete *or* monetote [pl. 2], advise ye.......................... ete *or* etote.
im. Monento [pl. 3], let them advise....................................... ento.

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ēr." in. (1) Present Tense.

in. (1) Monere, to advise.. ere.

"Ui." in. (4) Perfect Tense.

in. (4) Monuisse, to have advised.. uisse.

"Itum." in. (3) Future.

in. (3) Moniturus esse, to be about to advise......................... iturus esse.

PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"Ēr." (1) Present Tense.

(1) ens–entis. 1. Monens [part.], advising................................ ens.

"Itum." (3) Future Tense.

(3) us–a–um. 1. Moniturus [part.], about to advise.................. us–a–um.

"ĒR." GERUNDS [GER.].

	Terminations.
2. *G.* Monendi [ger.], of advising	endi.
3. *D.* Monendo [ger.], to advising	endo.
4. *A.* Monendum [ger.], advising	endum.
6. *Ab.* Monendo [ger.], in, with, &c., advising	endo.

UM. SUPINE.

Monitum [um], an advising	itum.

In the above, the present and imperfect subjunctive, with the imperative, and all their numbers and persons, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr;* also, the present infinitive, present participle, and the gerunds, are formed from the same *ēr.* The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive are formed from the second principal part, *ui;* also, the perfect infinitive is formed from the same. The future participle, the future infinitive, and the supine in *um*, are formed from the third principal part, *itum.*

In the present tense, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *eam* in the first person, into *eas* in the second, and into *eat* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *eamus* in the first person, into *eatis* in the second, and into *eant* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *erem* in the first person, into *eres* in the second, and into *eret* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *eremus* in the first person, into *eretis* in the second, and into *erent* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *uerim* in the first person, into *ueris* in the second, and into *uerit* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *uerimus* in the first person, into *ueritis* in the second, and into *uerint* in the third person.

In the pluperfect, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *uissem* in the first person, into *uisses* in the second, and into *uisset* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *uissemus*

in the first person, into *uissetis* in the second, and into *uissent* in the third person.

In the imperative mood, *ĕr* is changed, in the second person, into *e* or *eto;* in the third person, into *eto.* In the plural, *ĕr*, in the second person, is changed into *ete* or *etote;* in the third person, into *ento.*

In the infinitive mood, present tense, *ĕr* is changed into *ēre;* in the perfect of the same, *ui* is changed into *uisse;* in the future of the same, *itum* is changed into *iturus esse.*

In the participles, in the present tense, *ĕr* is changed into *ens;* in the future, *itum* is changed into *iturus.*

In the gerunds, *ĕr* is changed, in the genitive, into *endi;* in the dative, into *endo;* in the accusative, into *endum;* in the ablative, into *endo.*

In the supine, *itum* remains *itum.*

The same omission of *ve* or *vi*, that has been indicated in the first conjugation, may also take place in this second, when *ve* or *vi* occurs, in the second principal part: as, *implêrunt* for *impleverunt—they have filled.*

Lesson 63.

Ex [od.6] quo [(sum–esse) | e–ui.sb.(2)] posset [3] ●● [| ar–avi–atum.p.in.(1)] judicari
From which it-might be-judged

quantum [m.2] boni, [1] constantia [| ĕr–ui–itum.sb.(2)] haberet [3] ●● in
how-much of-good, constancy might-have in

[6] se ; (3) ●● propterea̍ quòd [ui.pl.4] quos aliquandiu
itself; because that (those) whom they-[1] had for-some-time

[ĕr | ui sb.(5)] timuissent [pl.3] ●● sine [6] causâ [is–is.pl.1] inermes,
[1] feared without cause (when) unarmed,

posteà [ar– | avi–atum.sb.(5)] superâssent [pl.3] ●● [ic.pl.4] hos
they-[1] had afterwards [1] conquered those

[s.pl.4] armatos et [or–oris.pl.4] victores. Denique,
(same, when) armed and conquerors. In-fine, (that)

[ic.pl.4] hos [s.pl.4] Germanos [(sum–esse) | e–fui] esse [is.pl.4] eosdem, cum·
these Germans were (the) same, with

[ui.pl.6] quibus· [s.pl.1] Helvetii sæpenumerò
whom (the) Helvetii [1] having often

[s.pl.1]congressi [part.] •• plerumque [ar- | avi-atum.sb.(5)]superâssent [pl.3] ••
[1]engaged [1]had mostly [1]overcome

non solùm in [s.pl.6]suis, sed etiam in
(them) not only in their-own (territories), but also in

[is-is.pl.6]finibus [le.pl.2]illorum; [ui.pl.1]qui
(the) territories | of-them [of these Germans], who [the Helvetii]

tamen non [(sum-esse).e- | ui.sb.(4)]potuerint [pl.3] ••
however [1]have not [1]been-able

[(sum-esse) | e-ui.in.(1)]esse [r-ris.pl.1]pares [er.3]nostro [ûs.3]exercitui. Si
to-be equal to-our army. If

[m.1]adversum [m.1]prœlium et [1]fuga [s.pl.2]Gallorum
(the) adverse battle and flight [1]of (the) [1]Gauls

[| ĕr-i-tum.sb.(2)]commoveret [3] •• [ui.pl.4]quos, [ic.pl.4]hos
should-disturb any, (that) those

[(sum-esse) | e-ui.in.(1)]posse reperire, si quærerent,
would-be-able to-find, if they-inquired, (that)

[s.pl.6]Gallis [ar-avi- | atum.(4).s.pl.6]defatigatis [part.] •• [as-atis.6]diuturnitate
(the) Gauls being-wearied [1]by (the) [1]long-duration

[m.2]belli, [s.4]Ariovistum, quum
[1]of (the) [1]war, (that) Ariovistus, when

[(in).ĕr-ui-entum.sub.(5)]continuisset [3] •• [4]se [(3)] •• [s.pl.4]multos
he-had-kept himself many

[is-is.pl.4]menses (*m.*) •• [m.pl.6]castris ac [us-udis.pl.6]paludibus (*f.*) ••
months in-camps and marshes

neque fecisset [as-atis.4]potestatem [2]sui [(3)] ••
| nor had-made power of-himself [nor had given an

subitò [s.4]adortum [part.] ••
opportunity of battle] [1]having suddenly [1]attacked (the Gauls)

jam [| ar-avi-atum.(1).ns-ntis.pl.4]desperantes [part.] •• de [6]pugnâ et
now despairing of battle and

[s.pl.4]dispersos, [part.] •• vicisse magìs [io-ionis.6]ratione ac
scattered, conquered more [1]by (his) [1]skill and

[m.6]consilio quàm [us-utis.6]virtute (*f.*) ••
[1]by (his) [1]counsel than [1]by (his) [1]courage.

Lesson 64.

Ex quo judicari posset, quantum haberet in se boni constantia; propterea quòd, quos aliquandiu inermes sine causâ timuissent, hos posteà armatos ac victores superâssent. De-

nique hos esse eosdem Germanos, quibuscum sæpenumerò Helvetii congressi, non solùm in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superâssent, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint. Si quos adversum prœlium, et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quærerent, reperire posse, diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis, Ariovistum, quum multos menses castris ac paludibus se continuisset, neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugnâ, et dispersos, subitò adortum, magìs ratione ac consilio, quàm virtute vicisse.

Exercises on Lessons 63 and 64.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Prœlium. Fuga. Reperire. Diuternitas. Bellum. Mensis. Castris. Potestas. Palus. Desperavit. Pugna. Consilium. Virtute. Eosdem. Denique. Sæpenumerò. Finis. Superavissent. Tamen. Par. Exercitus.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Months. Marshes. Power. Suddenly. Despairing. Battle. Mostly. Only. Territories. Equal. Flight. To be able. Being fatigued. They inquired. War. He had kept. To be judged. Might have. Because. Without. Unarmed. They had conquered. Conquerors. In fine. Often.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Germanos sæpenumerò superâssent. Pares non sunt nostro exercitui. Quantum haberet in se boni constantia. Quos sine causâ timuissent. Hos armatos superâssent. Si quos fuga Gallorum commoveret. Hos reperire posse. Ariovistus castris se continuisset. Galli desperantes de pugnâ. Magìs consilio quàm virtute.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

They had overcome them in their own territories. Who have not been able. They are not equal to our army. If

the flight of the Gauls should disturb any. They may be able to find. He kept himself many months in camp. He conquered more by counsel than by courage. From which it might be judged. Because they had feared them without cause.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Ēr." p. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am advised.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
p. (1) Moneor [1], I am advised	eor.
p. (1) Moneris *or* monere [2], thou art advised	eris *or* ere.
p. (1) Monetur [3], he is advised	etur.
PLURAL.	
p. (1) Monemur [pl. 1], we are advised	emur.
p. (1) Monemini [pl. 2], you are advised	emini.
p. (1) Monentur [pl. 3], they are advised	entur.

"Ēr." p. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was advised.*

SINGULAR.	
p. (2) Monebar [1], I was advised	ebar.
p. (2) Monebaris *or* monebare [2], thou wast advised	ebaris *or* ebare.
p. (2) Monebatur [3], he was advised	ebatur.
PLURAL.	
p. (2) Monebamur [pl. 1], we were advised	ebamur.
p. (2) Monebamini [pl. 2], you were advised	ebamini.
p. (2) Monebantur [pl. 3], they were advised	ebantur.

"Ēr." p. (3) *Future. I, &c., shall or will be advised.*

SINGULAR.	
p. (3) Monebor [1], I shall be advised	ebor.
p. (3) Moneberis *or* monebere [2], thou wilt be advised	eberis *or* ebere.
p. (3) Monebitur [3], he will be advised	ebitur.
PLURAL.	
p. (3) Monebimur [pl. 1], we shall be advised	ebimur.
p. (3) Monebimini [pl. 2], you will be advised	ebimini.
p. (3) Monebuntur [pl. 3], they will be advised	ebuntur.

"Itum." p. (4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., have been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus — advised," and "sum — I am," or "fui — I have been."*

SINGULAR.

p. (4) Monitus sum *or* fui [1], I have been advised.
p. (4) Monitus es *or* fuisti [2], thou hast been advised.
p. (4) Monitus est *or* fuit [3], he has been advised.

PLURAL.

p. (4) Moniti sumus *or* fuimus [pl. 1], we have been advised.
p. (4) Moniti estis *or* fuistis [pl. 2], you have been advised.
p. (4) Moniti sunt *or* fuerunt *or* fuere [pl. 3], they have been advised.

"Itum." p. (5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus — advised," and "eram — I was," or "fueram — I had been."*

SINGULAR.

p. (5) Monitus eram *or* fueram [1], I had been advised.
p. (5) Monitus eras *or* fueras [2], thou hadst been advised.
p. (5) Monitus erat *or* fuerat [3], he had been advised.

PLURAL.

p. (5) Moniti eramus *or* fueramus [pl. 1], we had been advised.
p. (5) Moniti eratis *or* fueratis [pl. 2], you had been advised.
p. (5) Moniti erant *or* fuerant [pl. 3], they had been advised.

"Itum." p. (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus—advised," and "ero—I shall be," or "fuero—I shall have been."*

SINGULAR.

p. (6) Monitus ero *or* fuero [1], I shall have been advised.
p. (6) Monitus eris *or* fueris [2], thou wilt have been advised.
p. (6) Monitus erit *or* fuerit [3], he will have been advised.

PLURAL.

p. (6) Moniti erimus *or* fuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have been advised.
p. (6) Moniti eritis *or* fueritis [pl. 2], you will have been advised.
p. (6) Moniti erunt *or* fuerint [pl. 3], they will have been advised.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative passive, are formed from the first principal part *ĕr ;* the per-

fect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the third principal part, *itum ;* or, rather, the perfect participle is formed from the third principal part.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *eor* in the first person, into *eris* or *ere* in the second, and into *etur* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *emur* in the first person, into *emini* in the second, and into *entur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *ebar* in the first person, into *ebaris* or *ebare* in the second, and into *ebatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *ebamur* in the first person, into *ebamini* in the second, and into *ebantur* in the third person.

In the future tense, *ēr* is changed, in the singular, into *ebor* in the first person, into *eberis* or *ebere* in the second, and into *ebitur* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *ebimur* in the first person, into *ebimini* in the second, and into *ebuntur* in the third person.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, have properly no terminations, they being formed by the perfect participle and the tenses of *sum.*

In the perfect tense, either *sum — I am,* or *fui — I was,* combined with the perfect participle, may be used to denote the perfect tense. So, likewise, *eram* or *fueram* for the pluperfect, and *ero* or *fuero* for the perfect future.

Lesson 65.

Verò nunc, [uæ.1] quæ [(*sum-esse*) | e-ui.(1)] est [3] •• [ta.1] ista [1] tua [1] vita?
But now, what is this your life?

Enim jam loquar cum[·6] te[·(2)] •• sic, ut videar non
For now I-will-speak with you so, that I-may-seem not

[(*sum-esse*) | e-ui.in.(1)] esse [s.1] permotus [m.6] odio, [od.6] quo
to-be moved [1] with (the) [1] hatred, with-which

[| ēr-ui-itum.(1)] debeo, [1] •• sed ut [6] misericordiâ,
I-ought, but that (I may seem to be moved) by-pity,

[1] nulla [uæ.1] quæ [| ēr-ui-itum.p.(1)] debetur [3] •• [3] tibi. [(2)] •• Venisti
none (of) which is-due to-you. You-came

paullo ante in [ūs.4]senatum; [uis.1]quis ex [uæ.6]hâc
a-little before (this) into (the) senate; who out-of this

[6]tantâ [6]frequentiâ ex tot [s.pl.6]tuis [s.pl.6.]amicis
so-great (an) assemblage out-of so-many (of) your friends

ac [s.pl.6]necessariis [ar- | avi-atum.(4)]salutavit [3] •• [4]te ? (2) •• Si
and acquaintances saluted you? If

[oc.1]hoc contigit [o-inis]nemini post [4]memoriam
this (thing) has-happened to-no-one, since (the) memory

[o-inis.pl.2]hominum, [| ar-avi-atum.(1)]expectas [2] •• [4]contumeliam
of-man, do-you-wait (for the) reproaches

[x-cis.2]vocis, cùm [(*sum-esse*) | e-ui.sb.(1)]sis [2] •• [s.1]oppressus
of (their) voices, when you-are (already) oppressed

[m.6]gravissimo (*s.*) •• [m.6]judicio [as-atis.2]taciturnitatis ?
[1]by (the) [1]most-grave (condemning) judgments [1]of (the) [1]silence

[uid.1]quid, quòd
(of these here present)? | what [but what shall I say of this], that

[s.6]tuo [ūs.6]adventu [ta.pl.1]ista [m.pl.1]subsellia vacuefacta sunt ?
at-your arrival these seats were-made-vacant?

Quòd [is-is.pl.1]omnes [is-is.pl.1]consulares,
What all (the) consular (persons) [persons of consular

[ui.pl.1]qui persæpe
rank, or who had been consuls], who very-often

[(*sum-esse*).e- | ui.(4)]fuerunt [pl.3] •• [s.pl.1]constituti [part.] •• [3]tibi (2) ••
have-been assigned by-you

ad [es-is.4]cædem reliquerunt [ta.4]istam [rs-rtis.4]partem
for slaughter left that part

[m.pl.2]subselliorum [4]nudam atque [is-is.4]inanem, simul atque
of-the-seats naked and empty, as-soon as

[(d)ĕr- | di-sessum.(4)]assedisti ? [2] •• [uis.6]Quo [s.6]animo tandem
you-sat-near (them)? With-what mind in-fine

[| ar-avi-atum.(1)]putas [2] •• [oc.1]hoc ferendum [3]tibi ? (2) ••
do-you-think this is-to-be-born by-you?

[es 6]Mehercle, si [s.pl.1]mei [s.pl.1]servi metuerent [4]me (1) •• [tud.6]isto
By-Hercules, if my slaves should-fear me in-that

[m.6]pacto, ut [is-is.pl.1]omnes [s.pl.1]tui [is-is.pl.1]cives metuunt
manner, that all your citizens fear

[4]te (2) •• [| ar-avi-atum.sb.(2)]putarem [1] •• [4]meam
you, I-would-think (that) my

[s.4]domum (*f.*) •• relinquendam : [1]tu (2) •• non
house (ought) to-be-left: [1]do-you not

ar-avi-atum.d.(1) arbitraris [2] ••		bs.bis.4 urbem	
[1] think	(that)	the-city	(ought to be left)

[3] tibi.(2) ••
by-you.

Lesson 66.

Nunc vero, quæ tua est ista vita? Sic enim jam tecum loquar, non ut odio permotus esse videar, quo debeo, sed ut misericordiâ, quæ tibi nulla debetur. Venisti paullo ante in senatum; quis te ex hâc tantâ frequentiâ, ex tot tuis amicis ac necessariis salutavit? Si hoc post hominum memoriam contigit nemini, vocis expectas contumeliam, cùm sis gravissimo judicio taciturnitatis oppressus? Quid, quod adventu tuo ista subsellia vacuefacta sunt? Quod omnes consulares, qui tibi persæpe ad cædem constituti fuerunt, simul atque assedisti, partem istam subselliorum nudam atque inanem reliquerunt? Quo tandem animo hoc tibi ferendum putas? Servi mehercle meì si me isto pacto metuerent, ut te metuunt omnes cives tui, domum meam relinquendam putarem; tu tibi urbem non arbitraris?

Exercises on Lessons 65 and 66.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Adventus. Subsellium. Consulares. Cædes. Nudus. Reliquerunt. Animus. Putavit. Servus. Pactum. Cives. Domus. Putâssem. Urbs. Nunc. Vita. Tecum. Odium. Debet. Misericordia. Nullus. Tibi. Paullo. Frequentia. Amicus. Salutant. Nemo. Vox. Judicium.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Part. Slaughter. Empty. You sat near. In fine. Do you think. Slaves. They fear. I think. City. So many. Acquaintances. It has happened. Of men. No one. Reproaches. Silence. Arrival. Seats. Very often. Life. Moved. Hatred. City. Assemblage.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quo animo tibi ferendum putas? Servi mei si me metuerent. Tibi urbem relinquendam putares. Adventu tuo subsellia vacuefacta sunt. Ad cædem constituti fuerunt. Sic tecum loquar. Nulla misericordia tibi debetur. Quis te ex tuis amicis salutavit. Hoc contigit nemini.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

They left that part of the seats. As soon as you sat near them. All the citizens fear you. I would think that my house ought to be left. Who out of your friends saluted you? This has happened to no one. At your arrival these seats were made vacant. What! is this your life? That I may seem to be moved. Not with the hatred, with which I ought. The pity, which is due to you.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — PASSIVE VOICE.

"Ēr." *p. sb.* (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may or can be advised.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
p. sb. (1) Monear [1], I may, &c., be advised........................	ear.
p. sb. (1) Monearis *or* moneare [2], thou mayst, &c., be advised........................	earis *or* eare.
p. sb. (1) Moneatur [3], he may, &c., be advised........................	eatur.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (1) Moneamur [pl. 1], we may, &c., be advised..............	eamur.
p. sb. (1) Moneamini [pl. 2], you may, &c., be advised..............	eamini.
p. sb. (1) Moneantur [pl. 3], they may, &c., be advised..............	eantur.

"Ēr." *p. sb.* (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, would, &c., be advised.*

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (2) Monerer [1], I might, &c., be advised........................	erer.
p. sb. (2) Monereris *or* Monerere [2], thou mightst, &c., be advised........................	ereris *or* erere.
p. sb. (2) Moneretur [3], he might, &c., be advised..................	eretur.

PLURAL. Terminations.

p. sb. (2) Moneremur [pl. 1], we might, &c., be advised............ eremur.
p. sb. (2) Moneremini [pl. 2], you might, &c., be advised........... eremini.
p. sb. (2) Monerentur [pl. 3], they might, &c., be advised......... erentur.

"Itum." p. sb. (4) Perfect Tense. I, &c., may have been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus—advised," and "sim—I may be," or "fuerim—I may have been."

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (4) Monitus sim *or* fuerim [1], I may have been advised.
p. sb. (4) Monitus sis *or* fueris [2], thou mayst have been advised.
p. sb. (4) Monitus sit *or* fuerit [3], he may have been advised.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (4) Moniti simus *or* fuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been advised.
p. sb. (4) Moniti sitis *or* fueritis [pl. 2], you may have been advised.
p. sb. (4) Moniti sint *or* fuerint [pl. 3], they may have been advised.

"Itum." p. sb. (5) Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, would, or should have been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus—advised," and "essem—I might be," or "fuissem—I might have been."

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (5) Monitus essem *or* fuissem [1], I might, &c., have been advised.
p. sb. (5) Monitus esses *or* fuisses [2], thou mightst have been advised.
p. sb. (5) Monitus esset *or* fuisset [3], he might have been advised.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (5) Moniti essemus *or* fuissemus [pl. 1], we might have been advised.
p. sb. (5) Moniti essetis *or* fuissetis [pl. 2], you might have been advised.
p. sb. (5) Moniti essent *or* fuissent [pl. 3], they might have been advised.

"ĒR." P. IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR. Terminations.

p. im. Monere *or* monetor [2], be thou advised.................... ere *or* etor.
p. im. Monetor [3], let him be advised................................ etor.

PLURAL.

p. im. Monemini [pl. 2], be ye advised................................ emini.
p. im. Monentor [pl. 3], let them be advised.......................... entor.

P. IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ēr." p. in. (1) *Present Tense. To be advised.*

Terminations.

p. in. (1) Moneri, to be advised .... eri.

"Itum." p. in. (4) *Perfect Tense. To have been advised.*

p. in. (4) Monitus esse *or* fuisse, to have been advised.

"Itum." p. in. (3) *Future Tense. To be about to be advised.*

p. in. (3) Monitum iri, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"Itum." p. (4) *Perfect Tense* [*part.*]. *Advised.*

p. (4) Monitus [part.], advised .... itus.

"Ēr." p. (3) *Future Tense* [*part.*]. *To be advised, or necessary to be advised.*

p. (3) Monendus [part.], to be advised, or necessary to be advised, endus.

"ITUM." P. SUPINE IN [U].

p. Monitu [u], to be advised .... u.

The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive passive, the imperative passive, the present tense of the infinitive passive, and the future participle passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive, the perfect and future infinitive passive, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are formed from the third principal part, *itum;* or, rather, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are thus formed.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *ear* in the first person, into *earis* or *eare* in the second, and into *eatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *eamur* in the first person, into *eamini* in the second, and into *eantur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, *ēr* is changed into *erer* in the first person, into *ereris* or *erere* in the second, and into *eretur* in

the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *eremur* in the first person, into *eremini* in the second, and into *erentur* in the third person.

The perfect and pluperfect tenses, subjunctive passive, have properly no terminations; for the perfect is formed by the perfect participle *monitus*, and *sim* or *fuerim*, either forming the perfect subjunctive, *I, &c., may have advised.* The pluperfect is formed by the same participle and *essem* or *fuissem*, either in the sense of *I, &c., might, &c., have been advised.*

In the imperative mood, *ēr* is changed into *ere* or *etor*, in the singular, second person, and into *etor* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr*, in the second person, is changed into *emini;* in the third person, *ēr* is changed into *entor.*

In the infinitive, in the present tense, *ēr* is changed into *eri.* The perfect tense of the same is formed by the perfect participle and *esse* or *fuisse.* The future by the supine in *um* and *iri.*

The perfect participle is formed by changing the third principal part, *itum*, into *itus;* the future participle is formed by changing *ēr* into *endus.*

The supine in *u* is formed by changing *um* into *u.*

Lesson 67.

Ubi r-ris.1 Cæsar intellexit, is.4 eum
When Cæsar understood, (that) he [Ariovistus]

| ēr-ui-itum.in.(1) tenere 4 sese (3) •• m.pl.6 castris, ne
kept himself in-camp, (that) he-1 might no

diutiùs | ēr-ui-itum.p.sb.(2) prohiberetur [3] •• ûs.6 commeatu,
longer 1 be-prohibited from-provisions,

delegit s.4 locum s.4 idoneum m.pl.3 castris ultra is.4 eum
he-chose (a) place suitable for-camps beyond that

s.4 locum circiter s.pl.4 sexcentos ûs.pl.4 passus ab is.pl.6 eis, in
place about six-hundred paces from them, in

ui.6 quo s.6 loco s.pl.1 Germani (d)ēr- | di-ssum.(5) consederant, [pl.3] ••
which place (the) Germans had-encamped,

que· ex–icis.6 triplici ei.6 acie· 6 instructâ, venit ad is.4 eum
and (a) triple line being-drawn-up, he-came to that

s.4 locum. (b)ēr– | ssi–ssum.(4) Jussit [3] •• 4 primam et 4 secundam
place. He-ordered (the) first (line) and (the) second

ci.4 aciem (sum–esse) | e–ui.in.(1) esse in m.pl.6 armis, 4 tertiam
line to-be under arms, (the) third (line)

munire m.pl.4 castra. ic.1 Hic s.1 locus, utì dictum est,
to-fortify (the) camp. This place, as has-been-said,

(sum–esse) | e–ui.(2) aberat [3] •• ab is–is.6 hoste circiter s.pl.4 sexcentos
was-distant from (the) enemy about six-hundred

ûs.pl.4 passus. Eò s.1 Ariovistus misit s.4 numerum
paces. Thither Ariovistus sent (a) number

o–inis.pl.2 hominum circiter sexdecim ia.pl.4 millia m.pl.4 expedita,
of-men about sixteen thousand light-armed,

cum is–is.6 omni ûs.6 equitatu; uæ.pl.1 quæ pl.1 copiæ
with all (the) cavalry; which forces

| ēr–ui–itum.sb.(2) perterrerent [pl.3] •• er.pl.4 nostros, et
should-frighten our (men), and

| ēr–ui–itum.sb.(2) prohiberent [pl.3] •• io–onis.6 munitione.(*f.*) ••
prohibit (them) from-fortifying.

m.6 Nihilo secius r–ris.1 Cæsar, ut
| By-nothing otherwise [nevertheless] Cæsar, as he-[1] had

antè constituerat, (b)ēr– | ssi–ssum.(4) jussit [3] •• pl.4 duas ei.pl.4 acies
before [1] determined, ordered (the) two lines

| ar–avi–atum.in.(1) propulsare is–is 4 hostem, 4 tertiam perficere
to-repel (the) enemy, (the) third to-complete

us–eris.4 opus. m.pl.6 Castris m.pl.6 munitis, [part.] •• reliquit ibi
(the) work. (The) camp being-fortified, he-left there

pl.4 duas io–ionis.pl.4 legiones (*f.*) •• et rs–rtis.4 partem
two legions and (a) part

m.pl.2 auxiliorum; reduxit quatuor pl.4 reliquas
[1] of (the) [1] auxiliaries; he-brought-back (the) four remaining

in us–oris.pl.4 majora m.pl.4 castra.
(legions) into (the) greater camp.

Lesson 68.

Ubi eum castris sese tenere Cæsar intellexit, ne diutiùs commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant circiter passus sexcentos ab eis, castris ido-

neum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructâ, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, utì dictum est, aberat; eò circiter hominum numerum sexdecim millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quæ copiæ nostros perterrerent, et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo seciùs Cæsar, ut antè constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit, et partem auxiliorum: quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

Exercises on Lessons 67 and 68.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Passus. Abest. Homo. Expedita. Equitatus. Misit. Copiæ. Prohibeo. Acies. Duo. Hostis. Opus. Jubet. Reliquit. Reduxit. Teneo. Diutiùs. Commeatus. Ultra. Locus. Idoneus. Delegit. Venit. Munire.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Thither. He sent. About. Light armed. Forces. They prohibit. He determined. He ordered. Before. He has repelled. The works. The enemy. He left. Two. He led back. The remaining. He holds. He would be prohibited. Suitable. Beyond. He came. They have ordered. To fortify. Is distant.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Hic locus ab hoste passus sexcentos aberat. Eò hominum numerum sexdecim millia misit. Quæ copiæ munitione prohiberent. Duas acies hostem propulsare jussit. Reliquas legiones in castra reduxit. Castris sese tenent. Ne commeatu prohiberetur. Quo in loco consederant. Castris idoneum locum delegit. Ad eum locum venit. Tertiam aciem castra munire jussit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Cæsar, as he had before determined. He ordered the two lines to repel the enemy. He left there a part of the auxiliaries. He led back the legions into camp. He ordered the two legions to be under arms. As has been said. This place was distant from the enemy six hundred paces. Who should frighten our men. Cæsar chose a suitable place for the camp. In which place the Germans had encamped. He came to that place.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

The third conjugation has its principal parts in *ĕr–i–tum;* but they are more irregular than in any of the four conjugations.

Active Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Indicative.	Present Infinitive.	Perfect Indicative.	Supine.
Rego,	Regĕre (ĕr),	Rexi (i),	Rectum (tum),
I-rule.	to-rule.	I-have-ruled.	a-ruling.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*(G)ĕr.*" (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., rule.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(1) Rego [1], I rule	go.
(1) Regis [2], thou rulest	gis.
(1) Regit [3], he rules	git.
PLURAL.	
(1) Regimus [pl. 1], we rule	gimus.
(1) Regitis [pl. 2], you rule	gitis.
(1) Regunt [pl. 3], they rule	gunt.

"*(G)ĕr.*" (2) *Imperfect Tense. I ruled, or was ruling, or did rule.*

SINGULAR.	
(2) Regebam [1], I was ruling *or* did rule	gebam.
(2) Regebas [2], thou wast ruling, &c.	gebas.
(2) Regebat [3], he was ruling, &c.	gebat.

PLURAL.	Terminations.
(2) Regebamus [pl. 1], we were ruling, &c.	gebamus.
(2) Regebatis [pl. 2], you were ruling, &c.	gebatis.
(2) Regebant [pl. 3], they were ruling, &c.	gebant.

"(*G*)*ĕr.*" (3) *Future Tense. I, &c., shall or will rule.*

SINGULAR.

(3) Regam [1], I shall rule	gam.
(3) Reges [2], thou wilt rule	ges.
(3) Reget [3], he will rule	get.

PLURAL.

(3) Regemus [pl. 1], we shall rule	gemus.
(3) Regetis [pl. 2], you will rule	getis.
(3) Regent [pl. 3], they will rule	gent.

"*Xi.*" (4) *Perfect Tense. I have ruled.*

SINGULAR.

(4) Rexi [1], I have ruled	xi.
(4) Rexisti [2], thou hast ruled	xisti.
(4) Rexit [3], he has ruled	xit.

PLURAL.

(4) Reximus [pl. 1], we have ruled	ximus.
(4) Rexistis [pl. 2], you have ruled	xistis.
(4) Rexerunt *or* rexere [pl. 3], they have ruled	xerunt *or* xere.

"*Xi.*" (5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had ruled.*

SINGULAR.

(5) Rexeram [1], I had ruled	xeram.
(5) Rexeras [2], thou hadst ruled	xeras.
(5) Rexerat [3], he had ruled	xerat.

PLURAL.

(5) Rexeramus [pl. 1], we had ruled	xeramus.
(5) Rexeratis [pl. 2], you had ruled	xeratis.
(5) Rexerant [pl. 3], they had ruled	xerant.

"*Xi.*" (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have ruled.*

SINGULAR.

(6) Rexero [1], I shall have ruled	xero.
(6) Rexeris [2], thou wilt have ruled	xeris.
(6) Rexerit [3], he will have ruled	xerit.

PLURAL.	Terminations.
(6) Rexerimus [pl. 1], we shall have ruled........................	xerimus.
(6) Rexeritis [pl. 2], you will have ruled........................	xeritis.
(6) Rexerint [pl. 3], they will have ruled........................	xerint.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses, are formed from the first principal part, *ĕr*. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the second principal part, *i*.

In the present tense, in the singular, the *ĕr* is changed, in this particular word, in the singular, into *go* in the first person, into *gis* in the second, and into *git* in the third person; the terminations *o*, *is*, and *it*, in the first, second, and third persons, in the singular, always remain the same in the words of this conjugation; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gimus* in the first person, into *gitis* in the second, and into *gunt* in the third person. The terminations *imus*, *itis*, and *unt*, in the first, second, and third persons plural, are always the same.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, the *ĕr* of this word is changed into *gebam* in the first person, into *gebas* in the second, and into *gebat* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gebamus* in the first person, into *gebatis* in the second person, and into *gebant* in the third person. The terminations *ebam*, *ebas*, *ebat*, in the singular, and *ebamus*, *ebatis*, *ebant*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the future tense, in the singular, the *ĕr* of this word is changed into *gam* in the first person, into *ges* in the second, and into *get* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gemus* in the first person, into *getis* in the second, and into *gent* in the third person. The terminations *am*, *es*, *et*, in the singular, and *emus*, *etis*, *ent*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the perfect tense, in this word, in the singular, *i* is changed into *xi* in the first person, into *xisti* in the second, and into *xit* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *ximus* in the first person, into *xistis* in the second, and

into *xerunt* or *xere* in the third person. The terminations, *i, isti, it*, in the singular, and *imus, istis, erunt* or *ere*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the pluperfect tense, in this word, in the singular, *i* is changed into *xeram* in the first person, into *xeras* in the second, and into *xerat* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *xeramus* in the first person, into *xeratis* in the second, and into *xerant* in the third person. The terminations *eram, eras, erat*, in the singular, and *eramus, eratis, erant*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the future perfect tense, in this word, in the singular, *i* is changed into *xero* in the first person, into *xeris* in the second, and into *xerit* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *xerimus* in the first person, into *xeritis* in the second, and into *xerint* in the third person. The terminations *ero, eris, erit*, in the singular, and *erimus, eritis, erint*, in the plural, are permanent.

Lesson 69.

[1]Tu (1) •• ĕr-itus d.(3) verebere [2] •• neque as-atis.4 auctoritatem
[1]Will-you [1]reverence neither (the) authority

æc.2 hujus, neque sequere m.4 judicium,
of-this (your country), nor will-you-follow (her) judgment,

neque (es)ĕr-ui.(3) pertimesces [2] •• is-is.4 vim? Quæ
nor will-you-fear (her) power? Which (country

sic (g)ĕr-egi-ctum.(1) agit [3] •• cum· [6]te·,(2) ••
of yours) thus | acts [pleads] with you,

Catilina, et quodammodo [1]tacita loquitur. m.1 Nullum
O-Catiline, and in-a-manner (though) silent speaks. No

us-oris.1 facinus jam ĕr- | titi-titum.(4) exstitit [3] •• aliquot
wicked-deed [1]has now [1]appeared (for) some

s.pl.6 annis, nisi per [4]te (2) •• m.1 nullum m.1 flagitium
years, unless through you no scandalous-act

sine [6]te; (2) •• [3]tibi (2) •• s.3 uni
without you; | for-you one [in your case alone]

[x–cis.pl.1] neces [s.pl.2] multorum [is–is.pl.2] civium, [3] tibi [(2)] ••
(the) violent-death of-many citizens, | for-you [in your

[io–ionis.1] vexatio (*f.*) •• que· [io–onis.1] direptio·(*f*) ••
case alone] (the) harassing and plundering

[s.pl.2] sociorum [(sum–esse).e– | ui.(4)] fuit [3] •• [1] impunita ac [1] libera;
[1] of (the) [1] allies has-been unpunished and free;

[1] tu [(2)] •• [ĕr– | ui–itum.(4)] valuisti [2] •• non solùm ad [x–gis.pl.4] leges
| you have-been-able not only for laws

ac [io–ionis.pl.4] quæstiones (*f.*) •• [pl.4] negligendas, [part.] ••
and public-prosecutions to-be-neglected [you have been

verùm
able not only to evade the laws and public prosecutions], | but

etiam ad [pl.4] evertendas [part.] •• que· [pl.4] perfringendas·.
also for (them) to-be-subverted and broken

Quamquam [lud.pl.4] illa
[but also to subvert and break them]. Although those

[m.pl.4] superiora non [(sum–esse).e– | ui.(4)] fuerunt [pl.3] ••
former (villanies) [1] ought not [1] to-have-been

[pl.4] ferenda, [part.] •• tamen tuli ut
borne, yet I-have-borne (them) (as far) as

[(sum–esse).e– | ui.(4)] potui; verò nunc [4] totam me
I-was-able; but now every (part of) me

[(sum–esse) | e–ui.in.(1)] esse in [ûs.6] metu propter [4] te [(2)] •• [s.4] unum;
is in fear on-account-of you alone;

[id.1] quidquid [ar l–ui *or* avi–itum *or* atum.sb.(4)] increpuerit,
whatever may-have-made-a-noise (or alarm),

Catilinam [| ĕr–ui.p.in.(1)] timeri; [m.4] nullum [m.4] consilium
Catiline is-to-be-feared; (that) no design

[| (d)ĕr–di–sum.p.in.(1)] videri [(sum–esse) | e–ui.in.(1)] posse iniri contra
seems to-be-able to-be-entered-on against

me, [od.1] quod [| ĕr–ui.sb.(1)] abhorreat [3] •• à
me, which may-be-abhorrent from (or unconnected

[m.6] tuo [m.6] scelere, [(sum–esse) | e–ui.(1)] est [3] •• non
with) your criminal-participation, is not

ferendum. Quamobrem [(d)ĕr–essi–essum.im.] discede, [2] •• atque
to-be-borne. Wherefore depart, and

[*eripio*–1(ip)ĕr–ipui–ereptum.im.] eripe [2] •• [ic.4] hunc [or–oris.4] timorem [3] mihi, [(1)] ••
take-away this fear from-me,

ne opprimar, si [(sum–esse) | e–ui.(1)] est [3] •• [s.1] verus,
lest I-may-be-oppressed, if it-is (a) true

	sin		[s.1] falsus,		ut	tandem	
(fear),	but-if	(it is a)	false	(one),	that	at-length	

aliquando	desinam	[1ēr-ui.in.(1)] timere.
some-time	I-may-cease	to-fear.

Lesson 70.

Hujus tu neque auctoritatem verebere, neque judicum sequere, neque vim pertimesces? Quæ tecum, Catilina, sic agit, et quodammodo tacita loquitur. Nullum aliquot jam annis facinus exstitit, nisi per te; nullum flagitium sine te: tibi uni multorum civium neces, tibi vexatio direptioque sociorum impunita fuit ac libera; tu non solùm ad negligendas leges ac quæstiones, verum etiam ad evertendas perfringendasque valuisti. Superiora illa, quamquam ferenda non fuerunt, tamen, ut potui, tuli; nunc vero me totam esse in metu propter te unum; quidquid increpuerit, Catilinam timeri; nullam videri contra me consilium iniri posse, quod à tuo scelere abhorreat non est ferendum. Quamobrem discede, atque hunc mihi timorem eripe; si est verus, ne opprimar; sin falsus, ut tandem aliquando timere desinam.

Exercises on Lessons 69 and 70.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Ferenda. Potuit. Metus. Timeo. Scelus. Timor. Discede. Verus. Opprimar. Falsus. Desinam. Verebere. Vis. Ago. Tacitus. Nullus. Annus. Facinus. Multus. Civis. Vexatio. Liberus. Lex. Solum. Valuisti. Etiam.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Fear. True. False. Some time. To fear. They are able. Against. Wherefore. Take away. Depart. Scandalous act. Many. Plundering. Unpunished. Laws. Yet. Public prosecutions. Will you reverence. Will you follow. Will you fear. To act. Speaks. Year.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quamobrem mihi timorem eripe. Non est verum. Ut timere desinam. Illa ferenda non fuerunt. Ut potui tuli. Nunc me esse in metu. Non est ferendum. Vim pertimesces. Quæ tecum sic agit. Nullum facinus exstitit, nisi per te. Tu solùm ad leges perfringendas valuisti.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Lest I may be oppressed, if it is a true fear. That I may cease to fear. The violent death of so many citizens. The plundering of the allies. You have been able to evade the laws and public prosecutions. Yet I have borne them as far as I was able. Catiline is to be feared. It is not to be borne. Take away this fear from me. But if it is a false fear.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — ACTIVE VOICE.

"Ĕr." *sb.* (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may, &c., rule.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (1) Regam [1], I may rule	gam.
sb. (1) Regas [2], thou mayst rule	gas.
sb. (1) Regat [3], he may rule	gat.
PLURAL.	
sb. (1) Regamus [pl. 1], we may rule	gamus.
sb. (1) Regatis [pl. 2], you may rule	gatis.
sb. (1) Regant [pl. 3], they may rule	gant.

"Ĕr." *sb.* (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, would or should rule.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (2) Regerem [1], I might, &c., rule	gerem.
sb. (2) Regeres [2], thou mightst, &c., rule	geres.
sb. (2) Regeret [3], he might, &c., rule	geret.
PLURAL.	
sb. (2) Regeremus [pl. 1], we might, &c., rule	geremus.
sb. (2) Regeretis [pl. 2], you might, &c., rule	geretis.
sb. (2) Regerent [pl. 3], they might, &c., rule	gerent.

"Xi." sb. (4) Perfect Tense. I, &c., may have ruled.

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (4) Rexerim [1], I may have ruled	xerim.
sb. (4) Rexeris [2], thou mayst have ruled	xeris.
sb. (4) Rexerit [3], he may have ruled	xerit.

PLURAL.

sb. (4) Rexerimus [pl. 1], we may have ruled	xerimus.
sb. (4) Rexeritis [pl. 2], you may have ruled	xeritis.
sb. (4) Rexerint [pl. 3], they may have ruled	xerint.

"Xi." sb. (5) Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, would or should have ruled.

SINGULAR.

sb. (5) Rexissem [1], I might, &c., have ruled	xissem.
sb. (5) Rexisses [2], thou mightst, &c., have ruled	xisses.
sb. (5) Rexisset [3], he might, &c., have ruled	xisset.

PLURAL.

sb. (5) Rexissemus [pl. 1], we might, &c., have ruled	xissemus.
sb. (5) Rexissetis [pl. 2], you might, &c., have ruled	xissetis.
sb. (5) Rexissent [pl. 3], they might, &c., have ruled	xissent.

"ĔR." IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

im. Rege *or* regito [2], rule thou	ge *or* gito.
im. Regito [3], let him rule	gito.

PLURAL.

im. Regite *or* regitote [pl. 2], rule ye	gite *or* gitote.
im. Regunto [pl. 3], let them rule	gunto.

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ěr." in. (1) Present Tense.

in. (1) Regere, to rule	gere.

"Xi." in. (4) Perfect Tense.

in. (4) Rexisse, to have ruled	xisse.

"Ctum." in. (3) Future Tense.

n. (3) Recturus esse, to be about to rule	cturus esse.

PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"*Ĕr.*" (1) *Present Tense.*

	Terminations.
(1) gens–gentis. 1. Regens [part.], ruling..................................	gens.

"*Ctum.*" (3) *Future Tense.*

(3) cturus–a–um. Recturus [part.], to be about to rule........ cturus–a–um.

"ĔR." GERUNDS [GER.].

2. *G.* Regendi [ger.], of ruling	gendi.
3. *D.* Regendo [ger.], to ruling	gendo.
4. *A.* Regendum [ger.], ruling	gendum.
6. *Ab.* Regendo [ger.], by, &c., ruling.......................................	gendo.

CTUM. SUPINE [UM] IN UM.

Rectum [um], a ruling.. ctum.

In the above, the present and imperfect subjunctive, and the imperative, also the present infinitive, present participle, and the gerunds, are formed from the first principal part, *ĕr*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and also the perfect infinitive, are formed from the second principal part, *i* (but here *xi*). The future participle, the future infinitive, and the supine in *um*, are formed from the third principal part, *tum* (here *ctum*).

In the present tense, in the singular, *ĕr*, of this word, is changed into *gam* in the first person, in the second, into *gas*, and in the third person into *gat;* in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gamus* in the first person, into *gatis* in the second person, and into *gant* in the third person. The terminations, *am*, *as*, *at*, in the singular, and *amus*, *atis*, *ant*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ĕr* of this word is changed into *gerem* in the first person, into *geres* in the second, and into *geret* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *geremus* in the first person, into *geretis* in the second, and into *gerent* in the third person. The termina-

tions, *erem*, *eres*, *eret*, in the singular, and *eremus*, *eretis*, *erent*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *i*, of this word, is changed into *xerim* in the first person, into *xeris* in the second, and into *xerit* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *xerimus* in the first person, into *xēritis* in the second, and into *xerint* in the third person. The terminations, *erim*, *eris*, *erit*, in the singular, and *erimus*, *eritis*, *erint*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the pluperfect tense, in the singular, *i*, of this word, is changed into *xissem* in the first person, into *xisses* in the second, and into *xisset* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *xissemus* in the first person, into *xissetis* in the second, and into *xissent* in the third person. The terminations *issem*, *isses*, *isset*, in the singular, and *issemus*, *issetis*, *issent*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the imperative mood, *ĕr*, in this word, is changed, in the singular, in the second person, into *ge* or *gito;* in the third person, into *gito;* in the plural, in the second, into *gite* or *gitote;* in the third person, into *gunto.* The terminations *e* or *ito*, *ito*, in the singular, and *ite* or *itote*, *unto*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the infinitive mood of this word, in the present tense, *ĕr* is changed into *gĕre;* in the perfect tense, *i* is changed into *xisse;* in the future, *tum* is changed into *cturus esse.* The terminations *ĕre*, *isse*, *turus*, are permanent.

In the participles, in the present, *ĕr* is, in this word, changed into *gens;* in the future, *tum* is changed into *cturus.* The terminations *ens* and *turus*, are permanent.

In the gerunds, in this word, *ĕr* is changed into *gendi* in the genitive, into *gendo* in the dative, into *gendum* in the accusative, and into *gendo* in the ablative. The terminations *endi*, *endo*, *endum*, *endo*, are permanent.

In the supine, in this word, *tum* is changed into *ctum.* The termination, *um*, is permanent.

In the tenses and persons formed from the second prin-

cipal part, (*i*), *is*, *iss*, and *sis*, are sometimes omitted after *s* or *x*: as, *evasti* for *evasisti*—*thou hast escaped; extinxti* for *extinxisti*—*thou hast extinguished.*

Lesson 71

s.6 Proximo ei.6 die, (*m.*) •• r–ris.1 Cæsar m.6 suo
'On (the) 'next day, Cæsar (according to) his

m.6 instituto (duc)ĕr– | duxi–ductum.(4) eduxit [3] •• pl.4 suas pl.4 copias ex
custom led-forth his forces from

m.pl.6 utrisque m.pl.6 castris; que· s.1 progressus [part.] ••
each camp; and having-advanced

paululùm· à us–oris.pl.6 majoribus ĕr– | xi–ctum.(4) instruxit [3] ••
(a) little from (the) greater (camp) he-drew-up

ei.4 aciem que· (cio)ĕr– | *feci*–ctum.(4) fecit [3] ••
(his) line-of-battle | and he-made

is–is.pl.6 hostibus· as–atis.4 potestatem | ar–avi–atum.(2) pugnandi. [ger.] ••
'to (the) 'enemy (the) power of-fighting [and

Ubi lig(ĕr)–lexi–lectum.(4) intellexit [3] ••
he offered battle to the enemy]. When he-understood

ne quidem tum is.p.4 eos prodire, circiter
(that) not even then they come-forth, about

ei.4 meridiem (*m.*) •• (duc)ĕr–duxi–ductum.(4) reduxit [3] •• ûs.4 exercitum
noon he-led-back (his) army

in m.pl.4 castra. Tum demum s.1 Ariovistus
into (the) camp. Then at-last Ariovistus

(tt)ĕr– | isi–issum.(4) misit [3] •• rs–rtis.4 partem pl.2 suarum pl.2 copiarum,
sent (a) part of-his forces,

quæ | ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) oppugnaret [3] •• us–oris.pl.4 minora (*c.*) •• m.pl.4 castra.
which might-attack (the) smaller camp.

ar–avi– | atum.p.(4) Pugnatum est [3] •• acriter utrinquè usque
It-was-fought sharply on-both-sides until

ad s.4 vesperum. ûs.6 Occasu l–lis.2 solis s.1 Ariovistus
towards evening. 'At (the) 'setting 'of (the) 'sun Ariovistus

(duc)ĕr– | duxi–ductum.(4) reduxit [3] •• pl.4 suas pl.4 copias in m.pl.4 castra
led-back his forces 'into (the) 'camp

m.pl.6 multis us–eris.pl.6 vulneribus et m.pl.6 illatis [part.] •• et
many wounds 'being both 'given and

(*accipio–accipĕre*).ĕr–*accepi–acceptum*.(4).m.pl.6 acceptis. [part.] •• Quum
received. When

r–ris.1 Cæsar | ĕr–sivi–situm.sb.(2) quæreret [3] •• ex s.pl.6 captivis,
Cæsar inquired of (the) captives,

quamobrem s.1 Ariovistus non | ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) decertaret [3] ••
why Ariovistus 1 did not 1 contend

m.6 prœlio reperiebat æc.4 hanc 4 causam. Quòd
in-battle he-found this (to be) (the) cause. Because

ea.1 ea do–dinis.1 consuetudo (*f.*) •• (*sum–esse*) | e–ui.sb.(2) esset [3] ••
(that) this custom | might-be

apud s.pl.4 Germanos ut is.pl.2 eorum
[obtained] with (the) Germans that their

pl.1 matresfamilias | ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) declararent [pl.3] •• rs–rtis.pl.6 sortibus
mothers-of-families should-declare by-casting-of-lots

et io–onis.pl.6 vaticinationibus, utrùm m.4 prœlium
and by-prophecies, whether battle

(*sum–esse*) | e–ui.sb.(2) esset [3] •• committi ex ûs.6 usu necne;
was to-be-engaged-in with advantage or-not;

ea.pl.4 eas | (c)ĕr–xi–ctum.in.(1) dicere, ita (*sum–esse*) | e–ui.in.(1) "esse
(that) they say, thus "(that) it-is

non fas s.pl.4 Germanos | ar–avi–atum.in.(1) superare,
not | lawful [permitted for] (the) Germans to-conquer,

si (d)ĕr– | di–tum.sb.(5) contendissent [pl.3] •• m.6 prœlio ante
if they-engaged in-battle before

4 novam 4 lunam."
(the) new moon."

Lesson 72.

Proximo die, instituto suo, Cæsar ex castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paululumque à majoribus progressus aciem instruxit, hostibusque pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quæ castra minora oppugnaret misit; acriter utrinque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. Quum ex captivis quæreret Cæsar, quamobrem Ariovistus prœlio non decertaret hanc reperiebat causam; quòd apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamilias eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus

declarent, utrùm prœlium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere, "non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam prœlio contendissent.

Exercises on Lessons 71 and 72.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Sol. Vulnus. Occasu. Reduco. Quamobrem. Prœlium. Repericbat. Consuetùdo. Matresfamilias. Sors. Usus. Dixerunt. Fas. Superavit. Luna. Dies. Majus. Instruere. Pugnandi. Facio. Prodire. Intelligo. Meredies. Oppugnavit.

English words to be translated into Latin.

He will say. Lawful. You may conquer. New. They may lead back. Wound. They inquire. You may contend. Custom. Thou mightst have declared. Prophecies. They make. Power. I understand. Noon. He will send. It was fought. Evening. Sun. Setting. You may lead forth.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Suas copias Ariovistus in castra reduxit. Quum quæreret, hanc reperiebat causam. Apud Germanos consuetudo esset. Matresfamilias declararent. Si ante novam lunam prœlio contendissent. Proximo die Cæsar copias suas eduxit. Paululum à majoribus castris aciem instruxit. Hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Tum exercitum in castra reduxit. Partem copiarum mittit. Acriter usque ad vesperum pugnatum est.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

That it is not permitted for the Germans to conquer, if they engage in battle before the new moon. Ariovistus led back his forces into the camp. When Cæsar inquired why

Ariovistus did not contend in battle. This custom obtained with the Germans. Having advanced a little from the greater camp. And he offered battle to the enemy. About noon he led back his army into camp. Ariovistus sent a part of his forces. It was fought sharply on both sides. Cæsar, according to his custom, led forth his forces.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Ĕr." p. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am ruled.*

SINGULAR. Terminations.

p. (1) Regor [1], I am ruled .... gor.
p. (1) Regeris *or* regere [2], thou art ruled .... geris *or* gere.
p. (1) Regitur [3], he is ruled .... gitur.

PLURAL.

p. (1) Regimur [pl. 1]. we are ruled .... gimur.
p. (1) Regimini [pl. 2], you are ruled .... gimini.
p. (1) Reguntur [pl. 3], they are ruled .... guntur.

"Ĕr." p. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was ruled.*

SINGULAR.

p. (2) Regebar [1], I was ruled .... gebar.
p. (2) Regebaris *or* regebare [2], thou wast ruled .... gebaris *or* gebare.
p. (2) Regebatur [3], he was ruled .... gebatur.

PLURAL.

p. (2) Regebamur [pl. 1], we were ruled .... gebamur.
p. (2) Regebamini [pl. 2], you were ruled .... gebamini.
p. (2) Regebantur [pl. 3], they were ruled .... gebantur.

"Ĕr." p. (3) *Future Tense. I, &c., shall or will be ruled.*

SINGULAR.

p. (3) Regar [1], I shall be ruled .... gar.
p. (3) Regeris *or* regere [2], thou wilt be ruled .... geris *or* gere.
p. (3) Regetur [3], he will be ruled .... getur.

PLURAL.	Terminations.
p. (3) Regemur [pl. 1], we shall be ruled..............................	gemur.
p. (3) Regemini [pl. 2], you will be ruled............................	gemini.
p. (3) Regentur [pl. 3], they will be ruled...........................	gentur.

"Ctum." p. (4) Perfect Tense. I, &c., have been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle "rectus—ruled," and "sum—I am," or "fui—I was."

SINGULAR.

p. (4) Rectus sum *or* fui [1], I have been ruled.
p. (4) Rectus es *or* fuisti [2], thou hast been ruled.
p. (4) Rectus est *or* fuit [3], he has been ruled.

PLURAL.

p. (4) Recti sumus *or* fuimus [pl. 1], we have been ruled
p. (4) Recti estis *or* fuistis [pl. 2], you have been ruled.
p. (4) Recti sunt *or* fuerunt *or* fuere [pl. 3], they have been ruled.

"Ctum." p. (5) Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle "rectus—ruled," and "eram—I was," or "fueram—I had been."

SINGULAR.

p. (5) Rectus eram *or* fueram [1], I had been ruled.
p. (5) Rectus eras *or* fueras [2], thou hadst been ruled.
p. (5) Rectus erat *or* fuerat [3], he had been ruled.

PLURAL.

p. (5) Recti eramus *or* fueramus [pl. 1], we had been ruled.
p. (5) Recti eratis *or* fueratis [pl. 2], you had been ruled.
p. (5) Recti erant *or* fuerant [pl. 3], they had been ruled.

"Ctum." p. (6) Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle "rectus—ruled," and "ero—I shall be," or "fuero—I shall have been."

SINGULAR.

p. (6) Rectus ero *or* fuero [1], I shall have been ruled.
p. (6) Rectus eris *or* fueris [2], thou wilt have been ruled.
p. (6) Rectus erit *or* fuerit [3], he will have been ruled.

PLURAL.

p. (6) Recti erimus *or* fuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have been ruled.
p. (6) Recti eritis *or* fueritis [pl. 2], you will have been ruled.
p. (6) Recti erunt *or* fuerint [pl. 3], they will have been ruled.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative passive, are formed from the first principal part *ĕr;* the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, are formed from the third principal part, *tum;* or, rather, the perfect participle is formed from the third principal part.

In the present tense, in this word, in the singular, *ĕr* is changed into *gor* in the first person, into *geris* or *gere* in the second, and into *gitur* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gimur* in the first person, into *gimini* in the second, and into *guntur* in the third person. The terminations *or, eris* or *ere, itur,* in the singular, and *imur, imini, untur,* in the plural, are permanent.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, in this word, *ĕr* is changed into *gebar* in the first person, into *gebaris* or *gebare* in the second, and into *gebatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gebamur* in the first person, into *gebamini* in the second, and into *gebantur* in the third person. The terminations *ebar, ebaris* or *ebare, ebatur,* in the singular, and *ebamur, ebamini, ebantur,* in the plural, are permanent.

In the future tense, in the singular, in this word, *ĕr* is changed into *gar* in the first person, into *geris* or *gere* in the second, and into *getur* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gemur* in the first person, into *gemini* in the second, and into *gentur* in the third person. The terminations *ar, eris* or *ere, etur,* in the singular, and *emur, emini, entur,* in the plural, are permanent.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, have properly no terminations, they being formed by the perfect participle and the tenses of *sum.*

In the perfect tense, either *sum—I am,* or *fui—I was,* combined with the perfect participle, may be used to denote the perfect passive tense. So, likewise, *eram* or *fueram* for the pluperfect tense, and *ero* or *fuero* for the perfect future.

Lesson 73.

Interim [es–itis.pl.1] milites [pl.2] duarum [io–ionis.pl.2] legionum,
In-the-mean-time (the) soldiers [1] of (the) [1] two legions,

[uæ.pl.1] quæ [(*sum* –*esse*)e– | ui.(5)] fuerant [pl.3] ●● in [s.6] novissimo [(3)] ●●
which had-been in (the) last

[nen–inis.6] agmine, [m.6] præsidio [m.pl.3] impedimentis,
troop [in the rear], for-protection [1] to (the) [1] baggage,

[m.6] prœlio [ar–avi– | atum.(4).m.6] nunciato, [part.] ●●
(the) battle being-announced, (and their)

[ûs.6] cursu [ar–avi– | atum.(4).s.6] incitato [part.] ●●
march being-accelerated

[(icio–icere).ĕr–exi–ectum.p.(2)] conspiciebantur [pl.3] ●● in [s.6] summo
were-seen on (the) top (of)

[is.is.6] colle[(m)] ●● ab [is.is.pl.6] hostibus; et [s.1] Titus [s.1] Labienus
(the) hill by (the) enemy; and Titus Labienus

[s.1] potitus [part.] ●● [m.pl.6] castris [is.is.pl.2] hostium, et
possessed [1] of (the) [1] camp of (the) enemy, and

[ar–avi– | atum.(4).s.1] conspicatus [part.] ●● ex [or–oris.6] superiore (*c.*) ●●
having-beheld from (the) higher

[s.6] loco [uæ.pl.1] quæ [ei.pl.1] res gererentur in [m.pl.6] nostris
place what - things were-carried-on in our

[m.pl.6] castris [(tt)ĕr– | si–ssum.(4)] misit [3] ●● [4] decimam
camp sent (the) tenth

[io–onis.4] legionem (*f.*) ●● [m.3] subsidio [er.pl.3] nostris; [ui.pl.1] qui
legion [1] to (the) [1] aid (of) our (men); who

quum [(nosc.).ĕr– | novi–nitum.sb.(5)] cognovissent [pl.3] ●● ex [6] fugâ
when they-had-known [1] from (the) [1] flight

[es–itis.pl.2] equitum et [o–onis.pl.2] calonum in [ui.6] quo
[1] of (the) [1] cavalry and [1] of (the) [1] camp-followers in what

[s.6] loco [ei.1] res [(*sum-esse*) | e–ui.sb.(2)] esset, [3.] ●● que· in [m.6] quanto·
situation (the) affair was, and in what-great

[m.6] periculo et [m.pl.1] castra et [io–ionis.pl.1] legiones (*f.*) ●● et
danger both (the) camp and (the) legions and

[or–oris.1] imperator [| ar–avi–atum.d.sb.(2)] versaretur, [3] ●●
(the) commander were,

[(ci).ĕr– | feci–ctum.(4)] fecerunt [pl.3] ●● nihil [m.2] reliqui [pl.3] sibi [(3)] ●●
| made nothing of-left to-themselves

ad [as–atis.4] celeritatem.
to speed [left nothing undone to hasten their march].

[1] Tanta   io–ionis.1 commutatio (*f.*) ••   ei.pl.2 rerum
So-great   (a) change   of-things

(*facio–facere*).ĕr–*feci*–factum.p.(4) facta est [3] ••   ûs.6 adventu   ic.pl.2 horum,
was-made   [1]by (the) [1]arrival   of-these,

ut etiam   er.pl.1 nostri   ui.pl.1 qui   (ub)ĕr– | ui–itum.sb.(5) procubuissent [pl.3] ••
that even   our (men) who   had-lain-down

s.pl.1 confecti [part.] •   us–eris.pl.6 vulneribus   s.pl.1 innixi [part.] ••
spent   with-wounds   having-leaned

m.pl.3 scutis, | ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) redintegrarent [pl.3] ••
[1]on (their) [1]shields,   renewed

m.4 prœlium.   Tum   o–onis.pl.1 calones
(the) battle.   Then   (the) camp-followers

ar–avi– | atum(4)s.pl.1 conspicati [part.] ••   is–is.pl.4 hostes   s.pl.4 perterritos,
having-beheld   (the) enemy   dismayed,

etiam   is.is.pl.1 inermes | (rr).ĕr–rri–rsum.sb.2 occurrerent [pl.3] ••
even   unarmed   opposed

ar–avi– | atum.(4)s.pl.3 armatis. [part.] ••
armed (men).

Lesson 74.

Interim milites legionum duarum, quæ in novissimo agmine præsidio impedimentis fuerant, prœlio nunciato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur: et T. Labienus castris hostium potitus, et ex loco superiore, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit; qui quum ex equitum et calonum fugâ, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones, et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi, prœlium redintegrarent. Tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati, etiam inermes armatis occurrerent.

Exercises on Lessons 73 and 74.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Adventus. Commutatio. Vulnus. Scutum. Redintegrarent. Calones. Conspicatus. Inermis. Armati. In-

terim. Miles. Agmen. Impedimentum. Nuntiavit. Cursus. Conspexerunt. Mitto. Eques. Fuga. Periculum. Celeritas.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Armed. Dismayed. Camp-follower. Spent or exhausted. Arrival. Higher. Were carried on. He sends. He has known. Danger. In the mean time. Two. Protection. Baggage. They were seen. Will.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Qui quum quanto in periculo, imperator versaretur, cognovissent. Horum adventu rerum commutatio est facta. Ut nostri, qui procubuissent. Hostes prœlium redintegrarent. Calones inermes armatis occurrerent. Interim milites, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Labienus, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus. Legionem subsidio misit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

So great a change was made by their arrival. Our men renewed the battle. The camp followers, unarmed, opposed armed men. Having beheld what things were carried on in our camp. When they had known from the flight of the cavalry. They left nothing undone to hasten their march. The soldiers of the legions which were in the rear. They were seen on the top of the hill by the enemy.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — PASSIVE VOICE.

"Ĕr." p. sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may or can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
p. sb. (1) Regar [1], I may, &c., be ruled	gar.
p. sb. (1) Regaris *or* regare [2], thou mayst be ruled	garis *or* gare.
p. sb. (1) Regatur [3], he may be ruled	gatur.

PLURAL. Terminations.

p. sb. (1) Regamur [pl. 1], we may be ruled........................ gamur.
p. sb. (1) Regamini [pl. 2], you may be ruled........................ gamini.
p. sb. (1) Regantur [pl. 3], they may be ruled........................ gantur.

"Ĕr." p. sb. (2) Imperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, would or should be ruled.

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (2) Regerer [1], I might, &c., be ruled........................ gerer.
p. sb. (2) Regereris *or* regerere [2], thou mightst be ruled..gereris *or* gerere.
p. sb. (2) Regeretur [3], he might be ruled........................ geretur.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (2) Regeremur [pl. 1], we might be ruled........................ geremur.
p. sb. (2) Regeremini [pl. 2], you might be ruled........................ geremini.
p. sb. (2) Regerentur [pl. 3], they might be ruled........................ gerentur.

"Ctum." p. sb. (4) Perfect Tense. I may have been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle "rectus—ruled," and "sim—I may be," or "fuerim—I may have been."

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (4) Rectus sim *or* fuerim [1], I may have been ruled.
p. sb. (4) Rectus sis *or* fueris [2], thou mayst have been ruled.
p. sb. (4) Rectus sit *or* fuerit [3], he may have been ruled.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (4) Recti simus *or* fuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been ruled.
p. sb. (4) Recti sitis *or* fueritis [pl. 2], you may have been ruled.
p. sb. (4) Recti sint *or* fuerint [pl. 3], they may have been ruled.

"Ctum." p. sb. (5) Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, would or should have been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle "rectus—ruled," and "essem—I might be," or "fuissem—I might have been."

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (5) Rectus essem *or* fuissem [1], I might, &c., have been ruled.
p. sb. (5) Rectus esses *or* fuisses [2], thou mightst have been ruled.
p. sb. (5) Rectus esset *or* fuisset [3], he might have been ruled.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (5) Recti essemus *or* fuissemus [pl. 1], we might have been ruled.
p. sb. (5) Recti essetis *or* fuissetis [pl. 2], you might have been ruled.
p. sb. (5) Recti essent *or* fuissent [pl. 3], they might have been ruled.

"ĔR." P. IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
p. im. Regere *or* regitor [2], be thou ruled......................	gere *or* gitor.
p. im. Regitor [3], let him be ruled..................................	gitor.

PLURAL.

p. im. Regemini [pl. 2], be ye ruled..................................	gemini.
p. im. Reguntor [pl. 3], let them be ruled............................	guntor.

P. IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ĕr." p. in. (1) *Present Tense. To be ruled.*

p. in. (1) Regi, to be ruled.. gi.

"Ctum." p. in. (4) *Perfect Tense. To have been ruled.*

p. in. (4) Rectus esse *or* fuisse, to have been ruled.

"Ctum." p. in. (3) *Future Tense. To be about to be ruled.*

p. in. (3) Rectum iri, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"Ctum." p. (4) *Perfect Tense* [*part.*]. *Ruled.*

p. (4) Rectus [part.], ruled .... ctus.

"Ĕr." p. (3) *Future Tense* [*part.*]. *To be ruled, or necessary to be ruled.*

p. (3) Regendus [part.], to be ruled, or necessary to be ruled...... endus.

"CTUM." P. SUPINE IN [U]. TO BE RULED.

p. Rectu [u], to be ruled... u.

The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive passive, the imperative passive, the present tense of the infinitive passive, and the future participle passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ĕr*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive, the perfect and future infinitive passive, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are formed from the third principal part, *tum ;* or, rather, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are thus formed.

In the present tense, in this word, in the singular, *ĕr* is changed into *gar* in the first person, into *garis* or *gare* in the second, and into *gatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gamur* in the first person, into *gamini* in the second, and into *gantur* in the third person. The terminations *ar*, *aris* or *are*, *atur*, in the singular, and *amur*, *amini*, *antur*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the imperfect tense, *ĕr*, in this word, in the singular, is changed into *gerer* in the first person, into *gereris* or *gerere* in the second, and into *geretur* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *geremur* in the first person, into *geremini* in the second, and into *gerentur* in the third person. The terminations *erer*, *ereris* or *erere*, *eretur*, in the singular, and *eremur*, *eremini*, *erentur*, in the plural, are permanent.

The perfect and pluperfect tenses, subjunctive passive, have properly no terminations; for the perfect is formed by the perfect participle *rectus*, and *sim* or *fuerim*, either forming the perfect subjunctive passive, *I, &c., may have been ruled*. The pluperfect is formed by the same participle and *essem* or *fuissem*, either in the sense of *I, &c., might, &c., have been ruled.*

In the imperative mood, in this word, *ĕr*, in the singular, is changed into *gere* or *gitor* in the second person, and into *gitor* in the third person; in the plural, *ĕr* is changed into *gimini* in the second person, and into *guntor* in the third person. The terminations *ere* or *itor*, *itor*, in the singular, and *imini*, *untor*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the infinitive mood, in the present tense, *ĕr*, in this word, is changed into *gi*, *i* being permanent. The perfect tense of the same is formed by the perfect participle and *esse* or *fuisse.* The future by the supine in *um* and *iri.*

The perfect participle is formed by changing, in this word, the third principal part, *tum*, into *ctus; tus* being permanent. The future participle passive is formed by changing *ĕr* into *gendus; endus* being permanent.

The supine in *u* is formed, in this word, by changing *um* into *ctu ; tu* being permanent.

In verbs of this third conjugation, ending in *io*, in the first person singular, present tense, indicative mood, the moods and tenses derived from the first principal part do not exactly correspond, in their terminations, with the form above given, in some of their numbers and persons, both in the active and passive voices; for in *capio — I take*, in the present indicative, the *i* is dropped in the second and third persons singular, and first and second persons plural: as, *capio, capis*, &c., in place of *capiis;* but, in the third person plural, this *i* is retained as a part of the verb: as, *capiunt*, and not *capunt*. The same also takes place in the passive: as, *caperis*, &c., *capitur*, and *capiuntur*.

In the imperfect tense, the *i* is retained as a part of the root of the verb; so, likewise, it is retained in the future tense, and in the subjunctive present tense, both in the active and passive voices: but, in both voices of the imperfect subjunctive, this *i* is omitted.

The imperative, in the second persons, singular and plural, ends as in the above form of *rego ;* but, in the third person plural, it has *capiunto* and *capiuntor*.

The infinitive has, in the present tense, *capere* and *capi*.

The present active and future passive participles, and the gerunds, retain the *i:* as, *capiens, capiendus, capiendi*, &c.

All the other numbers, persons, tenses, &c., formed from the second and third principal parts, are regularly formed from such parts.

Lesson 75.

<table>
<tr><td>Quùm</td><td>r-ris.[1] Cæsar</td><td>(sum-esse) | e-uis.sb.(2) esset (3) ••</td><td>in</td></tr>
<tr><td>When</td><td>Cæsar</td><td>was</td><td>in</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td>or-oris [6] citeriore (c.) ••</td><td>[6] Galliâ</td><td>in</td><td>m.pl.[6] hibernis,</td><td>ita</td><td>utì</td></tr>
<tr><td>hither</td><td>Gaul</td><td>in</td><td>winter-quarters,</td><td>so</td><td>as</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td>ar- | avi-atum.(4) demonstravimus[pl.1] ••</td><td>supra,</td><td>er.pl.[1] crebri</td></tr>
<tr><td>we-have-shown</td><td>above,</td><td>frequent</td></tr>
</table>

or–oris.pl.1 rumores | (*affero–afferre*).attuli–allatum.p.(2) afferebantur ad
rumors were-brought to

eum, que· item fiebat or–oris.1 certior (*c.*) ●●
him, and also | he-was-made more-sure [he was

pl.6 literis,· s.2 Labieni, is.is.pl.4 omnes
informed] 1 by (the) 1 letters of-Labienus, (that) all

pl.4 Belgas, æc.4 quam (c).ĕr– | xi–ctum(4) dìxeramus [pl 1] ●●
(the) Belgæ, whom we-had-said

(*sum–esse*) | e–ui.in(1) esse 4 tertiam rs–rtis.4 partem
| to-be [to have constituted] (the) third part

2 Galliæ, | ar–avi–atum.in.(1) conjurare contra s.4 Romanum
of-Gaul, conspire against (the) Roman

s.4 populum, que· | ar–*dedi*–atum.in.(1) dare es–idis.pl.4 obsides·
people, and (that they) give hostages

inter 4 se.(3) ●● æc.pl.4 Has (*sum–esse*) | e–ui.in(1) esse pl.4 causas
among themselves. (That) these were (the) reasons

| ar–avi–atum.2 conjurandi ; [ger.] ●● primùm, quòd
of-conspiring ; firstly, because

| ĕr–itum.d.sb.(2) vererentur, [pl.3] ●● ne, is.is.6 omni 6 Galliâ
they-feared, lest, all Gaul

ar–avi– | atum.(4).6 pacatâ [part.] ●● er.1 noster ûs.1 exercitus
being-subdued | our army

| (c).ĕr–xi–ctum.p.sb.(2) adduceretur [3] ●● ad is.pl.4 eos.
might-be-led to . them [our army might

Deinde quòd
be marched into their territories]. Next because

| ar–avi–atum.p.sb.(2) sollicitarentur [pl.3] ●● ab s.pl.6 nonnullis pl.6 Gallis,
they-were-solicited by some Gauls,

partim ui.pl.1 qui, ut noluerant s.pl.4 Germanos
partly who, as they-had-been-unwilling (that) (the) Germans

| ar–avi–atum.d.in.(1) versari diutiùs in 6 Gallià, ita ferebant
should-remain longer in Gaul, so they-bore

molestè s 4 Romanum ûs.4 exercitum | ar–avi–atum.in.(1) hiemare
grievously (that) (the) Roman army (should) winter

atque | (rasc)ĕr–ravi.in.(1) inveterascere in Galliâ,
and (should) grow-old in Gaul,

partim ui.pl.1 qui as–atis.6 mobilitate et as–atis.6 levitate
partly (those) who by-fickleness and lightness

s.2 animi | ĕr–ui.(2) studebant m.pl.3 novis m.pl.3 imperiis ;
of-mind | studied for-new governments [desired

etiam ab s.pl.6 nonnullis, quòd in
a change of government]; also by some, because in

Galliâ regna vulgò | ar–avi–atum.p.sb.(2) occupabantur [pl.3] ●●
Gaul kingdoms 'were commonly 'occupied

à or–oris.pl.6 potentioribus (*c.*) ●● atque is.pl.6. iis ui.pl.1 qui
by (the) more-powerful and by-those who

| ēr–ui–itum.(2) habebant [pl.3] ●● as–atis.pl.4 facultates ad
had (the) means | for

o–inis.pl.4 homines | (c)ĕr–xi–ctum.p.(3)s.pl.4 conducendos, [part.] ●●
men to-be-hired [to hire

ui.pl.1 qui (sum–esse) | e–ui.(2) poterant minùs facilè
men], (and) who could less easily

| (equ)ĕr–ecutus.d.in. consequi is.4 eam ei.4 rem er.6 nostro m.6 imperio.
obtain that thing under-our government.

Lesson 76.

Quum esset Cæsar in citeriore Galliâ in hibernis, ita utì supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, literisque item Labieni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliæ partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum conjurare, obsidesque inter se dare. Conjurandi has esse causas; primùm, quòd vererentur, ne, omni pacatâ Galliâ, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quòd ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur; partim, qui ut Germanos diutiùs in Galliâ versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Galliâ molestè ferebant; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate animi, novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quòd in Galliâ à potentioribus, atque iis qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgò regna occupabantur; qui minùs facilé eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

Exercises on Lessons 75 and 76.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Diutiùs. Hiemavit. Inveterascere. Molestè. Mobilitate. Studeo. Nonnulli. Facultas. Occupaverant. Con-

sequi. Citerior. Demonstravisset. Creber. Dico. Conjurâsset. Dabo. Conjuraverunt. Vereor. Pacatus. Adduxit. Sollicito.

English words to be translated into Latin.

He has said. To conspire. He will give. Reason. Hostages. Army. Might be marched. He did solicit. Some. Longer. He bore. To winter. Fickleness. He studies. New. Kingdom. I shall have. Easily. To obtain. Winter quarters. Frequent. Also. By letters.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quòd in Galliâ à potentioribus vulgò regna occupabantur. Qui minùs facilè eam rem consequi poterant. Qui noluerant exercitum in Galliâ hiemare. Nonnulli novis imperiis studebant. Quum Cæsar in hibernis esset. Literis certior fiebat. Omnes Belgas contra populum Romanum conjurare. Obsides inter se dant.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Who could less easily obtain that thing. They bore grievously that the Roman army should winter in Gaul. They desired a change of government. Kingdoms were occupied by the most powerful. They give hostages among themselves. They feared lest our army might be marched into their territories. He was informed.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The fourth conjugation has its principal parts in *ir–ivi–itum.*

Active Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Indicative.	Present Infinitive.	Perfect Indicative.	Supine.
Audio,	Audire (ir),	Audivi (ivi),	Auditum (itum),
I-hear.	to-hear.	I-have-heard.	a-hearing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*Ir.*" (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., hear.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(1) Audio [1], I hear	io.
(1) Audis [2], thou hearest	is.
(1) Audit [3], he hears	it.

PLURAL.	
(1) Audimus [pl. 1], we hear	imus.
(1) Auditis [pl. 2], you hear	itis.
(1) Audiunt [pl. 3], they hear	iunt.

"*Ir.*" (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was hearing, or did hear.*

SINGULAR.	
(2) Audiebam [1], I was hearing	iebam.
(2) Audiebas [2], thou wast hearing	iebas.
(2) Audiebat [3], he was hearing	iebat.

PLURAL.	
(2) Audiebamus [pl. 1], we were hearing	iebamus.
(2) Audiebatis [pl. 2], you were hearing	iebatis.
(2) Audiebant [pl. 3], they were hearing	iebant.

"*Ir.*" (3) *Future Tense. I, &c., shall or will hear.*

SINGULAR.	
(3) Audiam [1], I shall hear	iam.
(3) Audies [2], thou wilt hear	ies.
(3) Audiet [3], he will hear	iet.

PLURAL.	
(3) Audiemus [pl. 1], we shall hear	iemus.
(3) Audietis [pl. 2], you will hear	ietis.
(3) Audient [pl. 3], they will hear	ient.

"*Ivi.*" (4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., have heard.*

SINGULAR.	
(4) Audivi [1], I have heard	ivi.
(4) Audivisti [2], thou hast heard	ivisti.
(4) Audivit [3], he has heard	ivit.

PLURAL.	Terminations.
(4) Audivimus [pl. 1], we have heard	ivimus.
(4) Audivistis [pl. 2], you have heard	ivistis.
(4) Audiverunt *or* audivere [pl. 3], they have heard	iverunt *or* ivere.

"Ivi." (5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had heard.*

SINGULAR.	
(5) Audiveram [1], I, &c., had heard	iveram.
(5) Audiveras [2], thou hadst heard	iveras.
(5) Audiverat [3], he had heard	iverat.

PLURAL.	
(5) Audiveramus [pl. 1], we had heard	iveramus.
(5) Audiveratis [pl. 2], you had heard	iveratis.
(5) Audiverant [pl. 3], they had heard	iverant.

"Ivi." (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have heard.*

SINGULAR.	
(6) Audivero [1], I shall have heard	ivero.
(6) Audiveris [2], thou wilt have heard	iveris.
(6) Audiverit [3], he will have heard	iverit.

PLURAL.	
(6) Audiverimus [pl. 1], we shall have heard	iverimus.
(6) Audiveritis [pl. 2], you will have heard	iveritis.
(6) Audiverint [pl. 3], they will have heard	iverint.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses, are formed from the first principal part, *ir*. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the second principal part, *ivi*.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *io* in the first person, into *is* in the second, and into *it* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *imus* in the first person, into *itis* in the second, and into *iunt* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iebam* in the first person, into *iebas* in the second, and into *iebat* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iebamus* in the first person, into *iebatis* in the second, and into *iebant* in the third person.

In the future tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iam* in the first person, into *ies* in the second, and into *iet* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iemus* in the first person, into *ietis* in the second, and into *ient* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *ivi* in the first person, into *ivisti* in the second, and into *ivit* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *ivimus* in the first person, into *ivistis* in the second, and into *iverunt* or *ivere* in the third person.

In the pluperfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *iveram* in the first person, into *iveras* in the second, and into *iverat* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *iveramus* in the first person, into *iveratis* in the second, and into *iverant* in the third person.

In the future perfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *ivero* in the first person, into *iveris* in the second, and into *iverit* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *iverimus* in the first person, into *iveritis* in the second, and into *iverint* in the third person.

Lesson 77.

Neque [ic.pl.1] hi solùm, [as-atis.1] auctoritas
Neither (do) these (senators) only (do so), (the) authority

[ui.pl.2] quorum videlicet [(*sum-esse*) | e-ui.(1)] est [3] •• [1] cara
of-whom indeed (it seems) is dear

[3] tibi, (2) •• [1] vita [1] vilissima; (*s.*) •• sed
to-you, (though their) life (is) most-cheap; but

etiam [le.pl.1] illi [s.pl.1] Romani [es-itis.pl.1] equites [s.pl.1] honestissimi (*s.*) ••
also those Roman knights (the) most-honorable

atque [s.pl.1] optimi (*bonus, s.*) •• [r.pl.1] viri, que· [s.pl.1] ceteri·
and best (of) men, and (the) other

[s.pl.1] fortissimi (*s.*) •• [is-is.pl.1] cives, [ui.pl.1] qui
most-brave citizens, who

[| ar-eti-atum.(1)] circumstant [pl.3] •• [ûs.4] senatum, et [4] frequentiam
stand-around (the) senate, and (the) concourse

ui.pl.2 quorum / of-whom — 1 tu (2) •• / you — (sum-esse).e- | ui (4) potuisti [2] •• / have-been-able

' (d)ĕr-di-sum.in.(1) videre, / to-see, — et / and — | (icio-icere).ĕr-exi-ectum.in.(2) perspicere / to-perceive — (their)

m.pl.4 studia, / desires, — et / and — paulo / (a) little — ante / before (this) — | ir-ivi-itum.in.(1) exaudire / to-hear — (their)

x-cis.pl.4 voces : / shouts : — ui.pl.2 quorum / whose — ûs.pl.4 manus (*f.*) •• / hands — ac / and — m.pl.4 tela / weapons

jam / already — diu / long-since — 1 ego (1) •• / I — (could) — vix / scarcely

| (tineo-tinere).ĕr-tinui-tentum.(1) contineo [1] •• / restrain — abs / from — 6 te, (2) •• / you, — I-1 can

facile / easily — | (c)ĕr-xi-ctum.sb.(1) adducam [1] •• / 1 lead — is.pl.4 eosdem / (the) same (citizens) — ut / that

| (quor-i).ĕr-cutus.d.sb.(1) prosequantur [pl.3] •• / they-may-follow — usque / unto — ad / — — pl.4 portas, / (the) gates,

4 te (3) •• / you — | (inqu)ĕr-iqui-ictum.(1).ns-ntis.4 relinquentem [part.] •• / leaving — oc.pl.4 hæc, / these

(things), — od.pl.4 quæ / which — | ĕr-ui.(1) studes [2] •• / you-study — jampridem / for-a-long-time-since

| ar-avi-atum.in.(1) vastare. / to-lay-waste. — Quamquam / And-yet — id.4 quid / what

| (quor-i).ĕr-cutus.d.(1) loquor ? [1] •• / do-I-say ? — ut / | that — 1 ulla / any — ei.1 res / thing

| (ang)ĕr-egi-actum.sb.(1) frangat [3] •• / can-break — 4 te ? (2) •• / you — [that any thing could curb

your wicked spirit] ? — ut / | that — 1 tu (2) •• / you — 1 can — unquam / ever

| (ig)ĕr-exi-ectum.sb.(1) corrigas [2] •• / 1 correct — 4 te (2) •• / you — [that you can ever amend]

ut / that — tu / you — (ever) — | (or-ari).ar-avi-atum.d.sb.(1) meditere [2] •• / meditate — 4 ullam / any

4 fugam ? / flight? — ut / that — tu / you — (ever) — | ar-avi-atum.sb.(1) cogites [2] •• / think-of — m.4 ullum / any

m.4 exsilium ? / exile ? — Utinam / O-that — is-is.pl.1 immortales / (the) immortal — s.pl.1 Dii / Gods — duint / may-give

ta.4 istam / this — ns-ntis.4 mentem / mind — 3 tibi ! (2) •• / to-you !

Lesson 78.

Neque hi solùm, quorum tibi auctoritas est videlicet cara, vita vilissima; sed etiam illi equites Romani, honestissimi atque optimi viri, ceterique fortissimi cives, qui circumstant senatum, quorum tu et frequentiam videre, et studia perspicere, et voces paulo ante exaudire potuisti; quorum ego vix abs te jam diu manus ac tela contineo, eosdem facile adducam, ut te hæc, quæ jampridem vastare studes, relinquentem, usque ad portas prosequantur. Quamquam quid loquor? te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut unquam te corrigas? tu ut ullam fugam meditere? tu ut ullum exsilium cogites? Utinam tibi istam mentem Dii immortales duint.

Exercises on Lessons 77 and 78.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Loquor. Frango. Unquam. Fuga. Meditor. Cogitamus. Mens. Vix. Manus. Telum. Adduco. Vastavit. Relinquens. Porta. Prosequar. Cara. Vita. Equites. Vilissima. Civis. Fortis. Optimus. Circumsto. Frequentia. Perspicere. Video. Vox. Exaudio. Honestus.

English words to be translated into Latin.

You meditate. O that. Mind. Shouts. He has heard. Hand. Voice. I. Weapons. He restrains. To lead to. To follow. Gates. I study. They will lay waste. I speak. He breaks. Neither. Dear. Life. Cheap. Knights. The best. Other. Brave. They stood around. I saw. I perceive.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quid loquor. Te ut unquam corriges. Ullam fugam cogites. Quorum tela vix abs te contineo. Facile adducam, ut te ad portas prosequantur. Hæc, quæ vastare studes. Illi equites Romani optimi viri. Ceteri cives, qui circumstant. Voces exaudire potuisti.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

You meditate flight. O that the immortal gods would give this mind to you! Whose hands I could scarcely restrain. I can easily lead the same. They follow you to the gates. You study to lay those things waste. What do I say? Can any thing curb your wicked spirit? That you can ever amend. The authority of whom is dear to you. Though their life is most cheap. Those Roman knights, the best of men. The other citizens, who stand around. You have been able to perceive their desires.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — ACTIVE VOICE.

"Ir." sb. (1) Present Tense. I, &c., may hear.

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (1) Audiam [1], I may hear	iam.
sb. (1) Audias [2], thou mayst hear	ias.
sb. (1) Audiat [3], he may hear	iat.
PLURAL.	
sb. (1) Audiamus [pl. 1], we may hear	iamus.
sb. (1) Audiatis [pl. 2], you may hear	iatis.
sb. (1) Audiant [pl. 3], they may hear	iant.

"Ir." sb. (2) Imperfect Tense. I might, could, would or should hear.

SINGULAR.	
sb. (2) Audirem [1], I might, &c., hear	irem.
sb. (2) Audires [2], thou mightst hear	ires.
sb. (2) Audiret [3], he might hear	iret.
PLURAL.	
sb. (2) Audiremus [pl. 1], we might hear	iremus.
sb. (2) Audiretis [pl. 2], you might hear	iretis.
sb. (2) Audirent [pl. 3], they might hear	irent.

"Ivi." sb. (4) Perfect Tense. I, &c., may have heard.

SINGULAR.	
sb. (4) Audiverim [1], I may have heard.	iverim.
sb. (4) Audiveris [2], thou mayst have heard	iveris.
sb. (4) Audiverit [3], he may have heard	iverit.

PLURAL. Terminations.

sb. (4) Audiverimus [pl. 1], we may have heard .... iverimus.
sb. (4) Audiveritis [pl. 2], you may have heard...................... iveritis.
sb. (4) Audiverint [pl. 3], they may have heard .... iverint.

"Ivi." sb. (5) Pluperfect Tense. I might, could, would or should have heard.

SINGULAR.

sb. (5) Audivissem [1], I might have heard.......................... ivissem.
sb. (5) Audivisses [2], thou mightst have heard .... ivisses.
sb. (5) Audivisset [3], he might have heard.......................... ivisset.

PLURAL.

sb. (5) Audivissemus [pl. 1], we might have heard .... ivissemus.
sb. (5) Audivissetis [pl. 2], you might have heard................... ivissetis.
sb. (5) Audivissent [pl. 3], they might have heard .... ivissent.

"IR." IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

im. Audi *or* audito [2], hear thou .... i *or* ito.
im. Audito [3], let him hear .... ito.

PLURAL.

im. Audite *or* auditote [pl. 2], hear ye.............................. ite *or* itote.
im. Audiunto [pl. 3], let them hear .... iunto.

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ir." in. (1) Present Tense.

in. (1) Audire, to hear .... ire.

"Ivi." in. (4) Perfect Tense.

in. (4) Audivisse, to have heard .... ivisse.

"Itum." in. (3) Future Tense.

in. (3) Auditurus esse, to be about to hear .... iturus esse.

PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"Ir." (1) Present Tense.

(1) ns–ntis. 1. Audiens [part.], hearing................................. iens.

"Itum." (3) Future Tense.

(3) us–a–um. 1. Auditurus [part.], about to hear..................... us–a–um.

"IR." GERUNDS [GER.].

	Terminations.
2. *G.* Audiendi [ger.], of hearing	iendi.
3. *D.* Audiendo [ger.], to hearing	iendo.
4. *A.* Audiendum [ger.], hearing	iendum.
6. *Ab.* Audiendo [ger.], by, &c., hearing	iendo.

ITUM. SUPINE [UM] IN UM.

Auditum [um], a hearing	itum.

In the above, the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive, and the imperative, also the present infinitive, present participle, and the gerunds, are formed from the first principal part, *ir*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and also the perfect infinitive, are formed from the second principal part, *ivi*. The future participle, the future infinitive, and the supine in *um*, are formed from the third principal part, *itum*.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iam* in the first person, into *ias* in the second, and into *iat* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iamus* in the first person, into *iatis* in the second person, and into *iant* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *irem* in the first person, into *ires* in the second, and into *iret* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iremus* in the first person, into *iretis* in the second, and into *irent* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *iverim* in the first person, into *iveris* in the second, and into *iverit* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *iverimus* in the first person, into *iveritis* in the second, and into *iverint* in the third person.

In the pluperfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *ivissem* in the first person, into *ivisses* in the second, and into *ivisset* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *ivissemus* in the first person, into *ivissetis* in the second, and into *ivissent* in the third person.

In the imperative mood, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *i* or *ito* in the second person, and into *ito* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *ite* or *itote* in the second person, and into *iunto* in the third person.

In the infinitive mood, in the present tense, *ir* is changed into *ire;* in the perfect tense, *ivi* is changed into *ivisse;* and, in the future tense, *itum* is changed into *iturus*, with *esse.*

In the participles, in the present tense, *ir* is changed into *iens;* and, in the future tense, *itum* is changed into *iturus.*

In the gerunds, *ir* is changed into *iendi* in the genitive, into *iendo* in the dative, into *iendum* in the accusative, and into *iendo* in the ablative.

In the supine in *um*, *itum* remains *itum.*

In the tenses formed from *ivi*, *vi* is sometimes omitted, when followed by *s:* as, *audîssem* for *audivissem.* Sometimes *v* alone is omitted: as, *audiero* for *audivero.*

Lesson 79.

Quum [1] prima [io–onis.1] legio (*f.*) ●● [ir– | i–tum.sb.(5)] venisset [3] ●●
When (the) first legion should-have-come

in [m.pl.4] castra, que· [pl.1] reliquæ· [io–ionis.pl.1] legiones (*f.*) ●●
into (the) camp, and (the) remaining legions

[(sum–esse) | e–ui.sb.(2)] abessent [pl.3] ●● [m.1] magnum [m.1] spatium,
might-be-distant (a) great space, (they

adoriri [æc.4] hanc sub
were advised) to-attack this (first legion) under (their load of)

[pl.6] sarcinis; [uæ.6] quâ [6] pulsâ, [part.] ●● que·
baggage; which (legion) being-routed, and

[m.pl.6] impedimentis· [m.pl.6] direptis [part.] ●●
(the) camp-equipage being-plundered

[(sum–esse).e–ui.(3).m.1] futurum [part.] ●● ut [pl.1] reliquæ
it-would-be that (the) remaining (legions) [1] would

non [| ĕr–ausus–sum.sb.(2)] auderent [pl.3] ●● [| (sist)ĕr–stiti–stitum.in.(1)] consistere
not [1] dare to-stand

contrà. Etiam [| ar–avi–atum.(2)] adjuvabat [3] ●●
against (them). Also (this) did-assist

m.4 consilium is.pl.2 eorum, ui.pl.1 qui
(the) advice of-those who

(fero–ferre)–tuli–latum(2) deferebant [pl.3] •• ei.4 rem,
| did-bring [reported] (this) thing, (namely)

quòd s.pl.1 Nervii antiquitùs, quum
that (the) Nervi anciently, when

(sum–esse) | e–ui.sb.(2) possent [pl.3] •• nihil ûs.6 equitatu, (enim
they-could-do nothing by-cavalry, (for

neque ad oc.4 hoc us.oris.4 tempus | ĕr–ui.(1) student [pl.3] ••
neither to this time do-they-study

is.3 ei ei.3 rei, sed id.4 quidquid (sum–esse) | e–ui.(1) possunt [pl.3] ••
this thing, but whatever they-are-able-to-do

| ĕr–ui–itum.(1) valent [pl.3] •• is.is.pl.6 pedestribus pl.6 copiis);
they-accomplish by-foot soldiers); (in order)

quò | ir–ivi–itum.sb.(2) impedirent [pl.3] •• faciliùs ûs.4 equitatum
that they-might-hinder (the) more-easily (the) cavalry

s.pl.1 finitimorum, si ir– | i–tum.sb.(5) venisset [3] •• ad eos
1 of (their) 1 neighbours, if it-should-have-come to them

6 causâ | ar–avi–atum.2 prædandi, [ger.] •• pl.6 incisis [part.] ••
1 for (the) 1 purpose of-plundering, having-cut-into

6 teneris or–oris.pl.6 arboribus, (*f.*) •• atque 6 inflexis, [part.] ••
tender trees, and (these) being-bent

que· er.pl.6 crebris s.pl.6 ramis s pl.6 enatis [part.] •• in
and (having) thick boughs springing-forth in

do–dinis.4 latitudinem, (*f.*) •• et s.pl.6 rubis que·
(a) lateral-direction, and 1 having brambles and

is–is.pl.6 sentibus· (*m.*) •• s.pl.6 interjectis, [part.] ••
thorns 1 cast-in-between,

(ic·)ĕr– | eci–ectum.(5) effecerant, [pl.3] •• ut æc.pl.1 hæ
they-had-accomplished (so much), that these

es–is.pl.1 sepes | er–ui–itum.sb.(2) præberent [pl.3] •• m.pl.4 munimenta
hedges did-present fortifications

instar s.2 muri; quò non
like (that) 1 of (a) 1 wall; whither it-1 was not

(sum–esse) | e–ui.sb.(2) posset non modò | ar–avi–atum.p.in.(1) intrari,
1 possible not only (not) to-enter,

sed ne quidem (ici)ĕr–exi–ectum.p.in.(1) perspici.
but not indeed (even) to-see-through (them).

18

Lesson 80.

Quum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquæque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: quâ pulsâ, impedimentisque direptis, futurum ut reliquæ contrà consistere non auderent. Adjuvabat etiam eorum consilium, qui rem deferebant, quòd Nervii antiquitùs, quum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student sed, quidquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), quò faciliùs finitimorum equitatum si prædandi causâ ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis, et rubis sentibusque interjectis, effecerant, ut, instar muri, hæ sepes munimenta præberent; quò non modò non intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset.

Exercises on Lessons 79 and 80.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Tener. Inflexus. Arbor. Creber. Latitudo. Ramus. Rubus. Instar. Murus. Sepes. Intrat. Perspicio. Venio. Absum. Sarcinæ. Consisto. Audeo. Adjuvabo. Antiquitùs. Tempus. Studeo. Pedestris. Faciliùs. Finitimus. Impedirent.

English words to be translated into Latin.

To enter. He might hinder. Cavalry. Neighbor. Should he have come. Tender. Being bent. Tree. Bough. Brambles. Thorns. Did present. Like. Wall. To dare. Personal baggage. Camp equipage. He will assist. Time. I study. I come.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Teneris arboribus inflexis. Rubis sentibusque interjectis. Ut, instar muri, hæ sepes munimenta præberent. Quò non intrari posset. Qui rem deferebant. Nervii equitatu nihil possent. Neque ei rei student. Quo faciliùs equitatum

impedirent. Quum legio in castra venisset. Reliquæ magnum spatium abessent. Hanc sub sarcinis adoriri. Consistere non auderent.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

It was not possible to enter. Whatever they were able to do, they accomplished by foot soldiers. In order that they might more easily hinder the cavalry. If he should come to them. Tender trees being cut into. Having boughs springing forth in a lateral direction. Branches and thorns being cast in between. The hedges presented a fortification like a wall. The camp equipage being plundered. They dared not stand against them. The Nervii could do nothing by cavalry. They do not study this thing. The remaining legions were distant.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Ir." p. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am heard.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
p. (1) Audior [1], I am heard	ior.
p. (1) Audiris *or* audire [2], thou art heard	iris *or* ire.
p. (1) Auditur [3], he is heard	itur.

PLURAL.	
p. (1) Audimur [pl. 1]. we are heard	imur.
p. (1) Audimini [pl. 2], you are heard	imini.
p. (1) Audiuntur [pl. 3], they are heard	iuntur.

"Ir." p. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was heard.*

SINGULAR.	
p. (2) Audiebar [1], I was heard	iebar.
p. (2) Audiebaris *or* audiebare [2], thou wast heard	iebaris *or* iebare.
p. (2) Audiebatur [3], he was heard	iebatur.

PLURAL.	Terminations.
p. (2) Audiebamur [pl. 1], we were heard	iebamur.
p. (2) Audiebamini [pl. 2], you were heard	iebamini.
p. (2) Audiebantur [pl. 3], they were heard	iebantur.

"Ir." p. (3) Future Tense. I, &c., shall or will be heard.

SINGULAR.

p. (3) Audiar [1], I shall be heard	iar.
p. (3) Audieris *or* audiere [2], thou wilt be heard	ieris *or* iere.
p. (3) Audietur [3], he will be heard	ietur.

PLURAL.

p. (3) Audiemur [pl. 1], we shall be heard	iemur.
p. (3) Audiemini [pl. 2], you will be heard	iemini.
p. (3) Audientur [pl. 3], they will be heard	ientur.

"Itum." p. (4) Perfect Tense. I, &c., have been heard.

SINGULAR.

p. (4) Auditus sum *or* fui [1], I have been heard.
p. (4) Auditus es *or* fuisti [2], thou hast been heard.
p. (4) Auditus est *or* fuit [3], he has been heard.

PLURAL.

p. (4) Auditi sumus *or* fuimus [pl. 1], we have been heard.
p. (4) Auditi estis *or* fuistis [pl. 2], you have been heard.
p. (4) Auditi sunt *or* fuerunt *or* fuere [pl. 3], they have been heard.

"Itum." p. (5) Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had been heard.

SINGULAR.

p. (5) Auditus eram *or* fueram [1], I had been heard.
p. (5) Auditus eras *or* fueras [2], thou hadst been heard.
p. (5) Auditus erat *or* fuerat [3], he had been heard.

PLURAL.

p. (5) Auditi eramus *or* fueramus [pl. 1], we had been heard.
p. (5) Auditi eratis *or* fueratis [pl. 2], you had been heard.
p. (5) Auditi erant *or* fuerant [pl. 3], they had been heard.

"Itum." p. (6) Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have been heard.

SINGULAR.

p. (6) Auditus ero *or* fuero [1], I shall have been heard.
p. (6) Auditus eris *or* fueris [2], thou wilt have been heard.
p. (6) Auditus erit *or* fuerit [3], he will have been heard.

PLURAL.

p. (6) Auditi erimus *or* fuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have been heard.
p. (6) Auditi eritis *or* fueritis [pl. 2], you will have been heard.
p. (6) Auditi erunt *or* fuerint [pl. 3], they will have been heard.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ir;* the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, are formed from the third principal part, *itum;* or, rather, the perfect participle is formed from the third principal part.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *ior* in the first person, into *iris* or *ire* in the second, and into *itur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *imur* in the first person, into *imini* in the second, and into *iuntur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iebar* in the first person, into *iebaris* or *iebare* in the second, and into *iebatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iebamur* in the first person, into *iebamini* in the second, and into *iebantur* in the third person.

In the future tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iar* in the first person, into *ieris* or *iere* in the second, and into *ietur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iemur* in the first person, into *iemini* in the second, and into *ientur* in the third person.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive, have properly no terminations, as they are formed by the perfect participle and the tenses of *sum.*

In the perfect tense, either *sum—I am,* or *fui—I was,* combined with the perfect participle, may be used to denote the perfect passive tense. So, likewise, *eram* or *fueram* for the pluperfect tense, and *ero* or *fuero* for the future perfect tense.

Lesson 81.

Postridie is.2 ejus ei.2 diei, priùs quàm is–is.pl.1 hostes
(The) day-after that day, before that (the) enemy

| (*recipio–recipere*).ĕr–(rec)epi–(rec)eptum.sb.(2) reciperent [pl.3] ●● 4 se (3) ●● ex
might-recover themselves from

or–oris.6 terrore ac 6 fugâ r–ris.1 Cæsar (c)ĕr– | xi–ctum.(4) duxit [3] ●●
(their) terror and flight Cæsar led

ûs.4 exercitum in is–is.pl.4 fines is–is.pl.2 Suessionum
(his) army into (the) territories [1] of (the) [1] Suessiones

ui.pl.1 qui (*sum–esse*) | e–ui.(2) erant [pl.3] ●● s.pl.1 proximi (*s.*) ●●
who were (the) nearest

s.pl.3 Rhemis ; et m.6 magno er–ineris.6 itinere
[1] to (the) [1] Rhemi ; and (a) great march

(icio–icere).ĕr–eci– | ectum.p.(4).s.6 confecto, [part.] ●● (d)ĕr– | di–tum.(4) contendit [3] ●●
having-been-accomplished, he-hastened

ad m.4 oppidum m.4 Noviodunum. ar–avi– | atum.d.(4).s.1 Conatus [part.] ●●
to (the) town (of) Noviodunum. Having-attempted

| ar–avi–atum.in.(1) oppugnare id.4 id ex er–ineris.6 itinere, quòd
to-assault it on (his) march, because

| ir–ivi–itum.(2) audiebat [3] ●● (*sum–esse*) | e–ui.in.(1) esse m.1 vacuum
he-heard (that it) was destitûte

ab or–oris.pl.6 defensoribus, non (*sum–esse*)e– | ui.(4) potuit [3] ●●
of defenders, (yet) he- [1] was not [1] able

| ar–avi–atum.in.(1) expugnare, propter do–dinis.4 latitudinem (*f.*) ●●
to-storm (it), on-account-of (the) breadth

[2] fossæ, que· do–dinis.4 altitudinem (*f.*) ●● s.2 muri·,
[1] of (the) [1] ditch, and (the) height [1] of (the) [1] wall,

s.pl.6 paucis | (d)ĕr–di–sum.(1).ns–ntis.pl.6 defendentibus. [part.] ●●
few (men) (however) defending (it).

m.pl.6 Castris ir–ivi *or* ii– | itum.(4).m.pl.6 munitis [part.] ●●
(The) camp having-been-fortified

(*cœpio–cœpere*).ĕr– | (*cœp*)*i*–(cœp)tum.(4) cœpit [3] ●● (*ago–agere*) | ĕr–*egi*–(a)ctum.in.(2) agere
he-began to-move-forward

pl.4 vineas | ar–avi–atum.in.(1) comparare uid.pl.4 quæque
(the) mantlets, (and) to-prepare whatever

(*sum–esse*) | e–ui.(2) erant [3] ●● ûs.3 usui ad
(things) were (of) use for

| ar–avi–atum.(4) oppugnandum. [ger.] ●● Interim
assaulting (the town). In-the-mean-time

is-is.1 omnis do-dinis.1 multitudo (*f.*) •• is-is.pl.2 Suessionum ex
all (the) multitude [1] of (the) [1] Suessiones from

6 fugâ ir- | i-tum.(1) convenit [3] •• in m.4 oppidum 6 proximâ
(the) flight came into (the) town [1] on (the) [1] next

x-ctis.6 nocte. pl.6 Vineis (ago-agere) ĕr-egi- | (a)ctum.p.(4).pl.6 actis [part.] ••
night. (The) mantlets being-moved-forward

celeriter ad m.4 oppidum, r-ris.6 aggere
quickly to (the) town, (a) mound

(jacio-jacere).ĕr-jeci- | (ja)ctum.(4).s.6 jacto, [part.] •• que· is-is.pl.6 turribus·
having-been-thrown-up, and towers

ĕr-i- | tum.(4).pl.6 constitutis, [part.] •• s.pl.1 Galli
having-been-erected, (the) Gauls

ēr-vi- | tum.(4).s.pl.6 permoti [part.] •• do-dinis.6 magnitudine (*f.*) ••
alarmed [1] by (the) [1] greatness

us-eris.pl.2 operum, od.pl.4 quæ neque
[1] of (the) [1] works, which they-[1] had neither

ēr- | i-visum.(5) viderant [pl.3] •• ante neque
[1] seen before nor

ir- | ivi or ii-itum.(5) audierant, [pl.3] •• et as-atis.6 celeritate
had-heard-of, and [1] by (the) [1] celerity

s.pl.2 Romanorum, | ĕr-misi-missum.(1) mittunt [pl.3] •• s.pl.4 legatos
[1] of (the) [1] Romans, send ambassadors

ad r-ris.4 Cæsarem de io-ionis.6 deditione, (*f.*) •• et
to Cæsar about (a) surrender, and

s.pl.6 Rhemis | ĕr-ivi or ii-itum.(1).ns-ntis.pl.6 petentibus, [part.] •• ut
(the) Rhemi petitioning, that

| ar-avi-atum.p.sb.(2) conservarentur [pl.3] •• | ar-avi-atum.(1) impetrant [pl.3] ••
they-might-be-preserved they-obtain (it).

Lesson 82.

Postridie ejus diei Cæsar, priùs quàm se hostes ex terrore ac fugâ reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Rhemis erant, exercitum duxit: et magno itinere confecto, ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quòd vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat; propter latitudinem fossæ murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, vineas agere, quæque ad oppugnandum usui erant, comparare cœpit. Interim

omnis ex fugâ Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto, turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quæ neque viderant antè Galli, neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Cæsarem de deditione mittunt; et petentibus Rhemis, ut conservarentur, impetrant.

Exercises on Lessons 81 and 82.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Vinea. Agger. Turris. Opus. Magnitudo. Video. Audierant. Celeritas. Deditio. Conservabam. Impetratis. Munitus. Ago. Oppugnant. Usus. Nox. Postridæ. Finis. Proximus. Duco. Vacuus. Auditur. Fossa. Auditi sunt. Expugnavit.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Tower. Alarmed. Work. He has seen. They will be heard. They have sent. Surrender. He is preserved. Flight. I say. The nearest. Accomplished. We hasten. They assaulted. Ye have heard. On account of. Breadth. Ditch. Few. He began. Mantlets. I shall prepare. Use. Night. Quickly. Mound.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Cæsar vineas agere cœpit. Quæque usui erant comparavit. Omnis multitudo in oppidum convenit. Vineis ad oppidum actis, turribusque constitutis. Quæ neque viderant antè, neque audierant. Galli legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt. In fines Suessionum exercitum duxit. Ad oppidum contendit. Id oppugnavit. Vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat. Propter latitudinem fossæ, expugnare non potuit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Alarmed by the greatness of the works. The Gauls send ambassadors to Cæsar. The Rhemi petitioning that they

might be preserved. Few men defending it. They began to move forward the mantlets. They assaulted the town. In the mean time, the Suessiones came into the town. The Gauls, alarmed, send ambassadors to Cæsar. Which they had neither seen before, nor had heard of.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — PASSIVE VOICE.

"Ir." p. sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may or can be heard.*

SINGULAR. Terminations.

p. sb. (1) Audiar [1], I may or can be heard........................ iar.
p. sb. (1) Audiaris *or* audiare [2], thou mayst, &c., be heard.... iaris *or* iare.
p. sb. (1) Audiatur [3], he may be heard............................ iatur.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (1) Audiamur [pl. 1], we may be heard........................ iamur.
p. sb. (1) Audiamini [pl. 2], you may be heard...................... iamini.
p. sb. (1) Audiantur [pl. 3], they may be heard .... iantur.

"Ir." p. sb. (2) *Imperfect. I, &c., might, could, would or should be heard.*

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (2) Audirer [1], I might, &c., be heard........................ irer.
p. sb. (2) Audireris *or* audirere [2], thou mightst be heard....ireris *or* irere.
p. sb. (2) Audiretur [3], he might be heard.......................... iretur.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (2) Audiremur [pl. 1], we might be heard .... iremur.
p. sb. (2) Audiremini [pl. 2], you might be heard .... iremini.
p. sb. (2) Audirentur [pl. 3], they might be heard .... irentur.

"Itum." p. sb. (4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c. may have been heard.*

SINGULAR.

p. sb. (4) Auditus sim *or* fuerim [1], I may have been heard.
p. sb. (4) Auditus sis *or* fueris [2], thou mayst have been heard.
p. sb. (4) Auditus sit *or* fuerit [3], he may have been heard.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (4) Auditi simus *or* fuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been heard.
p. sb. (4) Auditi sitis *or* fueritis [pl. 2], you may have been heard.
p. sb. (4) Auditi sint *or* fuerint [pl. 3], they may have been heard.

"Itum." p. sb. (5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, would or should have been heard.*

SINGULAR. Terminations.

p. sb. (5) Auditus essem *or* fuissem [1], I might, &c., have been heard.
p. sb. (5) Auditus esses *or* fuisses [2], thou mightst have been heard.
p. sb. (5) Auditus esset *or* fuisset [3], he might have been heard.

PLURAL.

p. sb. (5) Auditi essemus *or* fuissemus [pl. 1], we might have been heard.
p. sb. (5) Auditi essetis *or* fuissetis [pl. 2], you might have been heard.
p. sb. (5) Auditi essent *or* fuissent [pl. 3], they might have been heard.

"IR." P. IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

p. im. Audire *or* auditor [2], be thou heard........................ ire *or* itor.
p. im. Auditor [3], let him be heard.................................. itor.

PLURAL.

p. im. Audimini [pl. 2], be ye heard.................................. imini.
p. im. Audiuntor [pl. 3], let them be heard .... iuntor.

P. IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ir." p. in. (1) *Present Tense. To be heard.*

p. in. (1) Audiri, to be heard... iri.

"Itum." p. in. (4) *Perfect Tense. To have been heard.*

p. in. (4) Auditus esse *or* fuisse, to have been heard.

"Itum." p. in. (3) *Future Tense. To be about to be heard.*

p. in. (3) Auditum iri, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"Itum." p. (4) *Perfect Tense* [*part.*]. *Heard.*

p. (4) Auditus [part.], heard.. itus.

"Ir." p. (3) *Future Tense* [*part.*]. *About to be heard, or to be heard.*

p. (3) Audiendus [part.], about to be heard........................... endus.

"ITUM." P. SUPINE IN [U]. TO BE HEARD.

p. Auditu [u], to be heard.. u.

The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive passive, the imperative passive, the present tense of the infinitive passive, and the future participle passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ir*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive, the perfect and future infinitive passive, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are formed from the third principal part, *itum;* or, rather, the perfect participle, and supine in *u*, are thus formed.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iar* in the first person, into *iaris* or *iare* in the second, and into *iatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iamur* in the first person, into *iamini* in the second, and into *iantur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *irer* in the first person, into *ireris* or *irere* in the second, and into *iretur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iremur* in the first person, into *iremini* in the second, and into *irentur* in the third person.

The perfect and pluperfect tenses, subjunctive passive, have properly no terminations; for the perfect is formed by the perfect participle *auditus*, and *sim* or *fuerim*, either forming the perfect subjunctive. The pluperfect, in like manner, is formed by the perfect participle and *essem* or *fuissem*.

In the imperative mood, *ir*, in the singular, is changed into *ire* or *itor* in the second person, and in the third person into *itor;* in the plural, *ir* is changed into *imini* in the second person, and into *iuntor* in the third person.

In the infinitive mood, in the present tense, *ir* is changed into *iri*. The perfect tense of the infinitive is formed by the perfect participle and *esse* or *fuisse*. The future tense of the same by the supine in *um* and *iri*.

The perfect participle is formed by changing *itum* into *itus*. The future participle passive by changing *ir* into *iendus*.

The supine in *u* is formed by changing *itum* into *itu*.

In the future passive participle of the third and fourth conjugations, *undus* is often used in place of *endus*.

Lesson 83.

Vero | m.pl.4 vincula | | et | id.pl.4 ea
But | bonds | (and imprisonments) | and | these

m.pl.4 sempiterna | | | certe
enduring-for-ever | (or for life) | [1] have | certainly

ir–i– | tum.p.(4) inventa sunt [pl.3] •• | ad | is–is.4 singularem | [4] pœnam
[1] been-invented | for | (the) singular | punishment

m.2 nefarii | us–eris.2 sceleris. | | (b)ĕr–ssi–ssum.(1) Jubet [3] ••
of-nefarious | crimes. | [1] He [Cæsar] [1] orders (them)

| ir–ivi *or* ii–itum.p.in.(1) dispertiri | m.pl.3 municipiis. | ta.1 Ista
to-be-distributed | to-the-municipal-towns. | This

ei.1 res | | (d)ĕr–di–sum.p.(1) videtur [3] •• | | ĕr–ui–itum.in.(1) habere
thing | seems | to-have

as–atis.4 iniquitatem, | si | (*volo*– | *velle*)–*volui*.sb.(1) velis [2] ••
injustice (in it), | if | you-wish

| are–avi–atum.in.(1) imperare ; | as–atis.4 difficultatem,
to-command (it of the municipalities); | difficulty,

si | | ar–avi–atum.in.(1) rogare ; | tamen
if (you wish) | to-ask-for (it of them); | however

| (cern)ĕr–crevi–cretum.p.sb.(1) decernatur, [3] •• | si | | ĕr–ui–itum.(1) placet [3] ••
let-it-be-decreed, | if | it-pleases (you).

Enim | [1] ego (1) •• | (cipio–cipere) | ĕr–cepi–ceptum.(3) suscipiam, [1] ••
For | I | will-take-it-upon-myself (to see

your decree executed), | et, | ut | | ar–avi–atum.(1) spero, [1] ••
| and, | as | I-hope,

| ir–i–tum.(3) reperiam, [1] •• | | ui.pl.1 qui
I-will-find | (those municipalities), | that

| ar–avi–atum.sb.(1) putent [pl.3] •• | non | (*sum*–*esse*) | e–ui.in(1) esse
may-think (it) | not | to-be (the part)

suæ | as–atis.2 dignitatis | | ar–avi–atum.in.(1) recusare | id.4 id,
of-their | dignity | to-refuse (to do) | that,

od.4 quod | ĕr– | ui–utum.sb.(4) statueritis [pl.2] •• | [6] causâ
which | you-may-have-enacted | for-the-sake

us–utis.2 salutis (*f.*) •• | is–is.pl.2 omnium. | | (g)ĕr–xi–ctum.(1) Adjungit [3] ••
[1] of (the) [1] safety | of-all. | [1] He [Cæsar] [1] adds

is–is.4 gravem [4] pœnam | ceps–cipis.pl.3 municipibus
(a) heavy punishment [1] to (the) [1] inhabitants-[1] of (the) [1] municipal-towns

si | uis.1 quis | is.pl.2 eorum | (rup)ĕr– | pi–ptum.(6) ruperit [3] ••
| if | any-one | of-them | shall-have-broken

m.pl.4 vincula;
(the) bonds [if any one of the conspirators shall have escaped];

(d)ar-(de)di-(d)atum.(1) circumdat [3] •• is-is.pl.4 horribiles
he-places-round (them) dreadful

pl.4 custodias et | ir-ivi or ii or xi-itum or tum.(1) sancit [3] ••
guards and (irrevocably) ordains

• m.pl.4 digna us-eris.6 scelere s.pl.2 perditorum
(whatever things are) worthy [1] of (the) [1] guilt of-abandoned

o-inis.pl.2 hominum, ne uis.1 quis (sum-esse) | e-ui.sub.(1) possit [3] ••
men, lest any-one may

| ar-avi-atum.in.(1) levare 4 pœnam, is.pl.2 eorum ui.pl.4 quos
lighten (the) punishment, of-those whom

| ar-avi-atum.(1) condemnat, [3] •• aut per ûs.4 senatum, aut
he-condemns, either through (the) senate, or

per s.4 populum. Etiam | (ipio-ipere).ir-ipui-eptum.(1) iripit [3] ••
through (the) people. Also he-takes-away

ci.m spem, uæ.1 quæ 1 sola | ēr-ui-itus.(1) solet [3] •• | ar-atus.d.in.(1) consolari
hope, which alone is-accustomed to-console

o-inis.4 hominem in pl.6 miseriis. Præterea
(a) man in misery. Moreover

| (b)ēr-ssi-ssum.(1) jubet [3] •• m.pl.4 bona | ar-avi atum.p.in.(1) publicari;
he-orders (their) goods to-be-confiscated;

| (linquo-linquere).ĕr-liqui-lictum.(1) relinquit [3] •• 4 vitam 4 solam
he-leaves life alone

s.pl.3 nefariis o-inis.1 hominibus.
[1] to (these) [1] nefarious men.

Lesson 84.

Vincula vero, et ea sempiterna, certe ad singularem pœnam nefarii sceleris inventa sunt. Municipiis dispertiri jubet. Habere videtur ista res iniquitatem, si imperare velis; difficultatem, si rogare; dicernatur tamen, si placet. Ego enim suscipiam, et, ut spero, reperiam, qui id, quod salutis omnium causâ statueritis, non putent esse suæ dignitatis recusare. Adjungit gravem pœnam municipibus, si quis eorum vincula ruperit: horribles custodias circumdat, et digna scelere hominum perditorum sancit, ne quis eorum pœnam, quos condemnat, aut per senatum, aut per populum levare

possit. Eripit etiam spem, quæ sola hominem in miseriis consolari solet. Bona præterea publicari jubet; vitam solam relinquit nefariis hominibus.

Exercises on Lessons 83 and 84.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Adjunxit. Municeps. Pœna. Vinculum. Custodiæ Circumdedit. Scelus. Perditus. Levare. Eripio. Spes Consolabo. Jubetis. Vita. Reliquit. Sempiterna. Dispertiri. Imperabis. Volo. Rogavisti. Decernatur. Suscipiet. Sperabam. Reperiam. Salus. Causâ. Puto. Recusavit.

English words to be translated into Latin.

You condemn. To take away. He has consoled. Misery. They have ordered. They will be confiscated. He left. You have enacted. Safety. He will add. Punishment. Shall have broken. You place around. Guards. Guilt. Worthy. They order. Municipal towns. You have commanded. We ask for. It pleases. He will take it upon himself. He hopes. I have found. He may think. They have refused. Have been invented.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Eripit spem. Quæ hominem consolari solet. Bona publicari jubent. Vitam solam relinquit hominibus. Adjungunt gravem pœnam municipibus. Si quis vincula ruperit. Ne quis pœnam levare possit. Municipiis jubet. Habere videtur ista res difficultatem. Si placet. Ut spero, reperiam. Non putet esse suæ dignitatis recusare.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Whom you condemn. He takes away hope. He consoles the man in misery. He leaves life alone to the men. For the sake of the safety of all. If any one of them shall have

escaped. He placed guards round them. To lighten the punishment. He orders them to be distributed to the municipal towns. If it pleases you. They will take it upon themselves. They think it not a part of their dignity.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are those which not only depart from the formation of the principal parts, but also are irregular in the formation of the tenses and persons formed from these principal parts, especially in the first part. They are *sum*—*I am*, which, with its compounds, has already been treated of; *volo*—*I am willing*, *fero*—*I bear* or *carry*, *fio*—*I am made* or *become*, *edo*—*I eat*, *eo*—*I go*, *queo*—*I can* or *am able*. The compounds of all these being also irregular.

Volo — I am willing, or I wish.

Some of the parts of *volo*, and of its compounds, are wanting.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Indicative.	Present Infinitive.	Perfect Indicative.
Volo,	Velle,	Volui,
I-am-willing.	to-be-willing.	I-have-been-willing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"E." (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am willing, or I wish.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(1) Volo [1], I am willing	olo.
(1) Vis [2], thou art willing	is.
(1) Vult [3], he is willing	ult.
PLURAL.	
(1) Volumus [pl. 1], we are willing	olumus.
(1) Vultis [pl. 2], you are willing	ultis.
(1) Volunt [pl. 3], they are willing	olunt.

Imperfect tense, *volebam*—*I was willing*, is conjugated regularly after the third conjugation; so is also the future,

volam—I will be willing; also the present participle, *volens —being willing.*

All the tenses formed from the second principal part, *ui*, are conjugated regularly after the third conjugation: as, perfect, *volui—I have been willing;* pluperfect, *volueram— I had been willing;* perfect future, *voluero—I shall have been willing.* Also, the subjunctive perfect, *voluerim—I may have been willing*, is regular, as, likewise, the pluperfect subjunctive, *voluissem—I might have been willing*, and the infinitive perfect, *voluisse—to have been willing.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

"E." sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may be willing.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
sb. (1) Velim [1], I may be willing	elim.
sb. (1) Velis [2], thou mayst be willing	elis.
sb. (1) Velit [3], he may be willing	elit.
PLURAL.	
sb. (1) Velimus [pl. 1], we may be willing	elimus.
sb. (1) Velitis [pl. 2], you may be willing	elitis.
sb. (1) Velint [pl. 3], they may be willing	elint.

"E." sb. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, &c., be willing.*

SINGULAR.	
sb. (2) Vellem [1], I might be willing	ellem.
sb. (2) Velles [2], thou mightst be willing	elles.
sb. (2) Vellet [3], he might be willing	ellet.
PLURAL.	
sb. (2) Vellemus [pl. 1], we might be willing	ellemus.
sb. (2) Velletis [pl. 2], you might be willing	elletis.
sb. (2) Vellent [pl. 3], they might be willing	ellent.

"E." in. (1) *Infinitive. Present Tense.*

in. (1) Velle, to be willing	elle.

The irregularity of *volo* is in the indicative present tense, in the subjunctive present and imperfect tenses, and in the

infinitive present, all as above given. *V* is placed before all the above terminations, in these irregular parts, to form the moods and tenses.

Volt and *voltis,* for *vult* and *vultis,* sometimes occur.

The compounds of *volo* are *nolo—I am unwilling,* compounded from *non—not,* and *volo—I am willing; malo—I am more willing,* compounded of *magis—more* and *volo.*

Nolo—I am unwilling, is formed by dropping the final *n* of *non,* and by omitting the commencing *v* in *volo,* making *noolo;* but the two vowels, *oo,* are contracted into *o,* thus forming *nolo,* and this takes place in all the moods, tenses, numbers and persons of *nolo,* except the second and third persons singular indicative, and the second person plural of the same, in which the *n* of *non,* and the *v* of *volo,* are not dropped: as, singular, *nolo*[1], *nonvis*[2], *nonvult*[3]; plural, *nolumus*[pl.1], *nonvultis*[pl.2], *nolunt*[pl.3]; so that *nolo,* formed by contracting *non* and *volo,* as above described, is exactly conjugated like *volo,* with the exceptions here above indicated.

Nolo has also the imperative: as, singular, *noli* or *nolito*[2], *be ye not willing;* plural, *nolite* or *nolitote*[pl.3], *let them not be willing.*

Nevis and *nevolt* sometimes occur for *nonvis* and *nonvult.*

Malo—I am more willing, is formed by dropping the final syllable, *gis,* of *magis,* and by omitting the commencing *v* of *volo,* making *maolo;* but *ao* is contracted into *a,* thus forming *malo:* and this takes place in all the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of *volo,* except the second and third persons singular indicative, and the second person plural of the same, in which the *v* of *volo* is not dropped, though the *gis* of *magis* is: as, singular, *malo,*[1] *mavis,*[2] *mavult;*[3] plural, *malumus,*[pl.1] *mavultis,*[pl.2] *malunt;*[pl.3] so that *malo,* formed by contracting *magis* and *volo,* as above described, is exactly conjugated like *volo,* with the exceptions here indicated.

Lesson 85.

Tam (quor-qui)ĕr- | cutus.d.(4) assecutus sum [1] •• od4. quod
I-[1] have-already [1] attained what

ar- | avi-atum.(4) exspectavi, [1] •• ut pl.1 vos (2) • is-is.1 omnes
I-expected, that you all

| (d)ĕr-di-sum.sb.2 videretis, [pl.2] •• io-ionis.4 conjurationem (*f.*) ••
might-see, (that) (a) conspiracy

(cio-cere)ĕr-*feci*- | ctum.p.in.4 factam esse apertè contra
has-been-made openly against

ei.4 and 4 rempublicam. Nisi vero si (sum-esse) | e-ui.(1) est [3] ••
(the) republic. Unless indeed there (may) be

uis.1 quis, ui.1 qui, | ar-avi-atum.sb.(1) putet [3] ••
any-one, who, thinks (that those who are

is-is.pl.1 similes [2] Catilinæ non | (t)ir-si-sum.in.(1) sentire cum
(the) likes of-Catiline [1]do not [1] feel with

[6] Catilinâ. (*sum-esse*) | e-ui.(1) Est [3] •• non jam s.1 locus
Catiline. There is not now place

as-atis.3 lenitati; ei.1 res sa.1 ipsa | ar-avi-atum.(1) flagitat [pl.3]
for-mildness; (the) thing itself demands

as-atis.4 severitatem. Etiam nunc
severity. I-[1] may even now

| (ced)ĕr-cessi-essum.sb.(1) concedam [1] •• m.4 unum:
[1] concede one-thing:

(eo-ire) | ir-ivi *or* ii-itum.sb.(1) exeant [pl.3] •• (ficiscor-ficisi) | ĕr-fectus.d.sb.(1) profi-
let-them-go-forth let-

ciscantur; [pl.3] •• ne (ior-i) | ĕr-*passus-sum*.d.sb.(1) patiantur [pl.3] ••
them-depart; let-[1] them not [1] suffer

s.4 miserum [4] Catilinam | (besc)ĕr-bui.in (1) tabescere m.6 desiderio
(the) wretched Catiline to-pine-away for (the) want

[2] sui; (3) •• | ar-avi-atum.(3) demonstrabo [1] •• er-ineris.4 iter.
of-them; I-will-point-out (the) road.

(ficiscor-ficisi)ĕr- | fectus.d.(4) Profectus est [3] •• [6] Aureliâ [6] viâ: si
He-has-departed [1] by (the) [1]Aurelian way: if

(*volo-velle*) | e-ui.sb.(3) volent [pl.3] •• | ar-avi-atum.in.(1) accelerare
they-will-desire to-hasten

(sequor-sequi) | ĕr-cutus-sum.d.(3) consequentur ad [6] vesperam.
they-will-overtake (him) at evening.

O, [4] fortunatam ei.4 and 4 rempublicam, si quidem
O, fortunate republic, if indeed

(jicio–jicere)ĕr– | jeci–jectum.sb.4 ejecerit [3] •• æc.4 hanc 4 sentinam
she-may-have-cast-out this sink

æc.2 hujus bs–bis.2 urbis! es–is.6 Mehercule, 6 Catilinâ s.6 uno
of-this city! By-Hercules, Catiline alone

(r)ir–si– | stum.p.(4).6 exhausto, [part.] •• ei.1 and 1 respublica
being-drawn-off, (the) republic

| (d)ĕr–di–sum.p.(1) videtur [3] •• 3 mihi (1) •• ar–avi– | atum.p.(4).1 rele-
seems to-me re-

vata [part.] •• et ar–avi– | atum.p.(4).1 recreata. [part.] •• Enim
lieved and refreshed. For

id.1 quid m.2 mali aut us–eris.2 sceleris (sum–ess) | e–ui.(1) potest [3] ••
what evil or crime can

(g)ĕr–xi–ctum.p.in.(1) fingi aut | ar–avi–atum.p.in.(1) excogitari, od.4 quod
be-formed or devised, which

a.1 ille non (cipio–cipere)ĕr– | cepi–ceptum.sb.(4) conceperit. [3] ••
he 1 may not 1 have-conceived.

Lesson 86.

Quod exspectavi, jam sum assecutus, ut vos omnes, factam esse apertè conjurationem contra rempublicam, videretis. Nisi vero si quis est, qui Catilinæ similes cum Catilinâ sentire non putet. Non est jam lenitati locus; severitatem res ipsa flagitat. Unum etiam nunc concedam; exeant, proficiscantur, ne patiantur desiderio sui Catilinâm miserum tabescere; demonstrabo iter; Aureliâ viâ profectus est; si accelerare volent, ad vesperam consequentur. O fortunatam rempublicam, si quidem hanc sentinam hujus urbis ejecerit! Uno mehercule Catilinâ exhausto, relevata mihi et recreata respublica videtur. Quid enim mali aut sceleris fingi aut excogitari potest, quod non ille conceperit?

Exercises on Lessons 85 and 86.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Relevatus. Vides. Fingo. Excogitaverunt. Conceperit. Exeo. Proficiscor. Tabescit. Demonstravistis. Via. Profectus erat. Accelerabo. Vespera. Respublica.

Urbs. Ejicio. Expectabam. Apertè. Viderem. Similis. Putamus. Lenitas. Flagito. Concedo. Volo. Mavis. Vult.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Refreshed. Crime. To devise. To conceive. Fortunate. He casts out. Sink. City. I see. To the republic. To attain. I will wait for. A conspiracy. I have thought. He has felt. Place. Now. Mildness. He demands. They have conceded. He may depart. I suffer. Wretched. I have pointed it out. I wish. You do not wish. Evening.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Relevata mihi respublica videtur. Quid sceleris excogitari potest. Ne patiantur Catilinam miserum tabescere. Iter demonstravi. Urbe profectus est. Si accelerare nolent. Si hanc sentinam ejecerit. Quod expectavit assecutus est. Ut factam esse apertè conjurationem. Vos omnes videretis. Si quis est, qui non putet. Unum concedam.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

He has departed by the Aurelian way. If they will desire to hasten, they will overtake him. The republic seems to me relieved and refreshed. What crime can be devised, which he may not have conceived. There is not place for mildness. One thing I may concede. Let them not suffer Catiline to pine away. I will point out the way. I have attained what I expected. That a conspiracy has been formed against the republic.

Fero — I, &c., bear or *carry.* It has both an active and passive form. Excepting in the forms given below, it is conjugated regularly, like a verb of the third conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Indicative.	Present Infinitive.	Perfect Indicative.	Supine.
Fero,	Ferre,	Tuli,	Latum,
I-bear.	to-bear.	I-bore.	a-bearing.

Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"E." (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., bear.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
(1) Fero [1], I bear	o.
(1) Fers [2], thou bearest	s.
(1) Fert [3], he bears	t.
PLURAL.	
(1) Ferimus [pl. 1], we bear	imus.
(1) Fertis [pl. 2], you bear	tis.
(1) Ferunt [pl. 3], they bear	unt.

The irregularity is here in the second and third persons singular, and in the second person plural. The irregularity consists in the singular by omitting the *i* before *s* of the second person, and the *i* before *t* of the third person; in the plural, by omitting the *i* before *tis* of the second person. All the other tenses of the indicative active are formed regularly.

In the passive active present, the irregularity occurs in the second person singular, which has *ferris* or *ferre* in place of *fereris* or *ferere*, the *e* before *ris* and *re* being omitted; and in the third person singular, which has *fertur*, the *i* before *tur* being omitted. The second person plural, which has *ferimini*, is regular. All the other tenses and persons of the indicative passive are formed regularly from their principal parts.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

It is only the imperfect tense, subjunctive mood, that is irregular, and this consists in omitting *e* before *rem*, in all its

numbers and persons: as, *ferrem* in place of *fererem*. The same omission of *e* takes place in all the numbers and persons of the passive subjunctive imperfect tense, which has *ferrer* for *fererer*. All the other tenses and persons of the subjunctive, both active and passive, are formed regularly.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The imperative mood has, in the second person active, *fer* for *fere*, and *ferto* for *ferito*, in the third person, *ferto* for *ferito*; in the plural, in the second person, *ferte* for *ferite*, *fertote* for *feritote*; the third person plural, *ferunto*, is regular. The imperative passive voice, in the singular, in the second person, has *ferre* for *ferere*, and *fertor* for *feritor*, and, in the third person, *fertor* for *feritor*; in the second person plural, *ferimini* is regular, as is also *feruntor*, in the third person.

INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has, in the present tense active, *ferre* for *ferere*, and, in the present tense passive, *ferri* for *feri*. All the other tenses, both active and passive, are regular, according to the principal parts they are derived from.

The participles, gerunds, and supine, are all formed regularly, according to the principal parts they are derived from.

The compounds of *fero*, which are of frequent occurrence, are conjugated like *fero*.

Fio—to be made or *to become*, has partly the active form, and partly the passive form; but, in all its forms, it has a passive meaning, being used as the passive of *facio—I make*. If the *i* of *fio* be considered as a part of its root, it will then belong to the third conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Indicative.	Present Infinitive.	Perfect Participle.
Fio,	Fieri,	Factus,
I-am-made.	to-be-made.	made.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*Ĕr.*" *p.* (1) *Present Tense.*

SINGULAR.	Terminations.
p. (1) Fio [1], I am made	o.
p. (1) Fis [2], thou art made	s.
p. (1) Fit [3], he is made	t.
PLURAL.	
p. (1) Fimus [pl. 1], we are made	mus.
p. (1) Fitis [pl. 2], you are made	tis.
p. (1) Fiunt [pl. 3], they are made	unt.

The irregularity here consists in the second and third persons singular, and in the first and second persons plural. The *i* of the terminations *is* and *it*, in the singular, being omitted, for the *i* here belongs to the root of the verb. So, also, the *i* of the terminations *imus*, *itis*, is omitted in the plural.

The imperfect and future tenses indicative are regular, as are, also, the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive.

The perfect, pluperfect, and perfect future tenses of the indicative, have the regular passive form, as derived from *factus:* as, *factus sum* or *fui*—*I have been made.* The perfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive have also the same regular passive form, derived from *factus:* as, *factis sim* or *fuerim*—*I may have been made.*

The imperative mood has, in the second person singular, *fi* in place of *fie*, and *fito* in place of *fiito;* and, in the third person, *fito* in place of *fiito;* in the plural, in the second person, it has *fite* for *fiite*, and *fitote* for *fiitote. Fiunto*, in the third person plural, is regular.

The infinitive has *fieri* in place of *fiere*, in the present

tense; in the perfect it has, regularly, *factus esse* or *fuisse*, and in the future, regularly, *factum iri.*

There is no present participle. The perfect participle, *factus*, and the future, *faciendus*, are both regular.

The supine in *u* is regular, *factu.*

The compounds of *facio* that retain the *a* have *fio* for their passive; but those that change *a* into *i* form their passives regularly. Though the defectives, *confit — it is done; defit — it is wanting; infit — he begins*, occur.

Edo—I eat, edĕre—to eat, edi—I have eaten, esum—an eating, is a regular verb of the third conjugation. Its irregularity consists in taking, with the regular forms, some of the forms of *sum—I am*, in some of the moods, and in a few of the tenses: as in the indicative present.

"ĔR." SINGULAR. Terminations.

(1) Edo [1], I eat.. o.
(1) Edis *or* es [2], thou eatest.. is *or* es.
(1) Edit *or* est [3], he eats.. it *or* est.

PLURAL.

(1) Edimus [pl. 1], we eat.. imus.
(1) Editis *or* estis [pl. 2], you eat.................................. itis *or* estis.
(1) Edunt [pl. 3], they eat... unt.

"Ĕr." sb. (2) *In the Subjunctive, imperfect tense.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (2) Ederem *or* essem [1], I might eat......................... erem *or* essem.
sb. (2) Ederes *or* esses [2], thou mightst eat.................... eres *or* esses.
sb. (2) Ederet *or* esset [3], he might eat......................... eret *or* esset.

PLURAL.

sb. (2) Ederemus *or* essemus [pl. 1], we might eat...... eremus *or* essemus.
sb. (2) Ederetis *or* essetis [pl. 2], you might eat......... eretis *or* essetis.
sb. (2) Ederent *or* essent [pl. 3], they might eat......... erent *or* essent.

"Ĕr." Im. In the Imperative Mood.

SINGULAR.

im. Ede *or* es, edito *or* esto [2], eat thou..................... e *or* es, ito *or* esto.
im. Edito *or* esto [3], let him eat................................ ito *or* esto.

PLURAL. Terminations.

im. Edite *or* este, editote *or* estote [pl. 2], eat ye...ite *or* este, itote *or* estote.
im. Edunto [pl. 3], let them eat........................ unto.

in. (1) In the infinitive, in the present tense, edere *or* esse.

In the passive voice, *editur* or *estur*, in the third person present indicative, and *ederetur* or *essetur*, in the imperfect subjunctive passive, are used.

In all the other moods and tenses, the parts of *sum* are not used in place of the regular conjugation.

Eo—I go, is a verb of the fourth conjugation. It is irregular in all the moods and tenses formed from the first principal part, but regular in those moods and tenses formed from the second and third principal parts.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Indicative.	Present Infinitive.	Perfect Indicative.	Supine.
Eo,	Ire,	Ivi,	Itum,
I-go.	to-go.	I-have-gone.	a-going.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Ir." (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., go.*

SINGULAR. Terminations.

(1) Eo [1], I go.. o.
(1) Is [2], thou goest .... is.
(1) It [3], he goes... it.

PLURAL.

(1) Imus [pl. 1], we go.. imus.
(1) Itis [pl. 2], you go... itis.
(1) Eunt [pl. 3], they go... unt.

Here all the numbers and persons are irregular. The second and third persons singular, and the first and second

persons plural, are irregular by omitting the root of the verb *e*, and retaining only the terminations of numbers and persons. The third person plural is irregular by omitting the *i* of the fourth conjugation; it having *eunt* in place of *eiunt*. The first person singular might also be considered as irregular, for it wants the characteristic *i* of the fourth conjugation.

The imperfect tense is also irregular in all its numbers and persons, for it consists only of the terminations of the fourth conjugation, and omits the root of the verb: as, *ibam*, &c., for *eibam*.

The present tense, subjunctive mood, is irregular by omitting the characteristic *i* of the fourth conjugation, it having *eam*, &c., in place of *eiam*.

The imperfect tense, subjunctive mood, is irregular by having only the terminations of the imperfect subjunctive, without the root of the verb: as, *irem*, &c., for *eirem*, &c.

The imperative is irregular by omitting the root of the verb, *e*, and only having the terminations of the imperative, fourth conjugation, in the second and third persons singular, and second person plural: as, *i*, &c., for *ei*, &c. The third person plural is irregular by the omission of the characteristic *i* of the fourth conjugation, having *eunto* in place of *eiunto*.

The infinitive present is irregular by only having the termination of the fourth conjugation, without the root: as, *ire* for *eire*.

The present participle is irregular by having only the terminations of the fourth conjugation in its nominative singular, without the root: as, *iens* for *eiens*. The genitive thereof is *euntis*, irregular.

The gerunds are irregular, they having *eundi*, &c., in place of *eiendi*, &c.

In the passive voice, there is the infinitive, *iri*. The third persons are sometimes used in the passive: as, *itur*.

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated like *eo*.

Queo—I can, and *nequeo—I cannot*, are conjugated like *eo*. They want the imperative mood and gerunds.

Four verbs, in the imperative, often reject the final *e*. They are *dic—say*, *duc—lead*, *fac—make* or *do*, *fer—carry*. So, also, do their compounds, except those compounds of *facio* which change *a* into *i*: as, *perfice—accomplish*. Here the *e* is retained.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective verbs are those which are only used in some moods, tenses, numbers, or persons. The following is a list of the principal verbs of this class:

1. Odi; I hate.
2. Cœpi; I have begun.
3. Memini; I remember.
4. Aio; I say.
5. Inquam; I say.
6. Fari; to speak.
7. Quæso; I pray.
8. Ave; hail.
9. Salve; hail.
10. Apage; begone.
11. Cedo; tell *or* give way.
12. Confit; it is done.
13. Defit; it is wanting.
14. Infit; he begins.
15. Ovat; he rejoices.
16. Novi; I know.

Odi—I hate, *memini—I remember*, and *novi—I know*, though in the perfect tense, have the sense of the present; in the pluperfect tense, they have the meaning of the imperfect; in the perfect future, they have the meaning of the simple future.

Lesson 87.

s.1 Divitiacus (cio–ĕre) | ĕr–*feci*–ctum.(1) facit [3] •• m.pl.4 verba pro
Divitiacus | makes words [spoke] for

ii.pl.6 his (nam post ûs.4 discessum pl.2 Belgarum, pl.6 copiis
these (for after (the) departure ¹of (the) ¹Belgæ, (the) forces

s.pl.2 Æduorum (mitt)ĕr–misi– | missum.p.(4).pl.6 dimissis, [part.] ••
¹of (the) ¹Ædui being-dismissed,

(t)ĕr– | ti–sum.(5) reverterat [3] •• ad is.4 eum)
he-had-returned to him [Cæsar]) "(that)

s.pl.4 "Bellovacos e–is.6 omni us–oris.6 tempore (sum–esse).e– | ui.in.(4) fuisse
(the) Bellovaci at-all times have-been

in ei.6 fide atque 6 amicitiâ 2 Æduæ
in (the) bonds-of-fidelity and in-friendship 1 with (the) 1 Æduan

as–atis.2 civitatis; (pell)ĕr–puli– | pulsum.(4).s.pl.4 impulsos [part.] •• à s.pl.6 suis
state; impelled by their

eps–ipis.pl.6 principibus, qui | (c)ĕr–xi–ctum.sb.(2) dicerent [pl.3] ••
chiefs, who said (that)

s.pl.4 Æduos, (ig)ĕr–egi– | actum.p.(4).s.pl.4 redactos [part.] •• in
(the) Ædui, reduced to

us–utis.4 servitutem (*f.*) •• à r–ris.6 Cæsare,
slavery by Cæsar, (had)

(fero–ferre) | e–tuli–latum.in.(1) perferre is–is.pl.4 omnes as–atis.pl.4 indignitates
to-endure all indignities

que pl.4 contumelias, et
and contumelies, and (that) they [the Bellovaci]

(icio–icere).ĕr– | eci–ectum.in.(4) defecisse ab s.pl.6 Æduis, et
had-fallen-off from (the) Ædui, and

(fero–ferre).e– | tuli–latum.in.(4) intulisse m.4 bellum s.3 Romano
had-brought-on war 1 against (the) 1 Roman

s.3 populo. ui.pl.1 Qui (*sum–esse*).e– | *fui*.sb.(5) fuissent [pl.3] •
people. (Those) who had-been

ceps–cipis.pl.1 principes oc.2 hujus m.2 consilii, quòd
(the) leaders (in) this advice, as

| (lig)ĕr–lexi–lectum.sb.(2) intelligerent [pl.3] •• 4 quantam
they-understood how-great

as–atis.4 calamitatem (fero–ferre).e– | tuli–latum.sb.(5) intulissent [pl.3] ••
(a) calamity they-had-brought-on

as–atis.3 civitati (gio–gĕre).ĕr– | gi–gitum.in.(5) profugisse in 4 Britanniam.
(the) state fled into Britain.

Non solùm s.pl.4 Bellovacos | ĕr–ivi *or* ii–itum.in.(1) petere,
(That) not only (the) Bellovaci entreated,

sed etiam s.pl.4 Æduos pro ic.pl.6 his, ut
but (that) also (the) Ædui for them, that

(or–i). | ĕr–usus.d.sb.(1) utatur [3] •• 6 suâ 6 clementiâ ac
he-would-use his clemency and

do–dinis.6 mansuetudine in is.pl.4 eos. od.4 Quod, si
mildness towards them. Which, if

(*facio–facĕre*).ĕr– | *feci–factum*.(6) fecerit [3] •• | ar–avi–atum.(3).m.1 amplifica-
he-do-it would-be-

turum [part.] ••   [as-atis.4] auctoritatem   [s.pl.2] Æduorum   apud
enlarging   (the) authority   [1] of (the) [1] Ædui   among

[is-is.pl.4] omnes   [pl.4] Belgas;   [m.pl.6] auxiliis   atque   [ps-pis.pl.6] opibus
all   (the) Belgæ;   [1] by (the) [1] aid   and   resources

[ui.pl.2] quorum   [(esc)ĕr- | evi-etum.sb.(4)] consueverint [pl.3] ••
of-whom   they-have-been-accustomed

[| ar-avi-atum.in.(1)] sustentare,   si   [id.pl.1] qua   [m.pl.1] bella
to-sustain (themselves),   if   any   wars

[(cid)ĕr- | cidi-casum.sb.(4)] inciderint." [pl.3] ••
may-have-happened."

Lesson 88.

Pro his Divitiacus (nam post discessum Belgarum, dimissis Æduorum copiis, ad eum reverterat) facit verba; "Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitiâ civitatis Æduæ fuisse; impulsos à suis principibus, qui dicerent Æduos à Cæsare in servitutem redactos, omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Æduis defecisse, et populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui hujus consilii principes fuissent, quòd intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solùm Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Æduos, ut suâ clementiâ ac mansuetudine in eos utatur: quod si fecerit, Æduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consueverint."

Exercises on Lessons 87 and 88.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Pete. Mansuetudo. Utor. Facio. Amplificaturus. Ops. Incido. Sustentaverunt. Consuesco. Princeps. Intellexit. Civitas. Intulit. Profugio. Quantus. Discessus. Dimissus. Copiæ. Reverto. Fecit. Tempus. Fides. Impello. Dico. Servitus. Redigere. Pertulerunt. Deficio. Infero.

20 *

English words to be translated into Latin.

He has sustained himself. I am accustomed. Resources. Chiefs. I understand. Calamity. They have fled. Only. I entreat. They use. Mildness. We do or make. Ye have enlarged. Time. State. I have impelled. He may say. He will reduce. Slavery. Ye fall off. He has brought it on. Thou makest. Departure. Forces. I dismiss. He will return.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Qui principes sunt. Calamitatem civitati infert. Id non intelligo. In Britanniam profugiunt. Bellovacos petere, ut suâ clementiâ utatur. Quod si fecerit. Æduorum auctoritatem amplificaturum. Quorum opibus sustentare consueverint. Divitiacus post discessum Belgarum ad eum reverterat. Omni tempore in fide civitatis fuisse. In servitutem redactos omnes contumelias perferre.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

By the resources of whom they have been accustomed to sustain themselves. If any wars may have happened. They understood how great a calamity they had brought on the state. The leaders fled into Britain. The Ædui entreated for them. It would be enlarging the authority of the Ædui among all the Belgæ. Impelled by their chiefs. That the Ædui were reduced to slavery. The Bellovaci had brought on war against the Roman people. He spoke for them. Divitiacus had returned to Cæsar.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

When a participle is compounded with the verb *sum*, to form a tense, such compound tense is often termed a periphrastic one. The participles thus compounded are, the perfect or past passive, *amatus:* as, *amatus sum — I have been*

loved; the future active participle, *scripturus:* as, *scripturus sum — I am about to write;* and the future passive, *amandus:* as, *amandus sum — I must be loved.* The perfect or past passive participle is used, as has been stated in the conjugations above, to form the tenses of the passive voice derived from the second and third principal parts. When this past participle is used merely as a part of the compound tense, to indicate time, then either *sum* or *fui*, *eram* or *fueram*, *ero* or *fuero*, may be used; but, generally, *sum*, *eram*, and *ero*, are used, in this case, in the indicative mood, and *sim*, *essem*, in the subjunctive. But, when the perfect passive participle is used in its proper sense of adjective participle, and qualifies the noun, as, *epistola scripta fuit — the written letter was*, that is, it once existed, then, in this case, *fuit* alone would be used to denote the past; for *epistola scripta est* would denote the perfect tense passive — *the letter has been written.*

FUTURE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The future active participle, combined with the tenses of *sum*, denotes intention, or being about or on the point of doing something. When the future periphrastic conjugation is to be particularly designated, *f.* is placed in the parentheses, before the numbers denoting tense: as, (f.1) *amaturus sum*[1] — *I am about to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

(*f.* 1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am about to love.*

SINGULAR.

(f. 1) Amaturus sum [1], I am about to love.
(f. 1) Amaturus es [2], thou art about to love.
(f. 1) Amaturus est [3], he is about to love.

PLURAL.

(f. 1) Amaturi sumus [pl. 1], we are about to love.
(f. 1) Amaturi estis [pl. 2], you are about to love.
(f. 1) Amaturi sunt [pl. 3], they are about to love.

(f. 2) Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was about to love.

SINGULAR.

(f. 2) Amaturus eram [1], I was about to love.
&c., &c.

(f. 3) Future Tense. I, &c., shall be about to love.

SINGULAR.

(f. 3) Amaturus ero [1], I shall be about to love.
&c., &c.

(f. 4) Perfect Tense. I, &c., have been about to love.

SINGULAR.

(f. 4) Amaturus fui [1], I have been about to love.
&c., &c.

(f. 5) Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had been about to love.

SINGULAR.

(f. 5) Amaturus fueram [1], I had been about to love.
&c., &c.

(f. 6) Perfect Future. I, &c., shall have been about to love [but it is very seldom used].

SINGULAR.

(f. 6) Amaturus fuero [1], I shall have been about to love.
&c., &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

sb. (f. 1) Present Tense. I, &c., may be about to love.

SINGULAR.

sb. (f. 1) Amaturus sim [1], I may be about to love.
&c., &c.

sb. (f. 2) Imperfect Tense. I, &c., would be about to love.

SINGULAR.

sb. (f. 2) Amaturus essem [1], I would be about to love.
&c., &c.

sb. (f. 4) Perfect Tense. I, &c., may have been about to love.

SINGULAR.

sb. (f. 4) Amaturus fuerim [1], I may have been about to love.
&c., &c.

sb. (f. 5) Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., would have been about to love.

SINGULAR.

sb. (f. 5) Amaturus fuissem [1], I would have been about to love.
&c., &c.

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

in. (1) Present Tense.

in. (f. 1) Amaturus esse, to be about to love.

in. (4) Perfect Tense.

in. (f. 4) Amaturus fuisse, to have been about to love.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION OF NECESSITY.

The future passive participle in *dus*, combined with the tenses of *sum*, denotes the necessity or propriety of the action to be done, or the necessity or propriety of doing the action

When the periphrastic conjugation of necessity is to be particularly designated, *n* is placed in the parentheses before the numbers denoting tense: as, (n.1) *amandus sum* [1], *I must be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

(n. 1) Present Tense. I, &c., must be loved.

SINGULAR.

(n. 1) Amandus sum [1], I must be loved.
(n. 1) Amandus es [2], thou must be loved.
(n. 1) Amandus est [3], he must be loved.

PLURAL.

(n. 1) Amandi sumus [pl. 1], we must be loved.
(n. 1) Amandi estis [pl. 2], you must be loved.
(n. 1) Amandi sunt [pl. 3], they must be loved.

(n. 2) Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was to be loved.

SINGULAR.

(n. 2) Amandus eram [1], I was to be loved.
&c., &c.

(*n.* 3) *Future Tense. I, &c., must hereafter be loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 3) Amandus ero [1], I must hereafter be loved.
&c., &c.

(*n.* 4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., must have been loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 4) Amandus fui [1], I must have been loved.
&c., &c.

(*n.* 5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., must had been loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 5) Amandus fueram [1], I must had been loved.
&c., &c.

(*n.* 6) *Perfect Future. I, &c., must hereafter have been loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 6) Amandus fuero [1], I must hereafter have been loved.
&c., &c.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

sb. (*n.* 1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may necessarily or properly be loved.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (n. 1) Amandus sim [1], I may necessarily or properly be loved.
&c., &c.

sb. (*n.* 2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., might necessarily or properly be loved.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (n. 2) Amandus essem [1], I might necessarily or properly be loved.
&c., &c.

sb. (*n.* 4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., may necessarily have been loved.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (n. 4) Amandus fuerim [1], I may necessarily have been loved.
&c., &c.

sb. (*n.* 5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., might necessarily have been loved.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (n. 5) Amandus fuissem [1], I might necessarily have been loved.
&c., &c.

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

in. (*n.* 1) *Present Tense.*

in. (n. 1) Amandus esse, necessary to be loved.

in. (*n.* 4) *Perfect Tense.*

in. (n. 4) Amandus fuisse, necessary to have been loved.

The above form of necessity may also have another form by putting the participle in the neuter, and the agent, which in English is in the nominative, in the dative: as, *mihi scribendum est—to me it is necessary to write*, that is, *I must* or *am obliged to write; mihi scribendum erat—I was obliged to write; mihi scribendum erit—I shall be obliged to write;* and, in like manner, through all the tenses, as above — the verb *sum* being always in the third person.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs, strictly speaking, are those which are only used in the third person singular: as, *decet—it becomes, pluit—it rains,* &c.

Lesson 89.

Nunc, [id.1] quidquid [(sum-esse) | e-ui.(1)] est [3] •• quocunque
Now, whatever it-is (or) whithersoever

[er pl.1] vestræ [ns-ntis.pl.1] mentes atque [pl.1] sententiæ
your minds and opinions

[| ar-avi-atum.(1)] inclinant [pl.3] •• [| ĕr-i-tum.(n.1)] statuendum est [3] ••
incline it-must-be-determined

[3] vobis [(2)] •• ante [x-ctis.4] noctem. [| (d)ĕr-di-sum.(1)] Videtis [pl.2] ••
by-you before night. You-see

[m.1] quantum [us-oris.1] facinus [(fero-ferre).e-tuli-| latum.p.sb.(4)] delatum sit [3] ••
how-great (a) crime | has-been-brought

ad [pl.4] vos; [(2)] •• si
to you [has been reported to you]; if

[| are-avi-atum.(1)] putatis [pl.2] •• [s.pl.4] paucos [(sum-esse), e-ui.in.(1)] esse
you-think (that) few are

is-is.pl.4 affines ic.pl.3 huic | ar-avi-atum.(1) erratis [pl.2] ••
partakers (in) this (affair) you-err

vehementer. oc.1 Hoc m.1 malum
greatly. This evil

ar-avi- | atum.p.(4) disseminatum est [3] •• latius io-ionis.6 opinione
has-been-disseminated more-widely | (than) opinion

ar- | avi-atum.(4) manavit [3] •• non solùm per
[than is supposed] it-has-flowed not only through

4 Italiam, verùm etiam (d)ĕr- | di-sum.(4) transcendit [3] ••
Italy, but also has-passed-over

es-ium.pl.4 Alpes, et | ĕr-si-tum.(1).ns-ntis.1 serpens [part.] •• obscure
(the) Alps, and creeping obscurely

jam ar- | avi-atum.(4) occupavit [3] •• pl.4 multas pl.4 provincias.
1 has already 1 occupied many provinces.

id.1 Id (sum-est) | e-ui.(1) potest [3] •• m.6 nullo m.6 pacto
It can by-no means

| (im)ĕr-essi-essum.p.in.(1) opprimi | ar-avi-atum.6 sustentando [ger.] •• ac
be-suppressed by-enduring (it) and

| ar-avi-atum.6 prolatando [ger.] •• uæ.6 quâcunque
by-putting-off (the time of action) by-whatever

ionis.6 ratione | ĕr-ui-itum.(1) placet [3] •• | ar-avi-atum.(n.1) vindican-
means it-pleases it-must-be

dum est [3] •• 3 vobis (2) •• celeriter. | (d)ĕr-di-sum.(1) Video [1] ••
punished (by) you speedily. I-perceive

adhuc (sum-esse) | e-ui.in.(1) esse pl.4 duas pl.4 sententias;
(that) as-yet there-are (but) two opinions;

4 unam D. s.2 Silani, ui.1 qui | ĕr-ui-um.(1) censet, [3] ••
(namely) (the) one of-D. Silani, who is-of-opinion,

is.pl.4 eos, ui.pl 1 qui (conor-conari).ar- | atus.d.(4) conati sunt [pl.3] ••
(that) those, who have-endeavored

| ĕr evi-etum.in.(1) delere oc.pl.4 hæc | ar-avi-atum.(n.in.1) multandos esse
to-destroy these (things) ought-to-be-punished

rs-rtis.6 morte; 4 alteram C. r-ris.2 Cæsaris, qui
with-death; (the) other of-C. Cæsar, who

1 (v)ĕr-vi-tum.(1) removet [3] •• 4 pœnam rs-rtis.2 mortis,
removes (the) penalty of-death, (but)

| ector-ecti).ĕr-exus.d.(1) amplectitur [3] •• is-is.pl.4 omnes as-atis.pl.4 acerbitates
embraces all (the) bitterness

m.pl.2 ceterorum m.pl.2 suppliciorum. er.1 Uterque
of-other punishments. Each

[ar–avi–atum.d.(1)] versatur [3] ••	in	[6] summâ	[as–atis.6] severitate,
is-occupied	(with)	(the) greatest	severity,

et	pro	[6] suâ	[as–atis.6] dignitate,	et	pro
both	for	his-own	dignity,	and	for

[do–dinis.6] magnitudine (*f.*) ••	[ei.pl.2] rerum.
(the) magnitude	[1] of (the) [1] affair.

Lesson 90.

Nunc, quidquid est, quocunque vestræ mentes inclinant atque sententiæ, statuendum vobis ante noctem est. Quantum facinus ad vos delatum sit, videtis; huic si paucos putatis affines esse, vehementer erratis. Latius opinione disseminatum est hoc malum; manavit non solùm per Italiam, verùm etiam transcendit Alpes, et obscure serpens, multas jam provincias occupavit. Id opprimi sustentando ac prolatando, nullo pacto potest. Quâcunque ratione placet, celeriter vobis vindicandum est. Video duas adhuc esse sententias; unam D. Silani, qui censet, eos, qui hæc delere conati sunt, morte esse multandos; alteram C. Cæsaris, qui mortis pœnam removet, ceterorum suppliciorum omnes acerbitates amplectitur. Uterque et pro suâ dignitate, et pro rerum magnitudine in summâ severitate versatur.

Exercises on Lessons 89 and 90.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Videtis. Sententia. Censeo. Delevit. Conor. Mors. Multare. Pœna. Removeo. Supplicium. Acerbitas. Versor. Quocunque. Mens. Inclinavit. Nox. Facinus. Delatum est. Videbo. Putavere. Pauci. Erravi. Vehementer. Disseminatum erat. Manavit. Transcendo. Serpens. Prolato. Pactum. Placet. Vindicabo.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Bitterness. He is occupied. By putting off. It pleases. Speedily. I have perceived. As yet. Opinion. They are of opinion. He had endeavored. Penalty. Embraces. I

have thought. They have erred. Evil. More widely. It flows. They have passed over. Whatever. Obscurely. Already. To be suppressed. Whithersoever. Minds. Night. Crime. How great. They see.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Uterque in summâ severite versatur. Censet eos morte esse multandos. Mortis pœnam removet. Omnes amplectitur. Statuendum vobis ante noctem est. Quocunque mentes inclinant. Quantum facinus ad vos delatum erat. Latius disseminatum est hoc malum. Manavit per Italiam. Transcendit Alpes. Serpens multas provincias occupavit. Id opprimi nullo pacto potest. Quacunque placet.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

It embraces all the bitterness of other punishments. By whatever means it pleases you. It must be punished by you speedily. I perceive that there are two opinions. They have endeavored to destroy these things. They ought to be punished with death. You think that few are partakers in this affair. This evil has been disseminated more widely than is supposed. It has already occupied many provinces. Whithersoever your minds and opinions incline. It must be determined by you before night.

PARTICLES.

The parts of speech that are not inflected are termed *particles.* They are Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

ADVERBS.

As adjectives qualify nouns, so do adverbs qualify adjectives and verbs: as, *felix homo—a happy man; feliciter vivit — he lives happily.*

Adverbs are either primitive or derivative. The number of derivative adverbs is very great, formed from the different parts of speech; but especially from adjectives, which last generally end in *e* or *ter*.

Adverbs derived from adjectives or participles admit of the degrees of comparison, the comparative being denoted by *ius*, the neuter of the comparative of adjectives: as, *facile— easily; facilius — more easily*. The superlative of adverbs is formed by changing the terminating syllable, *us*, of the superlative of adjectives, into *e*: as, *doctissimus — most learned; doctisseme — most learnedly*.

Should it be required to denote the adverb in the comparative degree, it may be done by placing *ad.* before the (*c.*) in parentheses, after the adverb: as, *facilius* (*ad.c.*). So, in like manner, *ad.* may be placed before *s.*, denoting the superlative: as, *doctissime* (*ad.s.*)

PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions govern either the accusative or ablative case. The following prepositions govern the accusative: —

Ad; to, for, at.
Adversum, Adversus; } against.
Ante; before.
Apud; with, at, among.
Circa, Circum; } around, about.
Circiter; about, near.
Cis, Citra; } on this side.
Contra; against, opposite.
Erga; towards.
Extra; without, beyond.
Infra; beneath, under.
Inter; among, between.
Intra; within.

Juxta; near.
Ob; on account of, for.
Penes; in the power of.
Per; through, by, during.
Pone; behind.
Post; after, since.
Præter; beyond, except.
Prope; nigh, beside.
Propter; on account of, near.
Secundum; according to.
Supra; above.
Trans; beyond, over.
Versus; towards (put after the noun).
Ultra; beyond.

The following prepositions govern the ablative: —

A, Ab, Abs; from, by (*ā* is used before consonants, *ab* before vowels, and *abs* before *t* or *q*.
Absque; without.
Coram; before, in the presence of.
Cum; with.
De; of, concerning, from.
E, Ex; from, of, out of (*ē* is used only before consonants; *ex*, before either vowels or consonants).
Palam; before, with the knowledge of.
Præ; before, for, on account of.
Pro; before, for.
Sine; without.
Tenus; as far as, up to (is put after the noun).

The following prepositions govern either the accusative or ablative: —

Clam; without the knowledge of.
In; in, *ab;* into, *ac.*
Sub; near, towards, *ac;* under, *ab.*
Super; above, over, *ac;* upon, *ab.*
Subter; beneath, under.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions connect words and sentences, and are usually classed under various heads.

The conjunctions, *que* — *and*, *ve* — *or*, and *ne* — *whether*, *or*, in the interrogative sense, are always added to the end of the word.

INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are mere exclamatory particles, used to express some emotion of the mind.

Lesson 91.

Itaque 4 se (3) •• ar–avi– | atum.(3).s.4 repræsentaturum, [part.] ••
Therefore (that) he was-about-immediately-performing,

quod (*confero*–ferre)e–*contuli*– | *collatum*.sb.(f.2) collaturus esset [3] •• in
(that) which he-was-about-to-defer unto

or–oris.4 longiorem ei.4 diem; et 6 proximâ x–tis.6 nocte de
(a) more-distant day; and on-the-following night at

6 quartâ 6 vigiliâ (v)ēr–vi– | tum.(3).s.4 moturum [part.] •• m.pl.4 castra,
(the) fourth watch (he) would-be-about-moving (the) camp,

ut (sum–esse) | e–ui.sb.(2) posset [3] •• quamprimùm
that he-might-be-able as-soon-as-possible

(ig)ĕr–exi–ectum.in.(1) intelligere, utrùm or–oris.1 pudor atque
to-understand, whether shame and

m.1 officium, an or–oris.1 timor | ĕr–ui.itum.sb.(2) valeret [3] •• plùs
duty, or fear would-prevail most

apud is.pl.4 eos. Quòd si o.inis.1 nemo præterea
with them. But if no-one besides

(quor–qui) | ĕr–cutus.d.sb.(1) sequatur, [3] •• tamen se
should-follow, yet (that) he

(eo–iri)–ivi– | itum.(3).s.4 iturum [part.] •• cum 6 decimâ
| would-be-going [would depart] with (the) tenth

io–ionis.6 legione (*f.*) •• 6 solâ, de ua quâ non
legion alone, of which he-[1] did not

| ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) dubitaret; [3] •• que· ea.4 eam
[1] doubt; and (that) it

(*sum–esse*)–e–ui.(3).4 futuram [part.] •• 4 prætoriam rs–rtis.4 cohortem
was-about-being (a) prætorian cohort

3 sibi·." (1) •• Cæsar præcipuè (g)ĕr– | si–tum.(5) indulserat [3] ••
to-himself." Cæsar [1] had especially [1] indulged

æc.3 huic io–inis.3 legioni (*f.*) •• et (id)ĕr–idi *or* issus.sum.(2) confidebat [3] ••
this legion and he-did-confide

maximè propter us–utis.4 virtutem. (*f.*) ••
(in it) chiefly on-account-of (its) valor.

æ.6 Hâc io–ionis.6 oratione (*f.*) •• ĕr–ui– | itum.(4).6 habitâ [part.] ••
This speech | being-had [being made]

ns–ntis.pl.1 mentes is–is–pl.2 omnium (t)ĕr–ti–| sum.p.(4) conversæ sunt [pl.3] ••
(the) minds of-all were-changed

in s.4 mirum s.4 modum, que· 1 summa· as–atis.1 alacritas
in (a) wonderful manner, and (the) greatest alacrity

et as–atis.1 cupiditas m.2 belli | (r)ĕr–ssi–stum.p.(3).m.2 gerendi [part.] ••
and eagerness (for a) war (that it was) necessary-to-wage

[*nascor–nasci*)ĕr–natus–sum.d.(4) innata est; [3] •• que· 1 decima
sprung-up (in them); and (the) tenth

io–ionis.1 legio (*f.*) •• ceps–cĭpis.1 princeps· *ago–agĕre–* | *egi–actum*(4) egit [3] ••
legion first acted

pl.4 gratias is.3 ei per s.pl.4 tribunos
thanks [returned thanks] to-him through (the) tribunes

es–its.pl.2 militum, quòd *facio–facĕre–* | *feci–factum*.sb.(5) fecisset [3] ••
[1] of (the) [1] soldiers, because | he-had-made [had

m.4 optimum (*bonus, s.*) m.4 judicium de 6 se, (3) ••
formed] (the) best opinion of it,

que	ar- | avi-atum.4 confirmavit,[3] ••			4 se· (3) ••
and	assured	(him),	(that)	it
(*sum-esse*) | e-ui.in.(1) esse	4 paratissimam	ad		m.4 bellum
was	most-ready	for		(the) war
| (r)ĕr-ssi-stum.p.(3).m.4 gerendum.[part.] ••				
that-ought-to-be-waged.				

Lesson 92.

Itaque se, quod in longiorem diem collaturus esset, repræsentaturum, et proximâ nocte de quartâ vigiliâ castra moturum, ut quamprimùm intelligere posset, utrùm apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor, plus valeret. Quòd si præterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum solâ decimâ legione iturum, de quâ non dubitaret, sibique eam prætoriam cohortem futuram." Huic legioni Cæsar et indulserat præcipuè, et propter virtutem, confidebat maximè. Hâc oratione habitâ, mirum in modum conversæ sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est: princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quòd de se optimum judicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit.

Exercises on Lessons 91 and 92.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Mirum. Conversus est. Alacritas. Gero. Princeps. Gratiæ. Optimus. Faciunt. Paratus. Itaque. Longior. Confero. Proximus. Nox. Vigilia. Moveo. Intellexit. Pudor. Timor. Præterea. Sequor. Iturus. Dubitabam. Cohors. Indulserat. Propter. Præcipuè.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Minds. Manner. The highest or greatest. Eagerness. Thanks. He has made. Judgment or opinion. Most ready. No one. Besides. I follow. Alone. You doubt.

He had indulged. He did trust. Especially. The nearest. He moves. I had understood. Shame. Whether. Duty. Fear. More. It prevailed.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quod si nemo sequatur. Tamen se iturum. De quâ non dubito. Huic legioni Cæsar confidebat maximè. Hâc oratione habitâ. Conversæ sunt omnium mentes. Summa alacritas innata est. Decima legio ei gratias egit. Se esse paratissimum. Quod in longiorem diem collaturus esset. Se proximâ nocte castra moturum. Ut intelligere posset. Utrùm pudor an timor plus valeret.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

The minds were changed in a wonderful manner. The greatest eagerness sprung up in them. He returned thanks to him. He had formed the best opinion of it. Whether duty or fear would prevail most with them. That he would depart with the tenth legion alone. Chiefly on account of its valor. Having made this speech. That which he was about to defer unto a more distant day. That he might be able as soon as possible to understand.

SYNTAX.

In this introductory course, it will only be necessary to give the essential and leading rules of Syntax.

Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles agree with the noun which they qualify, in number, gender, and case: as, *bonus vir—a good man.* When the adjective belongs to two or more nouns it is put in the plural. When the two or more nouns denote persons, and are in different genders,

the adjectives are put in the masculine rather than in the feminine gender. When such two or more nouns in different genders denote things without life, the adjective is generally put in the neuter gender. When one noun denotes an animate, and the other an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, or it sometimes takes the gender of the animate noun. An adjective often agrees in number and gender with the noun placed nearest to it, and may be considered as understood with the rest.

Relatives agree with the nouns to which they relate in gender and number only.

The verb agrees with its nominative in number and person: as, *nos legimus—we read.* Two or more nominatives singular have generally a plural verb, though not always. When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last nominative. A nominative singular joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum—with*, has sometimes a plural verb. When the nominatives are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person in preference to the second, and with the second person in preference to the third.

A noun, following a neuter or passive verb, is put in the same case as the nominative of the verb, when such noun denotes the same person or thing as the nominative: as, *ego incedo regina—I walk a queen.*

Lesson 93.

Nunc [s.pl.5] conscripti [er–ris.pl.5] patres, ut
Now O conscript fathers, that

[| ar–avi–atum.d.sb.(1)] detester [1] •• ac [| ar–avi–atum.d.sb.(1)] deprecer [1] ••
I-may-turn-from and may-deprecate

à [6] me [(1)] •• [uæ.4] quandam, propè [4] justam [4] quærimoniam
from me (a) certain, almost just complaint

[2] patriæ; [(ipio–ipĕre) | ĕr–epi–eptum.im.] percipite [pl.2] •• diligenter,
[1] of (my) [1] country; attend diligently,

[| ĕr–ivi–itum.(1)] quæso [1] •• [od.pl.4] quæ
I-pray (you to the things) which

| (c)ĕr–xi–ctum.sb.(1) dicam,[1] •• et | ar–avi–atum.im. mandate [pl.2] ••
I-may-say, and commit

id.pl 4 ea penitus er.pl.3 vestris s.pl.3 animis que·
them inwardly to-your minds and

ns–ntis.pl 3 mentibus·. Etenim si 1 patria, uæ.1 quæ est
understandings. For if (my) country, which is

multò or–oris.1 carior (c.) •• 3 mihi (1) •• 6 meâ 6 vitâ, si
much dearer to-me (than) my life, if

1 cuncta 1 Italia, si is–is.1 omnis ei.1 and 1 respublica
all Italy, if all (the) republic

| (quor–qui).ĕr–cutus–sum.d.sb.(1) loquatur [3] •• cum· 6 me·: (1) •• M. s.5 Tulli,
speaks with me: M. Tullius,

id.4 quid | *ago–agĕre–egi–actum.*(1) agis? [2] •• Ne· 1 tu· (2) ••
what are-you-doing? Whether 1 will you

(*patior–pati*) | ĕr–*passus–sum*.d.(3) patieris [2] •• is.4 eum
1 suffer him

(eo–ire) | ir–ivi–itum.in.(1) exire, ui.4 quem ir– | i–tum.(4) comperisti [2] ••
to-depart, whom you-have-discovered

(*sum–esse*) | e–ui.in.(1) esse is–is.4 hostem; ui.4 quem | (d)ĕr–di–sum.(2) vides [2] ••
to-be (an) enemy; whom you-see

sum–esse).e–ui.(3).s.4 futurum [part.] •• x–cis.4 ducem m.2 belli:
(is) about-being (the) leader 1 of (the) 1 war:

ui.4 quem (tio–ire) | ir–si–sum.(1) sentis [2] •• | ar–avi–atum.p.in.(1) exspectari
whom you-perceive to-be-expected

in m.pl.6 castris is–is.pl.2 hostium or–oris.4 imperatorem,
in (the) camp 1 of (the) 1 enemy (as) commander, (him).

or–oris.4 auctorem us–eris.2 sceleris ceps–cipis.4 principem
(the) author 1 of (the) 1 wickedness (the) chief

io–ionis.2 conjurationis, (*f.*) •• or–oris.4 evocatorem
1 of (the) 1 conspiracy, (the) summoner (to war)

.pl.2 servorum et s.pl.2 perditorum is–is.pl.2 civium, ut
of-slaves and of-abandoned citizens, (so) that

| (d)ĕr–di–sum.p.sb.(1) videatur [3] •• non (itt)ĕr–isi– | issum.p.in.(4) emissus esse
he-may-seem not to-have-been-sent-out

ex bs–bis.6 urbe abs 6 te, (2) •• sed (itt)ĕr–isi– | issum.(4).s.1 immissus [part.] ••
from (the) city by you, but sent-in

in bs–bis.4 urbem? Nonne | ar–avi–atum.(3) imperabis [2] ••
into (the) city? Will-1 you not 1 command

ic.4 hunc | (c)ĕr–xi–ctum.p.in.(1) duci in m.pl.4 vincula,
him | to-be-led into bonds [to be imprisoned],

non (pio-pere) | ĕr-pui-ptum.p.in.(1) rapi ad
(will you) not (command him) to-be-hurried to

rs-rtis.4 mortem, non | ar-avi-atum.p.in.(1) mactari
death, (will you) not (command him) to-be-slain

m.6 summo m.6 supplicio? id.1 Quid tandem
1 with (the) 1 greatest punishment? What at-length

| ir-ivi-itum.(1) impedit [3] •• 4 te? (2) •• Ne· s-ris.1 mos·
hinders you? Whether (is it) (the) customs

or-oris.pl.2 majorum?
1 of (our) 1 ancestors?

Lesson 94.

Nunc, ut à me, patres conscripti, quandam propè justam patriæ quærimoniam detester ac deprecer; percipite quæso, diligenter, quæ dicam, et ea penitus animis vestris mentibusque mandate. Etenim, si mecum patria, quæ mihi vitâ meâ multo est carior, si cuncta Italia, si omnis respublica loquatur: M. Tulli quid agis? Tune eum quem esse hostem comperisti; quem ducem belli futurum vides; quem exspectari imperatorem in castris hostium sentis, auctorem sceleris, principem conjurationis, evocatorem servorum et civium perditorum, exire patieris, ut abs te non emissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videatur? Nonne hunc in vincula duci, non ad mortem rapi, non summo supplicio mactari imperabis? Quid tandem impedit te? mosne majorum.

Exercises on Lessons 93 and 94.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Impedio. Hostis. Vidisti. Dux. Sentio. Exspectabam. Scelus. Princeps. Evocator. Perditus. Civis. Video. Emitto. Urbs. Imperavit. Vinculum. Quæsivi. Dixit. Mandabo. Animus. Penitus. Mens. Patria Vita. Loquor. Egit. Detester. Deprecor. Justus. Quærimonia. Percipite.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Ancestors. At length. To be slain. They see. About being. War. They perceived. I expect. Author. Chief. Wickedness. Slave. I may have seen. To be sent in. City. I did command. Leader, or general. They might say. For. Country. Dear. Life. To speak. To do. He suffers. He has departed. I discover. A certain. Almost. I attend.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Quem ducem belli vides. Exspectant imperatorem. Auctorem sceleris exire patieris. Abs te emissus est ex urbe. Immissus esse in urbem videatur. Nonne hunc in vincula duci imperabis. Quid impedit te. Percipite diligenter, quæ dicam. Et ea animis vestris mandate. Patria, quæ mihi vitâ est carior. Quid agis.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

What at length hinders you. Whether is it the custom of our ancestors. Whom you see is about being the leader of the war. They expect him in the camp. He is the commander of the enemy, and the author of the wickedness. He is the chief of the conspiracy, and the summoner of abandoned citizens. He was sent out of the city by you. Will you not command him to be imprisoned. Attend diligently to the things which I may say. Commit them to your minds. My country is dearer to me than life. Will you suffer him to depart.

One noun governs another noun, signifying a different thing, in the genitive: as, *pater patriæ — the father of his country.*

Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns and adverbs, that denote a part or portion, have the word denoting the whole

in the genitive: as, *doctissimus Romanorum — the most learned (man) of the Romans.*

An adjective qualifying a noun, either expressed or understood, referring to or limiting another noun, such limited noun is put in the genitive, and in English the relation is expressed by *of*, or *on account of:* as, *homines expertes veritatis — men destitute of truth.* Here *homines* is the noun, qualified by *expertes*, the adjective, and which agrees with it; *veritatis* is the noun limited, or related to, and is in the genitive.

Verbs of valuing govern the genitive of those words that denote the degree of valuing: as, *magni æstimabat pecuniam — he valued money much.*

When the business, office, lot, or property is understood with a word used with *sum*, such word is put in the genitive: as, *hoc est præceptoris — this is (the business) of the teacher.*

Misereor — I pity, miseresco — I compassionate, with the impersonals, *miseret — it pities me, pœnitet — it repents me, pudet — it shames me, tædet — it is annoying, tedious* or *disgusting to me, piget — it disgusts* or *repents me*, have the noun, on which the feeling expressed by the verb is exercised, in the genitive: as, *miserescite regis — pity the king.*

Recordor — I remember or *recall to mind, memini — I remember, reminiscor — I recollect*, and *obliviscor — I forget*, have the word denoting the person or thing remembered or forgotten, either in the genitive or accusative: as, *memini vivorum — I am mindful of the living; Cinnam memini — I remember Cinna.*

Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning and acquitting, have the noun denoting the crime in the genitive: as, *arguit me furti—he accuses me of theft.*

Verbs of admonishing have the word denoting that about which the admonition is given in the genitive: as, *milites temporis monet — he admonishes the soldiers of the occasion.*

Refert — it concerns, and *interest — it concerns* or *interests,*

have the word denoting the person or thing that it concerns or interests in the genitive: as, *interest omnium rectè facere — it concerns all to do right.*

The name of a town in which any person or thing exists, or in which any thing is done, is put in the genitive when such name is of the first or second declension and singular number: as, *habitat Mileti—he lives at Miletus.* Sometimes, also, names of islands and countries have the genitive, like towns. The genitives *domi — at home, militiæ* and *belli*, in the sense of abroad, and *humi — on the earth* or *ground*, are used on the same principle as the names of towns.

Adverbs of abundance and want are construed with the genitive: as, *se gloriæ abundè adeptum—that he had attained enough of glory.*

A noun denoting the object, purpose or end to which the quality is directed, is put in the dative: as, *jucundus amicis — agreeable to friends.*

Adjectives signifying pleasant, friendly, advantageous, like, fit, inclined, ready, equal, easy, clear, as likewise those adjectives of an opposite signification, with those denoting near; likewise many compounded with *con*, together with verbal adjectives in *bilis*, have a dative: as, *patri similis — like his father.*

Nouns have sometimes other nouns in the dative, when such other nouns denote end or object: as, *caput Italiæ omni — the head to all Italy.*

Verbs denoting the end or object for which any thing is, or for which it is done, are put in the dative: as, *tibi seris, tibi metis — you sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.*

Many verbs denoting to obey, serve, assist, command, resist, threaten, and to be angry, have the dative: as, *mihi minabatur — he did threaten me.*

Many verbs signifying to trust, please, favor, with those of a contrary signification, have the dative: as, *mihi placebat — he pleased me.*

Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *sub*, and *super*, have the dative: as, *antecellere omnibus* — *to excel all.*

Verbs compounded with *satis*, *benè*, and *malè*, have the dative: as, *legibus satisfecit* — *he satisfied the laws.*

The future passive participle, in *dus*, has the dative of the agent: as, *adhibenda est nobis diligentia* — *we must use diligence.*

Sum — *I am*, in the sense of "to have or possess," has a dative: as, *sunt nobis mitia poma* — *we have mellow apples.* Here *nobis*, the possessor, is in the dative, *poma* being the nominative or subject of the verb.

Lesson 95.

[e–is.pl.1] Omnia | [(ago–agere)ĕr–egi–actum.p.(n.2)] agenda erant [pl.3] ••
All (things) were-to-be-done

[ar–aris.3] Cæsari [m.6] uno [us.oris.6] tempore; [m.1] vexillum
(by) Cæsar at-one time; (the) standard

| [(n)ĕr–sui–situm.p.(3).m.1] proponendum, [part.] •• [od.1] quod
to-be-displayed, which

[(sum–esse) | e–ui.(2)] erat [3] •• [e–is.1] insigne, quum | [ĕr–ui.sb.(2)] oporteret [3] ••
was (the) sign, when it-behoved

| [(curr)ĕr–cucurri *or* curri–cursum.p.in.(1)] concurri ad [m.pl.4] arma; [m.1] signum
to-assemble-together to arms; (the) signal

| [ar–*dedi*–atum.p.(3).m.1] dandum [part.] •• [6] tubâ; [es–itis.pl.1] milites
to-be-given [1] with (the) [1] trumpet; (the) soldiers

| [ar–avi–atum.p.(3).s.pl.1] revocandi [part.] •• ab [us–eris.6] opere: [ui.pl.1] qui
to-be-recalled from work: (those) who

[(ed)ĕr– | essi–essum.(5)] processerant [pl.3] •• paullò longiùs, (*ad.c.*) ••
had-proceeded a-little farther,

[6] causâ [er–eris.2] aggeris | [ĕr–ivi *or* ii–itum.p.(3).s.2] pe-
by-reason-of materials-for-a-mound-or-rampart to-

tendi [part.] •• | [ĕr–ivi–itum.p.(3).s.pl.1] accersendi; [part.] •• [ei.pl.1] acies
be-sought (were) to-be-recalled; (the) line-of-battle

| [ĕr–xi–ctum.p.(3).1] instruenda; [part.] •• [es–itis.pl.1] milites
to-be-drawn-up; (the) soldiers

| [ar–avi–atum.d.(3).s.pl.1] cohortandi; [part.] •• [m.1] signum
to-be-exhorted; (the) signal

| ar-dedi-atum.p.(3).m.1. dandum.[part.] ●● [4] Magnam rs–rtis.4 partem
to-be-given. (a) Great part

næ.pl.2 quarum ei.pl.2 rerum as–atis.1 brevitas us–oris.2 temporis,
of-which things (the) shortness [1] of (the) [1] time,

et ûs.1 successus et ûs.1 incursus is–is.pl.2 hostium
and (the) approach and charge [1] of (the) [1] enemy

| ir–ivi–itum.(2) impediebat.[3] ●● pl.1 Duæ ei.pl.1 res
did-hinder. Two things

(sum–esse) | e–ui.(2) erant [pl.3] ●● m.3 subsidio ea pl.3 iis as–atis.pl.3 diffi-
were (an) aid (in) these diffi-

cultatibus, [1] scientia atque ûs.1 usus es–itis.pl.2 militum,
culties, (the) knowledge and experience [1] of (the) [1] soldiers,

quòd ar–avi– | atum.p.(4).s.pl.1 exercitati [part.] ●● or–oris.pl.6 superiori-
because being-experienced in-

bus (*c.*) ●● m.pl.6 prœliis, (sum–esse) | e–ui.(2) poterant [pl.3] ●●
former battles, they-were-able

se.pl.1 ipsi | (ib)ĕr–ipsi–iptum.in.(1) præscribere [3] sibi (3) ●● id.1 quid
themselves to-prescribe to-themselves what

| ēr–ui.sb.(1) oporteret [3] ●● *fio–* | *fieri*-factus–sum.in.(1) fieri non minùs
it-might-be-necessary to-be-done, not less

commodè, quàm | ēr–ui–tum.p.in. doceri ab s–ius.pl.6 aliis; et
properly, than to-be-taught by others; and

quòd ar–ar:s.1 Cæsar ar– | ui–itum.(5) vetuerat [3] ●● s.pl.4 singulos
because Cæsar had-forbid each

s.pl.4 legatos | (ced)ĕr–essi–essum.in.(1) discedere ab us–eris.6 opere que·
lieutenant to-depart from (the) work and

s.pl.6 singulis· io–ionis.pl.6 legionibus, (*f.*) ●● nisi m.pl.6 castris
from-each legion, unless (the) camp

ir–ivi– | itum.p.(4).m.pl.6 munitis.[part.] ●●
having-been-fortified.

Lesson 96.

Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda; vexillum proponendum; quod erat insigne, quum ad arma concurri oporteret; signum tubâ dandum: ab opere revocandi milites: qui paullò longiùs, aggeris petendi causâ processerant, accersendi; acies instruenda; milites cohortandi; signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis, brevitas,

et successus et incursus hostium impediebat. Iis difficultatibus duæ res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quòd superioribus prœliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minùs commodè ipsi sibi præscribere, quàm ab aliis doceri, poterant; et quòd ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Cæsar discedere, nisi munitis castris vetuerat.

Exercises on Lessons 95 and 96.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Tempus. Brevitas. Incursus. Impedivit. Subsidium. Exercitatus. Oportet. Præscribo. Doceo. Opus. Discedo. Munitus. Vetat. Egit. Vexillum. Proposuit. Insigne. Concurro. Tuba. Dederunt. Revocabo. Agger. Procedo. Instruo. Cohortavistis.

English words to be translated into Latin.

I forbid. He has departed. Work. Shortness. The approach. They have hindered. Aid. Experience. Battle. He had prescribed. It is done. He might have been taught. They run or assemble together. They give. You might be recalled. We proceed. Farther. They exhorted. I did give. He has done or performed. The standard.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Iis erant subsidio. Milites superioribus prœliis exercitati. Ipsi sibi præscribere poterant. Ab opere Cæsar discedere vetuerat. Cæsari omnia erant agenda. Vexillum erat insigne. Ad arma concurrunt. Signum tubâ dat. Milites ab opere revocavit. Qui paullò longiùs processerant. Milites cohortavit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Cæsar had forbid the lieutenants to depart. The camp having been fortified. The approach of the enemy did hinder. They were an aid in these difficulties. The soldiers

being experienced in former battles. They were able to prescribe to themselves. It might be necessary to be done. They are taught by others. They assemble together. He has recalled the soldiers from the work. The line of battle has been drawn up. He exhorted the soldiers. He gives the signal. All things were to be done at one time.

An active verb has its object in the accusative: as, *legatos ad eum mittunt—they send ambassadors to him.* An active verb with the accusative, often has either the genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some other additional relation.

The impersonal verbs *piget—it vexes me,* or *I am vexed, pudet—it shames,* or *I am ashamed, pœnitet—it repents me,* or *I repent, tædet—it disgusts me,* or *I am disgusted,* and *miseret—it pities me,* or *I pity,* have the person exercising such feeling in the accusative; they having, as before remarked, the object on which such feeling is exercised in the genitive: as, *eorum nos miseret—we pity them.* Here *nos,* denoting the persons exercising the feeling, is in the accusative, and *eorum,* the object of such feeling, is in the genitive.

Juvat—it pleases, delectat—it delights, fallit—it deceives, fugit—it escapes, præterit—it passes by, and *decet—it becomes,* with the compounds of *decet,* have the accusative: as, *valdè me juvat—it pleases me greatly.*

Verbs of naming, calling, choosing, rendering, reckoning, esteeming, constituting, have two accusatives when both denote the same person or thing: as, *me consulem fecistis—you have made* or *constituted me consul.*

Verbs of asking, teaching, demanding, also *celo—I conceal,* have two accusatives, the one of the person, the other of the thing: as, *rogo te nummos—I ask you for money.*

Some neuter verbs have a noun of like signification with themselves in the accusative: as, *pugnare prœlia—to fight battles; vitam vivere—to live a life.*

Many prepositions have the accusative; for which, see prepositions.

Words denoting the duration of time, or extent of space, are generally put in the accusative: as, *tres annos mecum habitavit—he dwelt three years with me.*

The name of a town is put in the accusative, without a preposition, after verbs denoting motion or transfer to such town: as, *Romam proficiscitur—he departs for Rome.*

Domus—house, in both numbers, *rus—the country*, in the singular, have the accusative in the same manner as names of towns: as, *domum meam venit—he came to my house.*

The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative, as has been already noticed in the explanation of moods and tenses, prefixed to the conjugations.

Many prepositions have the ablative; for which, see prepositions.

Many verbs, compounded with the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, and *super*, have an ablative: as, *abesse urbe—to be absent from the city.*

Opus and *usus*, when they signify need, have generally the ablative: as, *dux nobis opus est—we need a leader.*

Dignus—worthy, *indignus—unworthy*, *contentus—content*, *præditus—endowed*, and *fretus—confiding* or *trusting to* or *in*, have the ablative: as, *dignus laude—worthy of praise.*

Utor—I use, *fruor—I enjoy*, *fungor—I discharge* or *perform*, *potior—I have obtained possession of* or *enjoy*, and *vescor—I am nourished* or *live on*, have the ablative: as, *fungitur officio—he performs his duty.*

Nouns denoting the cause, manner, means, or instrument, in connection with or modified by adjectives or verbs, have the ablative, without a preposition: as, *silentio auditus est—he was heard in silence.*

Adjectives of plenty or want, as also verbs signifying abundance or destitution, have generally the ablative: as,

inops verbis—deficient in words; urbs redundat militibus—the city is full of soldiers.

The price of a thing is put in the ablative: as, *vendidit auro patriam—he sold his country for gold.*

A noun denoting the time at which, or in the duration of which time any thing is said to be, or exist, or to be done, is put in the ablative, without a preposition: as, *hoc tempore—at this time.*

The name of a town in which any thing is, or is said to be done, is put in the ablative, if such name is of the third declension, or if it is in the plural number of any of the declensions: as, *natus Tibure—born at Tibur.*

The name of a town, as also *domus—house* or *home, humus—ground,* and *rus—the country,* are generally put in the ablative, without a preposition, when motion or departure from is denoted: as, *Brindisio profecti sumus—we departed from Brindisium.*

The comparative degree governs the ablative, when *quàm—than,* is omitted: as, *nemo Romanorum fuit eloquentior Cicerone—none of the Romans was more eloquent than Cicero.*

The ablative is used to denote the degree or measure by which one thing surpasses, or by which one thing is surpassed by another: as, *Hibernia dimidio minor est quam Britannia—Ireland is a half less than Britain.*

When a noun, with a participle, is used as an inserted and independent clause, both are put in the ablative; this is termed the ablative absolute: as, *Pythagoras quum, Tarquinio, Superbo regnante, in Italiam venisset—when Pythagoras, Tarquinius, Superbus reigning, had come to Italy.*

As *sum—I am,* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and adjective, having *sum* understood, as in the present participle, and interposed as above, have no participle: as, *adolescentulo duce—a youth (being) their leader.*

Lesson 97.

1 Ego (1) •• | (d)ĕr–di–sum.(3) respondebo [1] •• m.pl.4 pauca
I will-reply (in a) few (words)

æc.pl.3 his pl.3 sanctissimis (s.) •• ox–ocis.ol.3 vocibus
to-these most-sacred words

ei.2 and 2 reipublicæ, et ns–ntis.pl.3 mentibus o–inis pl.2 hominum,
1 of (the) 1 republic, and 1 to (the) 1 minds of-men,

qui | (t)ir–si–sum.(1) sentiunt [pl.3] •• id.4 idem. Si
who feel (in the) same (manner). If

1 ego (1) •• | ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) judicarem [1] •• oc.4 hoc
I should-judge this

s.4 optimum (*bonus, s.*) •• (cio–cere).ĕr–*feci*– | ctum. factu, [u] ••
best to-be-done,

s.pl.5 conscripti er–tris.pl.5 patres, 4 Catilinam
conscript fathers, (that) Catiline

| ar–avi–atum.p.in.(1) multari rs–rtis.6 morte; non
be-punished with-death; I-1 should not

(*do–dare*).ar– | dedi–datum.sb.(5) dedissem [1] •• 4 usuram a–ius.2 unius 2 horæ
1 have-given (the) use of-one hour

ad | (v)ĕr–xi–ctum.4 vivendum [ger.] •• te.3 isti or–oris.3 gladiatori.
for living to-this gladiator.

Etenim si s.pl.1 summi r.pl.1 viri, et s.pl.1 clarissimi (s.) ••
For if (the) highest men (in rank), and most-celebrated

is–is.pl.1 cives non modo non ar– | avi–atum.(4) contaminârunt, [pl.3] ••
citizens 1 have not only not 1 contaminated

sed etiam ar– | avi–atum.(4) honestârunt [pl.3] ••
(themselves), but even have-honored

pl.4 se (3) •• is–inis.6 sanguine s.2 Saturnini, et s.pl.2 Gracchorum,
themselves 1 by (the) 1 blood of-Saturninus, and 1 of (the) 1 Gracchi,

et s.2 Flacci et es–ium.pl.2 complurium s.pl.2 superiorum;
and of-Flaccus and of-many (men) of-superior

certe non | (eor–eri).ĕr–itus–sum.d.(n.2) verendum erat [3] ••
(rank); certainly it-1 was not 1 to-be-feared

3 mihi, (1) •• ne id.1 quid 2 invidiæ | ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) redundaret [3] ••
by-me, lest any (thing) of-odium would-redound

3 mihi (1) •• in as–atis.4 posteritatem, ic.6 hoc 6 parricidâ is–is.pl.2 civium
to-me into posterity, this parricide of-citizens

(icio–icĕre).ĕr–eci– | ectum.p.(4).s.6 interfecto. [part.] •• Quòd si ea.1 ea
being-slain. Therefore if | it [this

| (d)ĕr–di–sum.sb.(2) impenderet [3] •• 3 mihi (1) ••
odium] might-threaten me

maxime,(ad.s.) •• tamen (sum–esse).e– | ui.(4) fui [1] •• semper ic.6 hoc
very-greatly, yet I-have-been always of-this

s.6 animo, ut | ar–avi–atum.sb.(2) putarem [1] •• 4 invidiam
mind, that I-thought odium

(pario–parĕre).ĕr–peperi–paritum or | partum.p.(4).4 partam [part.] •• us–utis.6 virtute (f.) ••
produced by-virtue

4 gloriam non 4 invidiam. Quamquam
(was) glory not odium. Although

(sum–esse) | e–ui.(1) sunt [pl.3] •• s.pl.1 nonnulli in ic.6 hoc o–inis.6 ordine,
there-are some in this order

ui.1 qui aut non
[assembly of the senate], who either 1 may not

| (d)ĕr–di–sum.sb.(1) videant [pl.3] •• id.pl.4 ea od.pl.4 quæ
see those (things) which

| ĕr–ui.(1) imminent, [pl.3] •• aut | ar–avi–atum.sb.(1) dissimulent [pl.3] ••
impend, or may-dissemble

id.pl.4 ea, od.pl.4 quæ | (d)ĕr–di–sum.(1) vident; [pl.3] •• ui.1 qui
those (things), which they-see; who

ĕr– | ui–itum or tum.(4) aluerunt [pl.3] •• ei.4 spem 2 Catilinæ
have-nourished (the) hope of-Catiline

is–is.pl.6 mollibus pl.6 sententiis, que· ar– | avi–atum.(4) corrobo-
by-mild opinions, and have-

boraverunt [pl.3] •• (nascor–nasci) | ĕr–natus–sum.d.(1).ens–entis.4 nascentem [part.] ••
strengthened (the) growing

io–ionis.4 conjurationem·(f.) •• non | ĕr–idi–itum.6 credendo. [ger.] ••
conspiracy 1 by not 1 believing (it).

Lesson 98.

His ego sanctissimis reipublicæ vocibus, et eorum hominum, qui idem sentiunt, mentibus, pauca respondebo. Ego si hoc optimum factu judicarem, patres conscripti, Catilinam morte multari; unius usuram horæ gladiatori isti ad vivendum non dedissem. Etenim, si summi viri, et clarissimi cives, Saturnini, et Gracchorum et Flacci, et superiorum complurium sanguine non modo se non contaminârunt, sed etiam honestârunt; certe mihi verendum non erat, ne quid,

hoc parricidâ civium interfecto, invidiæ mihi in posteritatem redundaret. Quodsi ea mihi maxime impenderet: tamen hoc animo semper fui, ut invidiam virtute partam, gloriam, non invidiam putarem. Quamquam nonnulli sunt in hoc ordine, qui aut ea, quæ imminent, non videant; aut ea, quæ vident, dissimulent; qui spem Catilinæ mollibus sententiis aluerunt, conjurationemque nascentem non credendo corroboraverunt.

Exercises on Lessons 97 and 98.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Nonnullus. Immineo. Dissimulo. Spes. Mollis. Aluit. Nascitur. Credo. Impendet. Semper. Invidiam. Putavi. Clarissimus. Sanguis. Contamino. Honestavit. Vereor. Interficio. Sanctus. Vox. Sentio. Mens. Respondebam. Judicabo. Multo. Hora. Vixit. Dedi.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Produced. Although. I have seen. It impends. They dissemble. I see. To nourish. Mild or soft. Opinions. He has strengthened. I believe. He has honored. Blood. Certainly. I fear. Odium. It redounds. He has been slain. Very greatly. Always. I have thought. Republic. I feel. I will judge. He is punished. He lived. He replies.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Nonnulli sunt, qui non videant. Qui ea, quæ vident dissimulent. Spem Catilinæ aluerunt, conjurationemque corroboraverunt. Quod si ea mihi impenderet. Hoc animo sum. Summi et clarissimi cives sunt. Sanguine se non contaminarunt. Mihi verendum non erat, ne quid invidiæ mihi redundaret. His pauca respondebo. Unius usuram horæ ad vivendum non dedissem.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

Some in this assembly, who may not see those things, which impend. They dissemble those things, which they see. They nourish the hope of Catiline by their mild opinions. They strengthen the growing conspiracy by not believing it. It was to be feared that odium would redound to me. I have always been of this opinion. Who feel in the same manner. I judge this best to be done. I should not have given the use of one hour. It certainly is not to be feared by me.

The present subjunctive is sometimes used to express a command, request, or permission: as, *ne me attingas — do not touch me.* The perfect subjunctive is likewise occasionally used in this manner, and even the pluperfect subjunctive.

Participles govern the same cases as their verb: as, *faventes rebus — favoring the affair.*

The participle in *dus* denotes necessity or propriety, when it agrees with the subject or nominative of a sentence: as, *delenda est Carthago — Carthage must be destroyed.*

Gerunds govern the same cases as their verbs: as, *parcendo victis — by sparing the conquered.*

The gerund of an active verb, governing an accusative, may be changed into the participle in *dus;* the object or accusative governed by the gerund is then put in the same case as the gerund was, and the participle in *dus* agrees with this object: as, *consilium scribendi epistolam — the design of writing a letter,* may be thus expressed by the participle in *dus: consilium scribendæ epistolæ — the design of a letter to be written.*

Supines govern the same case as their verb: as, *non Graiis servitum matribus ibo — I shall not go a serving Grecian matrons.*

Lesson 99.

pl.6 Necessariis ei.pl.6 rebus ar–avi– | atum.p.(4).pl.6 imperatis, [part.] ••
(The) necessary things being-commanded,

r–ris.1 Cæsar ad | ar–avi–atum.(3).s.pl.4 cohortandos [part.] ••
Cæsar for (the purpose of) encouraging

es–itis.4 milites (curro–currere)rĕ– | cucurri and curri–cursum.(4) decurrit [3] ••
(the) soldiers ran

in rs–rtis.4 partem, uæ.4 quam rs–rtis.1 sors
to (that) part, which chance

(fero–ferre)– | tuli–latum.(4) obtulit, [3] •• et ir– | i–tum.(4) devenit [3] •• ad
presented, and came [1] to

[4] decimam io–ionis.4 legionem, (*f.*) •• ar–avi– | atum.d.(4) cohor-
(the) [1] tenth legion, he-

tatus est [3] •• es–itis.pl.4 milites non or–oris.6 longiore
exhorted (the) soldiers [1] with not (a) [1] longer

io–ionis.6 oratione, (*f.*) •• quàm utì | (tin)ĕr–tinui–tentum.sb.(2) retine-
speech, than that they-should-

rent [pl.3] •• [4] memoriam [2] suæ [2] pristinæ us–utis.2 virtutis, (*f.*) ••
retain (the) memory of-their former valor,

neu | ar–avi–atum.p.sb.(2) perturbarentur [pl.3] •• s.6 animo que·
nor should-they-be-disturbed in-mind and

fortiter | (tin)ĕr–tinui–tentum.sb.(2) sustinerent [pl.3] ••
[1] should bravely [1] sustain

ûs.4 impetum is–is.pl.2 hostium·; et quòd is–is.pl.1 hostes
(the) attack [1] of (the) [1] enemy; and because (the) enemy [1] were

non longiùs (sum–esse) | e–ui.(2) aberant, [pl.3] •• quàm
not farther [1] distant, than

quò m.1 telum (sum–esse) | e–ui.sb.(2) posset [3] ••
whither (a) dart might

(jicio–jicere) | ĕr–jeci–jectum.p.in.(1) adjici, ar– | *dedi*–atum.(4) dedit [3] ••
be-cast, he-gave

m.4 signum m.2 prœlii | (tt)ĕr–isi–issum.p.(3) committendi [part.] ••
(the) signal | of-battle to-be-engaged [for

atque (ficiscor–ficisci)ĕr–fectus–sum.d.(4).s.1 profectus [part.] •• item
battle]; and having-departed likewise

in [4] alteram rs–rtis.4 partem, [6] causâ
to another part (of the army), [1] for (the) [1] purpose

| ar–avi–atum.2 cohortandi, [ger.] •• (rr)ĕr– | rri–rsum.(4) occurrit [3] ••
of-exhorting he-met (the

| ar-avi-atum.(1).ns-ntis.pl.3 pugnantibus.[part.] •• Tanta
soldiers) fighting. So-great

(sum esse).e- | ui.(4) fuit [3] •• as-atis.1 exiguitas us-oris.2 temporis, que·
was (the) smallness of-time and

tam s.1 paratus s.1 animus is-is.pl.2 hostium· ad
so prepared (was) (the) mind [1] of (the) [1] enemy for

| ar-avi-atum.4 dimicandum,[ger.] •• ut us-oris.1 tempus
fighting, that time

(sum-esse).e- | ui.sb.(4) defuerit [3] •• non modò ad e-is.pl.4 insignia
was-wanting not only for (the) ensigns

| ar-avi-atum.(3).pl.4 accommodanda,[part.] •• sed etiam
(of distinction) to-be-fixed-on, but even

ad pl.4 galeas | ĕr-i-tum.(3).pl.4 induendas, [part.] •• que·
for (the) helmets to-be-put-on, and

m.pl.4 tegmenta | (h)ĕr-xi-ctum.(3).pl.4 detrahenda [part.] ••
(the) coverings to-be-drawn-off

m.pl.3 scutis·. In æ..4 quam rs-rtis.4 partem uis.1 quisque
[1] from (the) [1] shields. Into what part every-one

ūs.6 casu ir- | i-tum.(1) devenit [3] •• ab us-oris.6 opere, que·
by-chance came from (his) work, | and

od.pl.4 quæ· m.pl.4 prima m.pl.4 signa
what first standards [and the first standards]

(icio-icere)ĕr- | exi-ctum.(4) conspexit [3] •• ar- | iti-atum.(4) constitit [3] •• ad
he-beheld he-stood at

oc.pl.4 hæc, ne | (tt)ĕr-si-ssum.sb.(2) dimitteret [3] •• us-oris.4 tempus
them, lest he-might-let-pass-by (the) time

| ar-avi-atum.2 pugnandi [ger.] •• in | ĕr-sivi-situm.6 quærendo [ger.] ••
of-fighting in-seeking

s.pl.4 suos.
his (comrades).

Lesson 100.

Cæsar necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem sors obtulit decucurrit; et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione est cohortatus, quàm utì suæ pristinæ virtutis memoriam retinerent, neu perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent; et quòd non longiùs hostes aberant, quàm quò telum adjici posset; prœlii committendi signum dedit: atque item

in alteram partem cohortandi causâ profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut, non modò, ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas, scutisque tegmenta detrahenda, tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit, quæque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constitit, ne, in quærendo suos, pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

Exercises on Lessons 99 and 100.

Latin words to be translated into English.

Exiguitas. Tantus. Paratus. Dimicaverunt. Animus. Accommodabo. Galea. Induo. Scutum. Detraho. Desum. Opus. Casus. Signum. Conspicio. Quæro. Pugnaverunt. Tempus. Necessarius. Imperavit. Sors. Obfero. Decurrunt. Devenio. Cohortor. Pristinus. Retinerem. Perturbo. Sustineo. Adjicio. Commisit. Dant. Pugnabo.

English words to be translated into Latin.

Work. Standards. To behold. He sought. Likewise. They had exhorted. They meet or run together. Prepared. They will fight. It was wanting. Even. Coverings. To put on. It was drawn off. Chance. Shields. Speech. He may have retained. Former or ancient. To disturb. Attack. To be distant. Dart. He has cast. He departed. He may have commanded. He encourages. To present.

Latin sentences to be translated into English.

Temporis exiguitas. Hostium paratus ad dimicandum animus. Ad galeas induendas tempus defuerit. Scutis tegmenta detraxerunt. Ab opere devenit. Signa conspexit. Ne pugnandi tempus dimitteret. Cæsar ad cohortandos milites decucurrit. Milites oratione est cohortatus. Hostium impetum fortiter sustinerent. Non longiùs, quàm quò

telum adjici posset. Signum dat. In alteram partem profectus est. Pugnantibus occurrit.

English sentences to be translated into Latin.

The first standard he beheld. He might let the time of fighting pass by. He seeks his comrades. For the purpose of exhorting. So prepared were the minds of the enemy for fighting. Time was wanting for the ensigns of distinction tc be fixed on. They drew off the coverings from the shields. Into whatever part he came. The memory of their ancient valor. They were disturbed in mind. They bravely sustained the attack. He gave the signal for battle. He ran to that part which chance presented.

PROSODY.

To give the rules of Prosody would scarcely be consistent with this first or elementary course; it may be proper, however, to observe that Latin verses are formed on quite different principles from English verses. Latin verse has no rhyme, nor does the structure thereof depend on accented or unaccented syllables; but is altogether dependent on a certain or regular succession of long and short syllables.

The length of time employed in pronouncing a syllable is called the quantity of such syllable. A long syllable is considered as being equal in duration to two short syllables. There are a great many rules for determining the quantity of a syllable. It may only be proper here to state two or three of the most general rules; as, a vowel before another vowel, or before a diphthong, is short: as, *mĕus — my;* so, also, when *h* is interposed between two vowels, the first vowel is short: as, *nĭhil — nothing.* Diphthongs are long: as,

āurum — *gold.* A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long: as, *bĕllum* — *war.*

Two or more syllables constitute a foot, of which there are many and various kinds, and each has its peculiar denomination; as the spondee, consisting of two long syllables: as, *fūndūnt* — *they pour out;* the dactyl, consisting of one long and two short syllables: as, *cōrpŏră* — *bodies.* These two feet, the spondee and dactyl, are the feet used in epic or heroic verse.

All verses are composed of a certain number of feet, and the verses thus formed are of various kinds, and have different denominations: as the hexameter, or epic or heroic verse, which consists of six feet, those feet being dactyls and spondees. The fifth foot, reckoning from the commencement of the line, is a dactyl, and the sixth or last a spondee. The first, second, third and fourth foot may be either a dactyl or spondee: as,

Lūdĕrĕ | quǣ vēl | lēm călă | mō pēr | mīsĭt ă | grēstī.
Dact. 1 spon. 2 dact. 3 spon. 4 dact. 5 spon. 6.

"*he permits (me) to play what I will on my rural reed.*"

SECOND, OR SUPPLEMENTARY COURSE.

[This Second or Supplementary Course contains all that was purposely omitted in the First or Elementary Course; thereby making this Grammar complete in all respects. It is so arranged as to be easily referred to. The Lessons are here omitted; for they would swell the Grammar to too great and inconvenient a size. Moreover, after the experience the learner has obtained in the Lessons of the Elementary Course, he can readily help himself by the aid of the numerous Interlinear Translations that have been published.]

LETTERS. (E. 13.*)

1. Consonants have in general the same sound both in Latin and English.

2. *C* was probably always sounded like *k* by the Romans. *C* followed by *i* has often the sound of *sh*. *Ch* has always the sound of *k*.

3. *G* had probably always its hard sound among the Romans.

4. *S* was probably in all cases pronounced sharp by the Romans.

5. *T* had always its proper sound of *t* with the Romans, and was never sounded like *sh* before *i* followed by a vowel, as in modern times.

6. *X* commencing a syllable sounds like *z*; but ending it, like *ks*.

7. There are altogether thirteen diphthongs: namely, *ae*, *ai*, *au*, *ei*, *eu*, *oe*, *oi*, *ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, and *yi*.

8. *AE* and *oe* are sounded like *e*. These two diphthongs are generally written together, as *æ*, *œ*.

9. *EI*, when a diphthong, is generally sounded like *i*.

10. *AU* is pronounced like *a* in *law*.

11. The diphthong *eu* has the sound of *u* in *tube*, when it is a diphthong.

* E. 13 denotes the page of the Elementary Course.

12. The *u* in the diphthongs *ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, is sounded like *w* in *lingua*, as if written *lingwa*. These are always used as diphthongs after *q* sounded like *k*; as *equus*, as if written *ekwus*. They are also generally diphthongs after *g* and *s*.

13. The diaresis (¨) placed over a vowel denotes that such vowel is to be sounded by itself, and does not form part of a diphthong.

NOUNS. (E. 14.)

GENDER.

1. Besides the gender determined by the last syllable of each declension, there are some general rules.

2. MASCULINES. — Names of men and male beings are masculine; also, the names of winds, rivers, and months; the masculine nouns *ventus*, wind, *fluvius*, river, and *mensis*, month, being understood.

3. The names of rivers in *a*, of the first declension, are used either in the masculine or feminine gender. The rivers *Styx* and *Lethe* are feminine.

4. The names of mountains, when the word *mons*, mountain, is used with them, are masculine; but when it is not, the genders of names of mountains are determined by their terminations; as, *alta Ætna*.

5. FEMININES. — Names of women and female beings are feminine; also, most of the names of trees, countries, towns, islands, ships, plants, poems, and gems, are feminine; because the words *arbor*, tree, *terra*, land, *urbs*, town, *insula*, island, *navis*, ship, *planta*, plant, *fabula*, fable, and *gemma*, gem, are feminine.

6. *Exceptions.* — The names of trees and shrubs ending in *er*, of the third declension, are neuter; to which may also be added *robur* and *baccar*. *Oleaster* and *pinaster* of the second declension, also *styrax* and *unedo* of the third, are masculine; likewise many small plants and shrubs in *us*, of the second declension. Names of towns in *i*, plural, are masculine; also, *Trusino Hippo*, *Narbo*, *Sulmo*, *Tunes*, *Taras*, and *Canopus*. Names of countries and islands in *um*, of the second declension, are neuter. Names of towns in *um* or *on* of the second declension, likewise those in *e* or *ur* of the third declension, indeclinable names in *i* and *y*, with some barbarous names, are neuter. Some few names of gems in *us*, of the second declension, are masculine.

7. COMMON GENDER. — Nouns that may be used either in the masculine or feminine gender are called common; as the following nouns, which when males take a masculine adjective; when females, a feminine adjective: —

Adolescens, a youth.
Affinis, a relative by marriage.
Ales, a bird.
Antistes, a chief priest.
Auctor, an author.
Augur, an augur.
Bos, an ox or cow.
Canis, a dog.
Civis, a citizen.
Comes, a companion.
Conjux, a spouse.
Consors, a consort.
Conviva, a guest.
Custos, a keeper.
Dux, a leader.
Exsul, an exile.
Grus, a crane.
Hospes, a guest, host.
Hostis, an enemy.
Index, an informer.
Infans, an infant.
Interpres, an interpreter.
Judex, a judge.
Juvenis, a youth.
Martyr, a martyr.
Miles, a soldier.
Municeps, a burgess.
Mus, a mouse.
Nemo, nobody.
Obses, a hostage.
Patruclis, a cousin.
Palumbes, a wood pigeon.
Parens, a parent.
Par, a mate.
Præses, a president.
Præsul, a chief priest.
Princeps, a prince or princess.
Serpens, a serpent.
Sacerdos, a priest or priestess.
Satelles, a life-guard.
Sus, a swine.
Testis, a witness.
Vates, a prophet.
Verna, a slave.
Vindex, an avenger.

8. Neuters. — All indeclinable nouns, as *gummi*, *pascha*, *sinapi*, are neuter. Words used without any reference to their meaning are neuter; as, *pater est dissyllabum*, pater is a dissyllabic (word). The names of the letters of the alphabet are neuter; though sometimes feminine — *littera* being understood

FIRST DECLENSION. (E. 14.)

Exceptions in Declension.

1. *Genitive Singular.* — An old form of the genitive singular in *as* is still retained in *familia*, when placed after the word *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, or *filia;* as, *matrisfamilias.* Poets sometimes also formed the genitive singular in *āï;* as, *aula*, gen. *aulāï.*

2. *Genitive Plural.*—Poets form the genitive plural of patronymics in *es*, of several compounds of *cola* and *gena*, and of some names of nations, in *um*, in place of *arum;* as, *Æneadum*, *terrigenum.* In a similar manner, *amphorum*, *drachmum*, were used, even in prose, for *amphorarum*, *drachmarum.*

3. *Dative and Ablative Plural.*—The following words have the dative and ablative plural in *abus*, instead of *is*, especially when it is required to distinguish them from masculines having *is* in the dative and ablative plural of the second declension; as, *anima*, the soul; *dea*, a goddess; *filia*, a daughter; *equa*, a mare; *mula*, a mule; *asina*, a she ass; *nata*, a daughter.

4. *Exceptions in Gender.*—Though nouns of the first declension are properly feminine, yet there are some exceptions. In accordance with the general rules above given, all names of men and their offices, as *Sulla*, *poëta*, a poet, *nauta*, a sailor, are masculine (see E. 14, § 2,

and for rivers, &c., E. 14, § 3). *Hadria*, the Adriatic Sea, is masculine; sometimes, also, *dama*, a fallow-deer, and *talpa*, a mole.

GREEK NOUNS.

5. Nouns in *as* and *es*, masculine, and *e*, feminine, also sometimes *a*, are Greek. Greek nouns in *a* are declined like *stella;* though they sometimes have *an* in the accusative singular, in place of *am*.

6. Greek nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, are thus declined: —

Penelope, Penelope.	*Anchises*, Anchises.	*Æneas*, Æneas.
N. Penelop-e,	*N.* Anchis-es,	*N.* Æne-as,
G. Penelop-es,	*G.* Anchis-æ,	*G.* Æne-æ,
D. Penelop-e,	*D.* Anchis-æ,	*D.* Æne-æ,
A. Penelop-en,	*A.* Anchis-en, *also* am,	*A.* Æne-am *or* an,
V. Penelop-e,	*V.* Anchis-e *or* a,	*V.* Æne-a,
A. Penelop-e.	*A.* Anchis-a *or* e.	*A.* Æne-a.

Greek nouns of the first declension admitting of a plural are declined like *stella*, in that number.

SECOND DECLENSION. (E. 21.)

1. The few nouns declined like *puer* are the compounds of *gero* and *fero;* as, *armiger*, an armour-bearer; *Lucifer*, the Morning Star; also, *adulter*, an adulterer; *Celtiber*, a Celtibrian; *Iber*, a Spaniard; *Liber*, Bacchus; *liberi* (pl.), children; *socer*, a father-in-law; *gener*, a son-in-law; *Vesper*, the Evening Star; *presbyter*, an elder. Sometimes also *Mulciber*, Vulcan, has this form.

Exceptions in Declension.

2. *Genitive Singular.* — When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, it is often contracted into *i*.

3. *Vocative Singular.*—Proper names in *ius* omit *e* in the vocative; as, *Virgilius*, *Virgili;* but *Pius* has *Pie*. *Filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, have *fili* and *geni*. All other nouns in *ius*, including patrials derived from proper names, have their vocative regularly *ie*.

4. *Genitive Plural.* — The genitive plural of some nouns, particularly those denoting value, or money, weight, and measure, commonly have the genitive plural in *um*, in place of *orum*.

5. *Deus*, a god, is thus declined: —

Singular.	Plural.
N. Deus,	*N.* Dii *or* di *or* dei,
G. Dei,	*G.* Deorum,
D. Deo,	*D.* Diis *or* dis *or* deis,
A. Deum,	*A.* Deos,
V. Deus,	*V.* Dii *or* di *or* dei,
A. Deo.	*A.* Diis *or* dis *or* deis.

6. *Jesus*, the name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, but *u* in all the other oblique cases.

Exceptions in Gender.

7. Greek nouns in *odus* and *metros*, and their compounds, are feminine; as, *synodus*, an assembly; *diametros*, a diameter.

8. Names of countries, towns, trees, &c., are feminine by general rule (see E. 14, § 5). The following names of plants, however, are masculine: —

Acanthus, bear's foot.
Amaranthus, the amaranth.
Asparagus, asparagus.
Calamus, a reed.
Carduus, a thistle.
Dumus, a bramble.
Ebulus, an elder.
Helleborus, hellebore.
Intubus, endive.
Juncus, a bulrush.
Raphanus, a radish.
Rhamnos, black thorn.
Rubus, a blackb. bush.
Tribulus, a caltrop.
And sometimes, also,
Amaracus, marjorum.
Cytisus, *snail-clover*.

Often the name of a tree in *us*, feminine, has a form in *um*, neuter, to denote the fruit of that tree; as, *pomus*, *pomum*.

The following names of gems are likewise masculine: *beryllus*, a beryl; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *chrysoprasus*, chrysoprase; *opalus*, opal; likewise *pyropus*, gold bronze. But *chrysolithus*, chrysolite, and *smaragdus*, an emerald, are doubtful.

Canopus, *pontus*, *Hellespontus*, *Isthmus*, with plural names in *i* of countries and towns, are masculine. But *Abydus* is doubtful.

Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter; as are also the names of countries and towns in *um*, or in *a*, plural.

9. Names of females in *um* are feminine (E 14, §5).

10. The following nouns in *us* and *os* are feminine: —

Abyssus, a bottomless pit.
Alvus, the belly.
Antidotus, an antidote.
Arctos (us), the Northern Bear.
Carbasus, fine flax, or a sail, or linen.
Dialectos, a dialect.
Diphthongus, a diphthong.
Domus, a house, or home.
Eremus, a desert.
Humus, the ground.
Miltos, vermilion.
Paragraphus, a paragraph.
Pharus (os), a light-house.
Plinthus, the base of a column.
Vannus, a winnowing-fan.

11. The following are doubtful, though generally masculine: *balanus*, a date; *barbitos*, a lute; *grossus*, an unripe fig; *pampinus*, a vine-leaf; *phaselus*, a light vessel.

Atomus, an atom, and *calus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but generally feminine.

Pelagus, the sea, and *virus*, poison, are neuter. *Vulgus*, the common people, is neuter, seldom masculine.

12. Greek nouns of the second declension are thus declined: —

Androgeos (masc.); *Delos* (fem.); *barbiton*, a lyre (neut.).

	Singular.		Singular.		Singular.
N.	Androge-os,	*N.*	Del-os,	*N.*	Barbit-on,
G.	Androge-o *or* i,	*G.*	Del-i,	*G.*	Barbit-i,
D.	Androge-o,	*D.*	Del-o,	*D.*	Barbit-o,
A.	Androge-o *or* on,	*A.*	Del-on *or* um,	*A.*	Barbit-on,
V.	Androge-os,	*V.*	Del-e,	*V.*	Barbit-on,
A.	Androge-o.	*A.*	Del-o.	*A.*	Barbit-o.

13. The plurals of Greek nouns in *os* are declined like *dominus;* the plurals of those in *on*, like *regnum.* The plurals of nouns in *os* sometimes end in *œ*, in the nominative.

14. Some nouns in *os*, in early writers, had a genitive in *u.*

15. Greek proper names in *eus* are declined like *dominus;* but the vocative ends in *eu.* *Panthus* is sometimes *Panthu* in the vocative.

16. Sometimes a genitive plural occurs in *on*, in place of *orum.*

THIRD DECLENSION. (E. 29.)

GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. In the following table the entire word is given in the nominative, singular and plural; but only the terminations in the genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative: —

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
s. Lamp-as,	-adis *or* -ados,	-adi,	-adem *or* -ada,	-as,	-ade.
pl. Lamp-ades,	-adum,	adibus,	-ades *or* -adas,	-ades,	-adibus.
s. Her-os,	-ois,	-oi,	-oem *or* -ou,	-os,	-oe.
pl. Her-oes,	-oum,	-oibus,	-oes *or* -oas,	-oes,	-oibus.
s. Tro-as,	-adis *or* -ados,	-adi,	-adem *or* -ada,	-as,	-ade.
pl. Tro-ades,	-adum,	-adibus *or* -asi *or* -asin,	-ades *or* -adas,	-ades,	-adibus *or* -asi *or* -asin.
s. Chel-ys,	-yis *or* -yos,	-yi,	-ym *or* -yn,	-y,	-ye *or* -y.
s. Poës-is,	-is *or* -ios *or* -eos,	-i,	-im *or* -in,	-i,	-i.
s. Achill-es,	-is *or* -ei *or* -i *or* -eos,	-i,	-em *or* -ea *or* -en,	-es *or* -e,	-e *or* -i.
s. Orph-eus,	-eos *or* -ei,	-ei,	-ea,	-eu,	-eo.
s. A-ër,	-eris,	-eri,	-era,	-er,	-ere.
s. Dīd-o,	-us *or* -nis,	-o *or* -oni,	-o *or* onem,	-o,	-o *or* one.
s. Phyll-is,	-idis *or* -idos,	-idi,	-idem *or* -ida,	-i *or* -is,	-ide.
s. Par-is,	-idis *or* -idos,	-idi,	-idem *or* -idim *or* -idin,	-i,	-ide.

FORMATION OF THE GENITIVE SINGULAR.

2. The formation of the genitive singular is subject to so many rules, with such numerous exceptions, that it would seem best to learn this from the dictionary, and from observation of particular cases. Yet some general rules may be stated.

3. Nouns in *a* have *atis* in the genitive singular. Those in *e* change *e* into *is*; those in *i* are generally indeclinable. Those in *o* generally have *onis;* but those in *do* and *go* generally change *o* into *inis.*

4. Nouns in *l* have *is* added to *l;* as, *consul*, gen. *consulis.* Those in *en* have for the most part *inis;* as, *lumen*, *luminis.* Those in *ar* have *aris;* as, *par*, *paris.* Those ending in *er* have *eris;* as, *mulier*, *mulieris;* but those in *ter* drop the *e* before *r;* as, *pater*, *patris.* Those in *or* have generally *oris;* as, *amor*, *amoris.* Those in *ur* have mostly *uris;* as, *fulgur*, *fulguris.*

5. Nouns in *as* mostly form their genitive singular in *atis;* as *œtas*, *œtatis.* Those in *es*, which increase in the genitive, have either *itis*, *etis*, *idis*, or *edis.* Those which do not increase in the genitive, change *es* into *is.* Those in *is* have generally the genitive the same as the nominative. Those in *os* have mostly their genitive in *oris* or *otis.* Those in *us* generally have their genitive singular in *eris* or *oris;* sometimes they have *utis* or *udis*, or also *uris.* Those in *s* preceded by a consonant, change *s* into *is*, or sometimes into *tis* or *dis.*

6. Nouns in *t* form the genitive singular in *itis.* Nouns in *x*, preceded by a consonant, form their genitive singular by changing *x* into *cis* or *gis.* Those ending in *ax* change *ax* into *acis.* Those ending in *ex* generally change *ex* into *icis.* Those in *ix* change *ix* into *icis.* Those in *ox* generally change *ox* into *ocis.* Those in *ux* for the most part change *ux* into *ucis.*

Exceptions in Declension.

7. *Genitive and Dative Singular.* — Greek proper names often have *i*, in place of *is*, in the genitive singular. The dative singular anciently ended in *e*, in place of *i.*

8. *Accusative Singular.*—The following nouns have *im* in the accusative: —

Amussis, a carpenter's or a mason's level or rule.	Cucumis, a cucumber.	Sinapis, mustard.
Buris, the plough-tail.	Mephitis, foul air.	Sitis, thirst.
Cannabis, hemp.	Pelvis, a basin.	Tussis, a cough.
	Ravis, hoarseness.	Vis, strength.
	Securis, an axe.	

9. Many proper names, denoting names of rivers, towns, and gods,

not increasing in the genitive, have *im* in the accusative singular; also, *Tiber*, gen. *Tiberis*, *acc. Tiberim.* In these nouns *in*, in place of *im*, sometimes occurs.

10. The following nouns have generally *im*, but sometimes *em;* namely, *febris*, fever; *puppis*, the stern; *restis*, a rope; *turris*, a tower; but especially *securis*, an axe.

11. The following have *em* oftener than *im:* —

Bipennis, a battle-axe.	Messis, a harvest,	Præsepis, a stall.
Clavis, a key.	Navis, a ship.	Sementis, a sowing.
Cutis, the skin.	Neptis, a grandchild.	Strigilis, a flesh-brush.
Lens, lentiles.	Pars, a part.	

12. Greek nouns sometimes have *a* in the accusative singular: sometimes also *in;* likewise sometimes *em* or *im*, or *en*. The form *a* is chiefly confined to proper names. *Aër*, air, *æther*, the sky, *delphin*, a dolphin, and *pœan*, a hymn, have generally *a* in the accusative singular; but *Pan* has always *a*.

13. *Vocative Singular.* — Sometimes proper names ending in *es*, gen. *is*, have a vocative in *e*. The *s* is dropped in the vocative by many Greek nouns; as, *Orpheus*, voc. *Orpheu.*

14. *Ablative Singular.* — Exceptions to those neuters in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, having *i* in the ablative. Names of towns in *e*, and the following neuters in *ar*, have *e* in the ablative: *baccar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hepar*, the liver; *jubar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair; *sal*, salt. But *rete*, a net, has either *e* or *i;* and *mare*, the sea, has sometimes *e* in poetry.

15. Exceptions to nouns in *is*, having *im* or *em* in the accusative: *restis*, a rope, and *cutis*, the skin, have *e* only; so also most of the Greek nouns having *idis* in the genitive.

16. Exceptions to nouns having *im* only in the accusative: *Bœtis;* *cannabis*, hemp, and *sinapis*, mustard, have *e* or *i*. *Tigris*, the tiger, is *tigride* in the ablative; but as the name of a river, *Tigride* or *Tigri.* *Rudis*, a rod, *juvenis*, a youth, and *volucris*, a bird, have *e* only.

17. Participles in *ns*, used as nouns, generally have *e* in the ablative — *continens* however has *i*. Adjectives in *is*, used as nouns, generally have *i* in the ablative, though sometimes also *e* — as proper names they have always *e*.

18. Though the following nouns have only *em* in the accusative, yet they have *e* or *i* in the ablative: —

Amnis, a river.	Classis, a fleet.	Ignis, a fire.
Anguis, a snake.	Collis, a hill.	Imber, a shower.
Avis, a bird.	Corbis, a basket.	Mugilis, a mullet.
Bilis, bile.	Finis, an end.	Orbis, a circle.
Civis, a citizen.	Fustis, a staff.	Ovis, a sheep.

Pars, a part.	Sors, a lot.	Unguis, a nail.
Postis, a door-post.	Supellex, furniture.	Vectis, a lever.
Pugil, a pugilist.	Tridens, a three-pronged instrument.	Vesper, the evening.
Sordes, filthiness.		

Rus — rure, signifies from the country, but *ruri* signifies in the country. *Occiput*, the hind-head, has *i;* so also *canalis*, a canal. Names of towns denoting where any thing is, or is done, have *i* in the ablative.

19. *Genitive Plural.*—The following nouns in *es* and *is* have *um* in the genitive plural, in place of *ium:* viz., *apis*, a bee; *canis*, a dog; *juvenis*, a youth; *mugilis*, a mullet; *proles*, a descendant; *strues*, a heap of things laid over one another; *vates*, a prophet; *volucris*, a bird.

Lynx, a lynx, *sphinx*, the sphinx, and *opes*, riches, have *um*, in place of *ium*.

20. The following nouns have *ium*, in place of *um*, in the genitive plural: —

Caro, flesh.	Imber, a shower.	Os, a bone.
Cohors, a cohort	Lar, a household god.	Par, a pair.
Compes, a gyve.	Linter, a boat.	Quiris, a Roman.
Cor, the heart.	Lis, a contest *or* dispute.	Ren, the kidneys.
Cos, a whetstone.	Mas, a male.	Samnis, a Samnite.
Dos, a dowry.	Mus, a mouse.	Strix, a screech-owl.
Fauces the jaws.	Nix, snow.	Uter, a bottle.
Fraus, fraud.	Nox, night.	Venter, the belly.
Fur, a thief.		

Bos, an ox, has *boum*.

Greek nouns commonly have *um* in the genitive plural.

21. *Dative and Ablative Plural.* — Exceptions: *bos*, an ox, has *bobus* or *bubus*.

22. The dative plural in *si*, or when a vowel follows *sin*, is very seldom used, except by poets; as, *herois*, dat. pl. *heroisi* or *heroisin.*

Greek nouns in *ma* often have the dative and ablative plural in *is*, in place of *ibus*.

23. *Accusative Plural.* — The accusative plural of masculines and feminines having *ium* in the genitive plural sometimes ends in *is* or *eis*, in accordance with the ancient form. Greek nouns sometimes have *as* in the accusative plural.

24. *Jupiter*, and *vis*, power or strength, are thus declined: —

Singular.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Jupiter,	*N.* Vis,	vires,
G. Jovis,	*G.* Vis,	virium,
D. Jovi,	*D.* —	viribus,
A. Jovem,	*A.* Vim,	vires,
V. Jupiter,	*V.* Vis,	vires,
A. Jove.	*A.* Vi.	viribus.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exceptions in Masculines.

25 *Exceptions in O.* — Words ending in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, are feminine; so are also words ending in *io*, when such words denote abstract things; as, *lectio*, a reading; or when they denote collective things; as, *legio*, a legion. But, of those ending in *do*, *cardo*, a hinge, *comedo*, a glutton, *ordo*, order, *unedo*, the arbute tree, *udo*, a sock, and *cudo*, a kind of helmet made of skins, are masculine. Of those ending in *go*, *harpago*, a grappling-iron, *ligo*, a kind of hoe, and generally *margo*, a border, are masculine.

26. When words in *io* are the names of material things, they are masculine; as, *scipio*, a staff; so are also the numerals *binio*, *trinio*, &c.

27. *Exceptions in ER.* — *Laver*, a water-plant, *linter*, a boat, and *tuber*, the tree tuber, are almost always feminine; but when *tuber* denotes the fruit, it is masculine.

28. The following nouns in *er* are neuter: —

Acer, a maple-tree.	Papaver, a poppy.	Tuber, a swelling.
Cadaver, a dead body.	Piper, pepper.	Uber, a teat.
Cicer, a vetch.	Siler, an osier.	Ver, the spring.
Iter, a journey.	Spinther, a clasp	Verber, a scourge.
Lasser, assafœtida.	Suber, a cork-tree.	Zingiber, ginger.

29. *Siser*, the plant skirret, is neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.

30. *Exceptions in ES.* — The following nouns in *es*, though they increase in the genitive, are feminine: —

Compes, a fetter, for the feet.	Merges, a sheaf of corn.	Inquies, restlessness.
Merces, a reward.	Quies, rest.	Seges, growing corn.
	Requies, rest.	Teges, a mat.

Æs, brass, is neuter.

31. *Exceptions in OR.* — *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine. *Ador*, spelt, *æquor*, the sea, *cor*, the heart, and *marmor*, marble, are neuter.

32. *Exceptions in OS.* — *Cos*, a whetstone, *dos*, a dowry, *eos*, the morning, and also *arbos*, a tree, are feminine. *Os*, gen. *ossis*, a bone,

and *os*, gen. *oris*, the mouth, are neuter. The Greek words *chaos*, *ethos*, *epos*, *melos*, are also neuter.

33. *Exceptions in N.* — *Gluten*, glue, *inguen*, the groin, *pollen*, fine flour, and *unguen*, an ointment, are neuter; also all nouns ending in *men*.

Aëdon, a nightingale, *halcyon*, the king-fisher, *icon*, an image, and *sindon*, muslin, are feminine.

Exceptions in Feminines.

34. *Exceptions in AS.* — *As*, a piece of money, is masculine; so are also the names of any divisions of the *as*, or any multiples of the same, though they may not terminate in *as;* as, *quadrans*, the fourth part of an *as; tressis*, three *ases*. Masculine are also *mas*, a male, and *vas*, a surety; likewise Greek nouns in *as*, gen. *antis*. *Vas*, a vessel, with *fas* and *nefas*, are neuter; as are also Greek nouns ending in *as*, gen. *atis*.

35. *Exceptions in ES, not increasing in the genitive.* — *Acinaces*, a scimitar, and *coles*, a stalk, are masculine; but *antistes*, a chief priest, *palumbes*, the wood-pigeon, *vates*, a prophet, and *vepres*, a brier, are masculine or feminine. The Greek words *cacoëthes*, *hippomanes*, *nepenthes*, and *panaces*, are neuter.

36. *Exceptions in IS.* — Latin nouns ending in *nis* are masculine; except *amnis*, a river, *canis*, a dog, *cinis*, ashes, *clunis*, the haunch, *finis*, an end, and *funis*, a rope, which are masculine or feminine; but the plurals *cineres*, the ashes of the dead, and *fines*, boundaries, are always masculine.

37. The following nouns are masculine: —

Axis, an axle.	Follis, a pair of bellows.	Quiris, a Roman.
Aqualis, a water-pot.	Fustis, a club.	Samnis, a Samnite.
Cassis, a net.	Glis, a dormouse.	Sanguis, the blood.
Caulis, a stalk.	Lapis, a stone.	Sentis, a brier.
Colis, a stalk.	Lemures, spectres.	Sodalis, a companion
Cenchris, a serpent.	Mensis, a month.	Torris, a firebrand.
Collis, a hill.	Mugilis, a mullet.	Unguis, a nail.
Cossis, a kind of worm.	Orbis, a circle.	Vectis, a lever.
Cucumis, a cucumber.	Piscis, a fish.	Vermis, a worm.
Ensis, a sword.	Postis, a post.	Vomis, a ploughshare.
Fascis, a bundle.		

38. The following nouns are masculine or feminine: —

Anguis, a snake.	Contubernalis, a comrade.	Pulvis, dust.
Collis, a path.	Corbis, a basket.	Scrobis, a ditch.
Canalis, a conduit-pipe.	Pollis, fine flour.	Tigris, a tiger.
		Torquis, a chain.

39. *Exceptions in S, preceded by a consonant.* — *Dens*, a tooth, and its compounds, are masculine; so also are —

Auceps, a bird-catcher.	Epops, a hoopoe.	Merops, a kind of bird.
Chalybs, steel.	Fons, a fountain.	Mons, a mountain.
Cliens, a client.	Gryps, a griffin.	Pons, a bridge.
Ellops, a kind of fish.	Hydrops, the dropsy.	

Rudens, a rope, is generally masculine.

Those nouns in *ens*, originally participles, as *confluens*, *torrens*, *occidens*, *oriens*, and the like, are masculine. *Bidens*, a sheep, is feminine.

40. *Adeps*, grease, *forceps*, pincers, *seps*, a kind of serpent, *scrobs*, a ditch, *serpens*, a serpent, and *stirps*, the trunk of a tree, are masculine or feminine.

Animans is of all genders.

41. *Exceptions in X.* — *Anthrax*, *corax*, *cordax*, *dropax*, *styrax*, and *thorax*, are masculine; but *limax* is common.

Nouns in *ex* are masculine; except *fœx*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, *prex*, *supellex*, *murex*, and *pellex*, which are feminine. *Atriplex* is generally neuter.

Alex, *cortex*, *imbrex*, *obex*, and *silex*, are doubtful. *Grex*, *rumex*, *pumex*, and *senex*, are generally masculine.

42. *Exceptions in IX.* — *Calix*, a cup, *fornix*, an arch, *phœnix*, a kind of bird, *spadix*, a palm-branch, and *sorix*, a kind of bird, are masculine; but *larix*, the beach-tree, *perdix*, a partridge, and *varix*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

43. *Exceptions in OX, UX, and YX.* — *Box* and *esox* are masculine; also *tradux*, a vine-branch.

Bombyx, a silk-worm, *calyx*, the bud of a flower, *coccyx*, a cuckoo, and *oryx*, a wild goat, are masculine; but *onix* and *sardonix*, with *calx*, the heel, *calx*, lime, *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of colour, are masculine or feminine. *Bombyx*, signifying silk, is doubtful.

Exceptions in the Neuter Gender.

44. *Exceptions in L and C.*—*Mugil*, a mullet, and *sol*, the sun, are masculine. *Sal*, salt, is masculine or neuter in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. *Lac* is generally neuter, seldom masculine.

45. *Exceptions in AR and UR.* — *Par*, a mate, is masculine or feminine; but *par*, a pair, is neuter. *Salar*, a trout, with *furfur*, bran, *turtur*, a turtle-dove, and *vultur*, a vulture, are masculine.

46. *Exceptions in US.* — *Lepus*, a hare, with Greek nouns in *pus*, are masculine. *Lagopus*, a kind of bird, is feminine. Nouns in *us*,

having *utis* or *udis* in the genitive, are feminine. *Pecus* and *tellus* are feminine.

Grus, a crane, *mus*, a mouse, and *sus*, a swine, are masculine or feminine. *Rhus*, sumach, is generally masculine, seldom feminine.

FOURTH DECLENSION. (E. 41.)

Exceptions in Declension.

1. The genitive singular in *is* sometimes occurs in ancient writings. A genitive singular in *i* is also sometimes found.

2. The dative singular in *u*, in place of *ui*, sometimes occurs; but the genitive plural *um*, in place of *uum*, very seldom.

3. Some words of this declension have the dative and ablative plural in *ubus;* as, *acus*, a needle; *arcus*, a bow; *artus*, a joint; *ficus*, a fig; *lacus*, a lake; *partus*, a birth; *pecu*, a flock; *quercus*, the oak; *specus*, a den; *tribus*, a tribe. But *genu*, the knee, *portus*, a harbour, *tonitrus*, thunder, and *veru*, a spit, have *ibus* or *ubus*.

Exceptions in Gender.

4. *Acus*, a needle, *colus*, a distaff, *domus*, a house, *idus*, the ides, *manus*, a hand, *porticus*, a gallery, *quinquatrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *tribus*, a tribe, are feminine. *Noctu*, by night, used only in the ablative, is also feminine.

5. *Penus*, a store of provisions, when in the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine. *Specus*, a den, is generally masculine. *Secus*, sex, is neuter.

Some words are feminine by the general rule (see E. 14, § 5).

FIFTH DECLENSION. (E. 47.)

There remains nothing to be added to what has been said respecting the fifth declension in the Elementary Course.

DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS. (E. 50.)

1. In compound words, when both are in the nominative, or both retain the form of the nominative singular, both are declined; but should only one of the words be in the nominative, and the other in the genitive, the word in the nominative is alone declined, though it may be placed first; and the one in the genitive is not declined, even though it may be placed last; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.
N. Respublica,	*N.* Respublicæ,	*N.* Materfamilias,
G. Reipublicæ,	*G.* Rerumpublicarum,	*G.* Matrisfamilias,
D. Reipublicæ,	*D.* Rebuspublicis,	*D.* Matrifamilias,
A. Rempublicam,	*A.* Respublicas,	*A.* Matremfamilias,
V. Respublica,	*V.* Respublicæ,	*V.* Materfamilias,
A. Republicâ.	*A.* Rebuspublicis.	*A.* Matrefamilias, &c.

Familias is the old genitive singular for *familiæ.*

IRREGULAR NOUNS. (E. 50.)

There are four classes of irregular nouns: namely, Variable, Defective, Redundant, and those differing in signification in singular and plural.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Some nouns may vary in gender or declension, or in both. They are called Heterogeneous, when varying in gender; Heteroclites, when varying in declension.

Heterogeneous Nouns.

1. Masculine in singular, but neuter in plural; as, *avernus;* pl. *averna.*

Masculine in singular, but masculine or neuter in plural; as, *jocus,* a jest; pl. *joci* or *joca.*

Feminine in singular, but neuter in plural; as, *carbasus,* a kind of flax; pl. *carbasa,* sails made of it.

Neuter in singular, but masculine in plural; as, *cœlum,* heaven; pl. *cœli.*

Neuter in singular, but masculine or neuter in plural; as, *frenum,* a bridle; pl. *freni* or *frena.*

Neuter in singular, but feminine in plural; as, *epulum,* a feast; pl. *epulæ.*

Feminine or neuter in singular, but feminine in plural; as *delicia* or *delicium,* delight; pl. *deliciæ.*

Heteroclites.

2. Having the second or third declension in the singular, and the third in the plural; as, *jugerum,* an acre, gen. *jugeri* or *jugeris;* pl. *jugera,* gen. *jugerum.*

Having the third declension in the singular, and the second in the plural; as, *vas,* gen. *vassis,* a vessel; pl. *vasa,* gen. *vasorum.*

Some Greek proper names are declined either in the second or third Greek declension.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns may be defective either in case or in number.

Nouns defective in Case.

3. Nouns may be either indeclinable, or want one or more cases.

Indeclinables are those, which remain the same in all the cases. They are: the names of the letters of the Greek and Latin alphabets; as, *alpha*, *beta*, &c.: foreign words; as, *manna*, *pascha:* some Greek nouns in *i* and *y;* as, *gummi*, *misy:* Hebrew names, when they do not take a Greek or Latin termination; as, *Gabriel.* The Latin word *pondo*, a pound, is indeclinable.

4. *Ejectus*, a throwing out; *evectus*, a carrying out; *glos*, a husband's sister; *hir*, the palm of the hand; *inquies*, restlessness; are used only in the nominative.

Dicis; as, *dicis gratiâ*, for form's sake; *nauci*, of no account or value; are used only in the genitive.

Despicatui, contempt; *divisui*, a division; *ludificatui*, a mockery; are used only in the dative.

Abactus (pl.), a driving away: *amissum*, a loss; *commutatum*, an alteration; *essedas* (pl.), war-chariots; *fulgetras* (pl.), lightnings; *hebdomadam*, a week; *incitas* (pl.), as *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to extremities; *infitias* (pl.), denial; are used only in the accusative.

Accitu, a calling for; *admissu*, admission; *admonitu*, admonition; *arcessitu*, a sending away; *coactu*, constraint; *cœlite* (but the plural entire), inhabitant of heaven; *concessu*, permission; *condiscipulatu*, companionship at school; *cupressu*, a cypress; *datu*, a giving; *diu*, in the daytime; *efflagitatu*, importunity; *ergo*, for the sake; *fame*, hunger; *fauce* (pl. entire), the throat; *flictu*, a striking; *hortatu*, an exhorting, and pl. *hortatibus;* *inconsultu*, without advice; *ingratiis* (pl.), against one's will; *injussu*, without command; *interdiu*, by day; *jussu*, command; *lucu*, daylight; *mandatu*, a command; *natu*, by birth; *noctu*, by night; *peccatu*, a fault; *promptu*, readiness; *rogatu*, a request; are used only in the ablative.

Aplustre, the flag of a vessel; *astu*, a city; *cacoëthes*, a bad custom; *epos*, an epic poem; *fas*, right; *instar*, a likeness; *nefas*, wickedness; *nepenthes*, an herb; *opus*, need; *procer* (but entire in the plural), a peer; *secus*, sex; *suppetiæ*, supplies; are used only in the nominative and accusative.

Veprem, a brier, is used only in the accusative and ablative singular; but the plural is entire.

Impetis, a shock; *repetundarum* (pl.), money taken by extortion; *spontis*, of one's own accord; are used only in the genitive and ablative.

Cassem, a net, is used only in the accusative and ablative — the plural is entire.

Relatum, a recital, is used only in the accusative and ablative.

Permissu, permission, is used only in the ablative, and in the accusative *permissum.*

Vocatu, a calling, is used only in the ablative singular and accutive plural.

Algus, cold; *arbitratus*, a judgment; *canities*, grey hair; *chaos*, chaos; *gausape*, a rough garment; *inferiæ*, sacrifices to the dead; *obex*, a bolt: *satias*, satiety; *situs*, situation; *vesper*, the evening; *vespera*, the evening; are used only in the nominative, accusative, and ablative.

Panaces, an herb; *tabum*, corrupt matter; *viscus*, an internal organ; are used only in the nominative, accusative, and ablative.

Opis, help, but plural entire; *sordis*, filth; are used only in the genitive, accusative, and ablative.

Feminis, the thigh, is used only in the genitive, dative, and ablative.

Nuptui, marriage; *obtentui*, a pretext; *preci*, prayer, but plural entire; *venui*, a sale; are used only in the dative, accusative, and ablative. So also *derisui*, ridicule, and *irrisui*, derision.

Ditionis, power, and *pecudis*, a beast, want the nominative singular. *Daps*, a feast, and *frux*, fruit, seldom have the nominative singular.

Fæx, dregs; *fax*, a torch; *fel*, gall; *lux*, light; *os*, the mouth; *pax*, peace; *ros*, dew; *soboles*, offspring; *sol*, the sun; want the genitive plural.

Far, corn; *hiems*, winter; *mel*, honey; *metus*, fear; *pus*, pus; *rus*, country; *tus*, incense; are not used in the genitive, dative, and ablative plural.

Astus, craft, is used in the nominative and ablative singular, and in the nominative and accusative plural.

Though *compes*, gen. *compedis*, a fetter, is used entire in the plural, it has only the genitive and ablative singular; so also *juger*, gen. *jugeris*, an acre; likewise *verberis*, a stripe. *Crates*, a hurdle, with plural entire, is used only in accusative and ablative singular.

Vicis wants the nominative singular and genitive plural.

Nouns defective in Number.

Nouns may want either the plural or singular.

1. Many nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, can have no plural: such as general abstract nouns; as, *pietas*, piety: also words denoting a mass or substance; as, *aurum*, gold.

The following nouns are also only used in the singular: —

Adorca, military reward.
Æther, the sky.
Album, an album.
Argilla, potter's clay.
Barathrum, a gulf.
Cestus, a girdle.
Cœnum, mud.
Crocum, saffron.
Diluculum, the dawn.
Ebur, ivory.
Fides, faith.
Fimus, dung.
Gelu, frost.
Glarea, gravel.
Glastum, woad.
Gluten, glue.
Glutinum, glue.
Gypsum, white plaster.
Hepar, the liver.
Hesperus, the Evening Star.
Hilum, a little thing.
Humus, the ground.
Jubar, a ray of light.
Justitium, a law vacation.
Lac, milk.
Letum, death
Limus, mud.
Lues, a plague.
Macellum, shambles.
Mane, the morning.
Meridies, mid-day.
Mundus, female ornaments.
Muscus, moss.
Nectar, nectar.
Nemo, no one.
Nihilum, nothing.
Nitrum, natron.
Omasum, tripe.
Opium, opium.
Penum, provisions.
Piper, pepper.
Pontus, the sea.
Prolubium, desire.
Pubes, youth.
Sabulo, gravel.
Sabulum, gravel.
Sal, when properly signifying salt.
Salum, the sea.
Salus, safety.
Sanguis, blood.
Senium, old age.
Siler, an osier.
Sinapi, mustard.
Sitis, thirst.
Specimen, a sample.
Supellex, furniture.
Tabes, a consumption.
Tabum, corrupt matter.
Tellus, the earth.
Tristitia, sadness.
Ver, spring.
Vespera, the evening.
Veternus, lethargy.
Virus, poison.
Viscum, bird-lime.
Viscus, bird-lime.
Vitrum, woad.
Vulgus, the common people.
Zingiber, ginger.

Many names of collective personal things, — many names of complex things, or of things composed of several parts, are used only in the plural.

The names of the days in the Roman calendar, also of festivals and games, are used only in the plural; as, *calendæ*, the calends; *Olympia*, the Olympic games.

The names of some books and places are also used only in the plural; as, *Bucolica*, a book of Pastorals; *Thermopylæ*, the straits of Thermopylæ.

The following nouns are also only used in the plural:—

Acta, records.
Adversaria, a memorandum-book.
Æstiva, summer-quarters.
Antæ, door-posts.
Antes, rows.
Antiæ, forelock.
Apinæ, trifles.
Arma, arms,
Bellaria, sweetmeats.
Braccæ, breeches.
Branchiæ, the gills of fishes.
Brevia, shallow places.
Cancelli, balustrades.
Cani, gray hair.
Caulæ, sheep-folds.
Celeres, the bodyguard of the Roman kings.
Clitellæ, a pack-saddle.
Codicelli, a writing.
Crepundia, a rattle.
Cunabula, a cradle.

Cunæ, a cradle.
Divitiæ, riches.
Druides, the Druids.
Excubiæ, watches.
Exsequiæ, funeral rites.
Exta, entrails.
Exuviæ, spoils.
Flabra, blasts.
Fraces, the lees of oil.
Gerræ, trifles.
Grates, thanks.
Hiberna, winter-quarters.
Ilia, the flank.
Incunabula, a cradle.
Indutiæ, a truce.
Induviæ, clothes.
Inferi, the dead.
Inferiæ, sacrifices for the dead.
Insecta, insects.
Justa, funeral rites,
Lamenta, lamentations.
Lapicidinæ, stone-quarries.
Laurices, young rabbits.
Lautia, presents to foreign ambassadors.
Lemures, hobgoblins.
Lendes, nits.
Luceres, a division of the Roman cavalry.
Magalia, cottages.
Majores, ancestors.
Manubiæ, spoils of war.
Minaciæ and Minæ, threats.
Minores, posterity.
Multitia, fine-wrought garments.
Munia, official duties.
Natales, parentage.
Nugæ, jests.
Nuptiæ, marriage.
Pandecta, the Pandects.
Parietinæ, old walls.
Phaleræ, trappings.
Philtra, love-potions.
Posteri, posterity.
Præbia, an amulet.
Præcordia, the diaphragm.
Primitiæ, first-fruits.
Quisquiliæ, refuse.
Salinæ, salt-pits.
Scopæ, a broom.
Scruta, old stuff.
Sponsalia, espousals.
Stativa, a stationary camp.
Superi, the gods above
Talaria, winged shoes.
Tesca, rough places.
Thermæ, warm baths.
Tormina, colic pains.
Tricæ, trifles.
Utensilia, utensils.
Vergiliæ, the seven stars of the pleiades.
Virgulta, bushes.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are sometimes redundant in termination, declension, or gender; that is, they may have different terminations in the nominative singular; as, *arbor*, or *arbos*, a tree: different genders, though in the same declension; as, *dorsus*, and *dorsum:* or may be in different declensions; as, *laurus*, *-i*, or *laurus*, *-ûs*, a laurel.

Nouns redundant in Declension.

The following list contains nouns redundant in declension: —

Adagium, adagio, a proverb.
Admonitio, admonitus, -ûs, a reminding.
Æthra, æther, the clear sky.
Affectio, affectus, -ûs, affection.
Alimonia, alimonium, aliment.
Alluvio, alluvies, -ei, a flood.
Alvearium, alveare, a bee-hive.
Amygdala, amygdalum, an almond.
Anfractum, anfractus, -ûs, a winding.
Angiportum, angiportus, -ûs, a narrow lane.
Aranea, araneus, a spider.
Arcus, arcus, -ûs, a bow.
Attagena, attagen, a moor-hen.
Avaritia, avarities, avarice.
Augmentum, augmen, an increase.

Barbaria, barbaries, barbarism.
Blanditia, blandities, flattery.
Buccina, buccinum, a trumpet.
Bura, buris, a plough-tail.
Cæpa, cæpe, an onion.
Cancer, -cri, cancer, -eris, a crab.
Canitia, canities, hoariness
Capus, capo, a capon.
Cassida, cassis, a helmet.
Cingula, cingulus *or* cingulum, a girdle.
Cochlearium, cochleare, a spoon.
Colluvio, colluvies, filth.
Conatum, conatus, ûs, an attempt.
Concinnitas, concinnitudo, neatness.
Consortium, consortio, partnership.
Contagium, contagio, contact.
Cornus, cornus, -ûs, a cornel-tree.
Cratera, crater, a bowl.
Cupiditas, cupido, desire.
Cupressus, cupressus, -ûs, a cypress-tree.
Delicia, delicium, delight.
Diluvium, diluvies, a deluge.
Durities, duritia, hardness.
Effigia, effigies, an image.
Elegia, elegion, an elegy.
Elephantus, elephas, an elephant.
Epitoma, epitome, an abridgment.
Esseda, essedum, a chariot.
Eventum, eventus, ûs, an event.
Ficus, ficus, ûs, a fig-tree.
Fretum, fretus, -ûs, a strait.
Fulgetra, fulgetrum, lightning.
Ganea, ganeum, an eating-house.
Gausapa, gausapes, *and* gausapum, frieze.
Gelu, gelum, frost.
Gibba, gibbus, *and* gibber, a hump.
Glutinum, gluten, glue.
Gobius, gobio, a gudgeon.
Grammatica, grammatice, grammar.
Hebdomada, hebdomas, a week.
Incestum, incestus, -ûs, incest.
Lacerta, lacertus, a lizard.
Laurus, laurus, -ûs, a laurel.
Luxuria, luxuries, luxury.
Margarita, margaritum, a pearl.
Materia, materies, materials.
Menda, mendum, a fault.
Mollitia, mollities, softness.
Momentum, momen, influence.
Mulctra, mulctrum, a milk-pail.
Munditia, mundities, neatness.
Muria, muries, brine.
Myrtus, myrtus, -ûs, a myrtle.
Nequitia, nequities, worthlessness
Notitia, notities, knowledge.
Oblivium, oblivio, forgetfulness.
Obsidium, obsidio, a siege.
Ostrea, ostreum, an oyster.
Palumba, palumbus, *and* palumbes, a pigeon.
Paupertas, pauperies, poverty.
Pavus, pavo, a peacock.
Penus, -i *or* -oris, penus, -ûs, *and* penum, provisions.
Pinus, pinus, -ûs, a pine-tree.
Pistrina, pistrinum, a bake-house.
Planitia, planities, a plain.
Plebs, plebes, -ei, the common people.
Postulatum, postulatio, a request.
Præsepia, præsepium, præsepes, præsepis, *and* præsepe, a stable.
Prætextum, prætextus, -ûs, a pretext.
Prosapia, prosapies, lineage.
Rapa, rapum, a turnip.
Requies, requies, -ei, rest.
Rictum, rictus, -ûs, the open mouth.
Ruma, rumen, breast, throat.
Sævitia, sævitudo, *and* sævities, ferocity.
Scabritia, scabrities, roughness.
Scorpius, scorpio, a scorpion.

Segmentum, segmen, a piece.
Segnitia, segnities, sloth.
Senecta, senectus, old age.
Sesama, sesamum, sesame.
Spurcitia, spurcities, filthiness.
Stramentum, stramen, straw.
Suffimentum, suffimen, perfume.
Tapetum, tapes, *and* tapete, tapestry.
Teneritas, teneritudo, softness.
Tergum, turgus, -oris, the back.
Tiara, tiaras, a turban.
Titan, Titanus, Titan.
Tonitruum, tonitrus, -ûs, thunder
Tribula, tribulum, a threshing-sledge.
Vespera, vesper, -eri *or* -eris, the evening.

IV. NOUNS DIFFERING IN MEANING IN SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Singular.	Plural.
Ædes, a temple.	Ædes, -ium, a house.
Aqua, water.	Aquæ, medicinal springs.
Auxilium, assistance.	Auxilia, auxiliary troops.
Bonum, a good thing.	Bona, goods or property.
Carcer, a prison.	Carceres, the barriers of a race-course.
Castrum, a fort.	Castra, a camp.
Comitium, a part of the Roman forum, where the comitia were held.	Comitia, an assembly for elections.
Copia, plenty.	Copiæ, troops.
Cupedia, daintiness.	Cupediæ, -arum, *or* cupedia, -orum, dainties.
Epulum, a solemn feast.	Epulæ, a feast or meal.
Facultas, power or ability.	Facultates, property.
Fascis, a bundle of twigs or rods.	Fasces, a bundle of rods, round an axe, carried before the chief magistrate of Rome.
Fastus, pride.	Fastus, *or* fasti, a calender.
Finis, an end.	Fines, boundaries of a country.
Fortuna, fortune.	Fortunæ, wealth or possessions.
Furfur, bran.	Furfures, dandruff.
Gratia, favour or grace.	Gratiæ, thanks.
Hortus, a garden.	Horti, pleasure-grounds.
Impedimentum, a hinderance.	Impedimenta, baggage.
Litera, a letter of the alphabet.	Literæ, a letter.
Ludus, pastime.	Ludi, public games.
Mos, custom.	Mores, manners.
Naris, a nostril.	Nares, the nose.
Natalis, a birth-day.	Natales, birth, lineage.
Opera, labour.	Operæ, workmen.
Opis (gen.), help, power.	Opes, wealth.
Pars, a part.	Partes, a faction or party.
Plaga, a region or tract of country.	Plagæ, nets or toils.

Singular.	Plural.
Principium, a beginning or first principle.	Principia, the place in camp where the general's quarters were.
Rostrum, the beak of a bird or the prow of a ship.	Rostra, the rostra, or place in the forum, where the people were addressed.
Sal, salt.	Sales, witticisms.

ADJECTIVES.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION. (E. 55.)

Exceptions in Declension.

1. Those adjectives that form their genitive in *ius* and dative in *i*, sometimes form them like *bonus*, *tener*, or *piger;* more especially in early writers.

THIRD DECLENSION. (E. 59.)

Exceptions in Declension.

1. *Bimestre*, *cœleste*, *perenne*, and *cognomine*, sometimes occur as ablatives, though generally, according to rule, they have *i* in the ablative.

2. The following adjectives have only *e* in the ablative singular, in place of *e* or *i*, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural, in place of *ium*; viz., *bicorpor*, having two bodies; *cœlebs*, unmarried; *color*, colour; *compos*, master of; *cuspis*, point; *deses*, idle; *impos*, unable; *juvenis*, young; *locuples*, rich; *pauper*, poor; *pes*, a foot; *pubes*, marriageable; *princeps*, principal; *senex*, old; *sospes*, safe; *superstes*, surviving.

3. The following adjectives have only *i* in the ablative singular, in place of *e* or *i;* viz., *anceps*, double; *concors*, concordant; *discors*, discordant; *hebes*, dull; *immemor*, unmindful; *iners*, unskilful, inert; *ingens*, vast; *inops*, indigent; *memor*, mindful; *par*, equal; *præceps*, headlong; *recens*, recent; *repens*, sudden; *uber*, fertile; *vigil*, wakeful; *volucer*, swift. Besides these, also most adjectives ending in the syllable *plex* have *i* only.

4. The following adjectives, having *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural; viz., *ales*, *anceps*, *artifex*, *celer*, *cicur*, *compar*, *degener*, *dispar*, *dives*, *immemor*, *impar*, *inops*, *memor*, *particeps*, *præceps*, *præpes*, *supplex*, and *vigil*. But *dis*, *locuples*, *sons*, and *insons*, have either *um* or *ium*. *Vetus* and *uber*, besides *um*, have *a*, in place of *ia*, in the nominative plural.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. (E. 66.)

Irregular adjectives are either defective or redundant.

I. DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

5. Adjectives denoting the qualities and attributes of persons, mostly want the neuter gender; as, *juvenis*, young; *senex*, old; *cœlebs*, unmarried; &c.

6. *Concolor*. same colour; *deses*, idle; *hebes*, dull; *perpes*, continual or uninterrupted; *reses*, stagnant; *teres*, round and slender; *versicolor*, changeable or different coloured; are seldom used in the neuter gender; and also want the genitive plural.

7. *Bilicem* (acc.), double-tissued, and *cetera*, *ceterum*, want the nominative singular. *Expes*, hopeless, is used only in the nominative. *Inquies*, restless, is only used in the nominative, accusative, and ablative. *Mactus*, and *macte*, honoured, are used only in the nominative and vocative singular; and in the nominative plural, *macti*. *Necesse*, and *necessum*, necessary, with *volupe*, pleasant, are used only in the nominative and accusative singular. *Primoris* (gen.), first, wants the accusative and vocative singular; also, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural. *Postera*, coming after, wants the nominative singular, masculine. *Potis*, able, is used only in the nominative singular; but in the plural, in all genders. *Plus*, more, is used only in the nominative, genitive, accusative, and ablative singular, and only in the neuter; but in the plural, *plures*, it is used in all genders and cases. *Pauci*, few, and *plerique*, the most part, are seldom used in the singular. *Siremps*, and *sirempse*, alike, are used only in the nominative and accusative. *Tantidem* (gen.), so much, is used only in the genitive and accusative. *Trilicem* (acc.), treble-tissued, is used only in the accusative singular, and nominative and accusative plural.

8. *Frugi*, temperate; *nequam*, worthless; *sat*, or *satis*, sufficient; *semis*, half; also, the plurals *aliquot*, some; *quot*, how many; *tot*, so many; *totidem*, just so many; *quotquot*, and *quotcunque*, how many; together with the cardinal numbers from *quatuor*, four, to *centum*, a hundred, both included; also *mille*, a thousand; are all indeclineable.

II. REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

9. The following adjectives of the third declen on ave also a redundant form of the first and second declensions; viz., *acclivis* and *acclivus*, ascending; *auxiliaris* and *auxiliarius*, auxiliary; *bijugis* and *bijugus*, yoked two together; *declivis* and *declivus*, descending; *exanimis* and *exanimus*, lifeless; *hilaris* and *hilarus*, cheerful; *imbecillis* and

imbecillus, weak; *inermis* and *inermus*, unarmed; *infrenis* and *infrenus*, unbridled; *inquies* and *inquietus*, restless; *jocularis* and *jocularius*, laughable; *multijugis* and *multijugus*, many yoked together; *opulens* and *opulentus*, rich; *præcox* or *præcoquis* and *præcoquus*, early ripe; *proclivis* and *proclivus*, sloping; *quadrijugis* and *quadrijugus*, yoked four together; *semianimis* and *semianimus*, half alive; *semiermis* and *semiermus*, half armed; *semisomnis* and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *singularis* and *singularius*, single; *sublimis* and *sublimus*, high; *unanimis* and *unanimus*, unanimous; *violens* and *violentus*, violent.

Impubes, gen. *-is*, not grown up, has the redundant forms *impuber*, gen. *-eris*, *impubis*, gen. *-is*, and *impubescens*, gen. *-tis*.

Some adjectives in *er* have a redundant form in *is;* as, *celeber* and *celebris*, renowned.

COMPARISON. (E. 69.)

1. *Vetus*, old, has *veterimus* in the superlative.

2. There are six adjectives in *ilis* that form their superlatives in *limus;* namely, *facilis*, easy; *difficilis*, difficult; *gracilis*, slender; *humilis*, humble; *similis*, like; *dissimilis*, unlike. *Imbecillis*, weak, has both *imbecillimus* and *imbecillissimus*.

3. The adjectives ending in *ficus*, that form their comparatives in *entior*, and superlatives in *entissimus* — as if the positive ended in *ens*, in place of *us* — are, *beneficus*, beneficent; *honorificus*, honourable; *magnificus*, splendid; *munificus*, liberal; *maleficus*, hurtful. *Dicus* and *volus* form their comparatives and superlatives from their other forms, *dicens* and *volens*. So, in like manner, *egenus* and *providus*.

4. *Nequam*, worthless, has *nequior*, *nequissimus*. *Frugi*, frugal, has *frugalior*, *frugalissimus*.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

5. *Citerior*, nearer, sup. *citimus; deterior*, worse, sup. *deterrimus; interior*, inner, sup. *intimus; ocior*, swifter, sup. *occissimus; prior*, former, sup. *proximus; proprior*, nearer, sup. *proximus*; *ulterior*, farther, sup. *ultimus:* want the positive.

6. *Consultus*, skilful; *inclitus*, renowned; *invictus*, invincible; *invitus*, unwilling; *meritus*, deserving; *par*, equal; *persuasus*, persuaded; *sacer*, sacred: want the comparative.

Apricus, *bellus*, *comis*, *diversus*, *falsus*, *fidus*, *novus*, *vetus*, seldom have the comparative.

7. *Adolescens*, young; *agrestis*, rustic; *alacer*, active; *ater*, black; *cœcus*, blind; *deses*, idle; *declivis*, slanting downwards; *diuturnus*, lasting; *infinitus*, infinite; *ingens*, very great; *jejunus*, fasting; *juvenis*, young; *licens*, unrestrained; *longinquus*, distant; *opimus*, rich;

proclivis, sloping downwards; *pronus*, bending down; *protervus*, violent; *propinquus*, near; *salutaris*, healthy; *satis*, sufficient; *satur*, full; *senex*, old; *silvestris*, woody; *sinister*, left; *supinus*, lying on the back; *surdus*, deaf; *teres*, round and slender: have neither a comparative nor a superlative.

Most of the adjectives ending in *ilis*, *alis*, and *bilis*, have no superlative.

Anterior, anterior, and *sequor*, worse, are used only in the comparative.

8. Many adjectives that, from their signification, do not imply degrees of comparison, have no degrees of comparison—they denote substance, origin, possession, country, number, past definite time, and the like; as, *aureus*, golden; *hibernus*, wintry.

9. Many adjectives, that from their meaning might admit of degrees of comparison, yet have no degrees of comparison denoted by their terminations; as, most adjectives ending in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *orus*, *ivus*, and *us*, pure, except *quus;* also compound adjectives, compounded of nouns or verbs; likewise diminutives; besides some other adjectives. In most of these adjectives, and sometimes in others, the comparative is formed by *magis*, more; and the superlative by *maxime*, most; as, *idoneus*, fit; *magis idoneus*, more fit; *maxime idoneus*, most fit. Other particles are sometimes used, to denote the state or degree of the quality.

NUMERALS. (E. 74.)

1. *Prior* is used for the ordinal *primus*, when only two are spoken of; and *alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2. There are other classes of numbers, besides the cardinal and ordinal numbers: as the distributive numbers, which denote how many each; as,

Singuli, one by one.	Quini deni.	Nonageni.
Bini, two by two.	Seni deni.	Centeni.
Terni *or* trini.	Septeni deni.	Duceni.
Quaterni.	Octoni deni.	Treceni *or* trecenteni.
Quini.	Noveni deni.	Quadringeni *or* quadringenteni.
Seni.	Viceni.	Quingeni.
Septeni.	Viceni singuli.	Sexceni *or* Sexcenteni.
Octoni.	Viceni bini, &c.	Septingeni.
Noveni.	Triceni.	Octingeni.
Deni, ten by ten.	Quadrageni.	Nongeni.
Undeni.	Quinquageni.	Milleni *or* singula millia.
Duodeni.	Sexageni.	
Terni deni.	Septuageni.	
Quaterni deni.	Octogeni.	

Bini is used for *duo*, to denote things in pairs; as, *bini boves*, a pair of oxen.

3. Numeral adverbs, which denote how many times; as,

Semel, once.	Quatuordecies.	Septuagies.
Bis, twice.	Quindecies.	Octogies.
Ter, thrice.	Sedecies.	Nonagies.
Quater, four times.	Decies et septies.	Centies.
Quinquies, five times.	Duodevicies.	Ducenties.
Sexies.	Undevicies.	Trecenties *or* tricenties.
Septies.	Vicies.	Quadringenties.
Octies.	Semel et vicies.	Quingenties.
Novies.	Bis et vicies, &c.	Sexcenties.
Decies.	Tricies.	Septingenties.
Undecies.	Quadragies.	Octingenties.
Duodecies.	Quinquagies.	Noningenties.
Terdecies.	Sexagies.	Millies.

4. Multiplicative numerals denote how many fold; as, *simplex*, single; *duplex*, double, or twofold; *triplex*, threefold; *quadruplex*, fourfold; *quintuplex*, fivefold; *septemplex*, sevenfold; *decemplex*, tenfold; *centuplex*, a hundredfold.

PRONOUNS. (E. 79.)

1. The contracted form *mi*, for *mihi*, to me, is sometimes used.

2. *Cum* is affixed to the ablative singular and plural of the personal, or substantive pronouns; as, *vobiscum*, with you.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. (E. 87.)

1. *Olli*, from the old form *ollus*, has been sometimes used in the dative singular and nominative plural for *illi*.

2. The compounds *istic* (of *iste* and *hic*) and *illic* (of *ille* and *hic*), are thus declined: —

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Istic,	istæc,	istoc *or* istuc,	—	istæc,	—
Ac.	Istunc,	istanc,	istoc *or* istuc,	—	—	istæc.
Ab.	Istoc,	istac,	istoc.			

Illic is declined in like manner.

3. *Is* is generally used to point to some preceding person or thing, without particularly designating the nearest or farthest.

4. *Hic*, denoting this, points out some person or thing near, or nearest to the speaker, or any thing just mentioned. As the person

of all nearest the speaker is the speaker himself, *hic homo*, this man often denotes the same as *ego*, I.

5. *Ille*, denoting that, points out some person or thing distant, or farthest off or remote from the speaker, or to something before mentioned, or the first mentioned in a sentence; while *hic* points out the last mentioned in a sentence. *Ille* is also used to denote general notoriety; as, *Medea illa*, the celebrated Medea. *Ille* likewise refers to something spoken about. *Ille* also points out the past, while *hic* points out the present.

6. *Iste*, that, besides sometimes denoting contempt, often points out, or refers to, the person addressed, or to something near to him, or belonging to or connected with him. So, *iste liber* may mean this (thy) book; but *ille liber* would mean the book we are speaking of. These distinctions are not always strictly observed. *Ille* and *is* are sometimes used for one another.

EMPHATIC PRONOUN *IPSE*. (E. 95.)

1. *Ipse*, in the old language, had the form of *ipsus*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*. As *ipse* may be considered as formed of *is* and the affix *pse*, the old writers in some cases declined the *is*, leaving the affix *pse* undeclined; as, *eapse* for *ipsa*, *eampse* for *ipsum*, *eopse* for *ipso*. After this manner the word *reapse*, in fact, is formed from *re eapse*.

2. *Ipse* is used with nouns and pronouns in an emphatic sense; as, *tu ipse*, you yourself; *Jupiter ipse*, Jupiter himself.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS. (E. 96.)

1. *Cum* is often affixed to the ablatives *quo*, *quâ*, and *quibus*; as, *quibuscum*, with whom.

2. In *quicunque*, *qui* is sometimes separated from *cunque* by one or more interposed words.

3. *Quicquid*, sometimes occurs, in place of *quidquid*.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. (E. 99.)

1. *Cujus* is defective, being only used in the following cases, viz.:

	Singular.				Plural.	
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.		Mas.	Fem.
N.	Cujus,	cuja,	cujum,	*N.*	Cuji,	cujæ,
Ac.	Cujum,	cujam,	—	*Ac.*	—	cujas.
Ab.	—	cujâ.	—			

POSSESSIVE PRONOUS. (E. 102.)

1. *Meus* has generally *mi* in the vocative singular, masculine, in place of *meus*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. (E. 102.)

1. *Quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*, in the neuter singular.

2. *Quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam* in the neuter singular; and mostly wants the feminine and plural.

3. *Quispiam* has *quidpiam*, *quodpiam*, or *quippiam*, in the neuter singular. It is scarcely used in the plural; has however the nominative plural, feminine, *quæpiam*.

VERBS. (E. 103.)

Formation of the Three Principal Parts. (E. 105.)

[This is to be placed at the end of the regular conjugation (E. 219). Observe that ¹ denotes the infinitive, ² the perfect tense, and ³ the supine, whether these numbers be used alone or placed before a verb. When a dash follows, as ¹—, or ²—, or ³—, it denotes that the principal part after which the dash is, is wanting; thus, ³— denotes that the supine is wanting.]

Deviation from the Regular Formation in the Principal Parts of the

1. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Crepo, ¹ *crepare*, ² *crepui*, ³ *crepitum*, to make a noise. So, in like manner, its compounds; but *discrepo* and *increpo* have sometimes *-avi* in ² and *-atum* in ³.

Cubo, ¹ *cubare*, ² *cubui*, ³ *cubitum*, to lie, seldom have *-avi* in ². So likewise the compounds *accubo*, *excubo*, *incubo*, &c.; but when the compounds take *m* before *b*, they are of the third conjugation; as, *incumbo*, ¹ *incumbere*, ² *incubui*, ³ *incubitum*.

Do, ¹ *dare*, ² *dedi*, ³ *datum*, to give. So also the compounds *circumdo*, *pessundo*, *satisdo*, *venundo*. The other compounds of *do* — as, *addo*, *condo*, &c. — are of the third conjugation, and have *didi* in ² and *ditum* in ³.

Domo, ¹ *domare*, ² *domui*, ³ *domitum*, to subdue.

Frico, ¹ *fricare*, ² *fricui*, ³ *fricatum* or *frictum*, to rub. So also the compounds *defrico*, *infrico*, *refrico*.

Juvo. [1]*juvare,* [2]*juvi,* [3]*jutum,* to help —*juvaturus* in participle. So also the compound *adjuvo.*

Labo, [1] *labare,* [2] —, [3] —, to fall.

Lavo, [1] *lavare* or *lavere,* [3] *lavi* or *lavavi,* [3] *lavatum,* or *lautum* or *lotum,* to wash.

Mico, [1] *micare,* [2] *micui,* [3] —, to glitter. The compound *emico* has [3] *-atum; dimico* has [2] *-avi,* [3] *-atum.*

Neco, [1] *necare,* [2] *necavi* or *necui,* [3] *necatum,* to kill. *Eneco* has [2] *-avi,* [3] *-atum,* or [2] *-cui,* [3] *tum. Internecio* has [3] *-atum.*

Nexo, [1] *nexare,* [2] —, [3] —, to bind.

Plico, [1] *plicare,* [2] —, [3] *plicatum,* to fold. The compounds, *duplico, multiplico, replico,* and *supplico,* are regular, and have [2]. But *applico, implico, complico,* and *explico,* have *-avi* or *-ui* in [2], and *-atum* or *itum* in [3].

Poto, [1] *potare,* [2] *potavi,* [3] *potatum* or *potum,* to drink. So the compounds *epoto* and *perpoto.*

Seco, [1] *secare,* [2] *secui,* [3] *sectum* (part. *secaturus*), to cut. So *circumseco, deseco, disseco, interseco, perseco,* and *reseco.*

Sono, [1] *sonare,* [2] *sonui,* [3] *sonitum* (part. *sonaturus*), to sound. So likewise its compound *consono, dissono,* &c.

Sto, [1] *stare,* [2] *steti,* [3] *statum,* to stand. The compounds of *sto,* with prepositions of a single syllable, have *-stiti* in [2], in place of *-steti;* as, [2] *constiti:* but when compounded with prepositions of more than one syllable, they have in [2] *-steti;* as, [2] *circumsteti.*

Tono, [1] *tonare,* [2] *tonui,* [3] (*tonitum*), to thunder. So also *circumtono, attono;* but *intono* has in [3] *-atum.*

Veto, [1] *vetare,* [2] *vetui* or *vetavi,* [3] *vetitum,* to forbid.

2. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Habeo is regular, but changes *a* into *i* in its compounds; as, *adhibeo.*

Those having the perfect [2] in *-vi,* instead of *vui:* —

Caveo, [1] *cavere,* [2] *cavi,* [3] *cautum,* to take care. So also its compounds.

Conniveo, [1] *connivere,* [2] *connivi* or *connixi,* [3] —, to wink at.

Faveo, [1] *favere,* [2] *favi,* [3] *fautum,* to favour.

Foveo, [1] *fovere,* [2] *fovi,* [3] *fotum,* to cherish.

Moveo, [1] *movere,* [2] *movi,* [3] *motum,* to move. So also its compounds.

Paveo, [1] *pavere,* [2] *pavi,* [3] —, to fear.

Voveo, [1] *vovere,* [2] *vovi,* [3] *votum,* to vow.

Ferveo, [1] *fervere,* [2] *fervi* or *ferbui,* [3] —, to boil. It has also the form *fervo,* [1] *fervĕre,* [2] *fervi,* of the third conjugation.

Those which have the perfect [2] in *-evi*, instead of *-ui.*

Aboleo, [1] *abolere*, [2] *abolevi*, [3] *abolitum*, to annul.
Deleo, [1] *delere*, [2] *delevi*, [3] *deletum*, to destroy.
Fleo, [1] *flere*, [2] *flevi*, [3] *fletum*, to weep.
Neo, [1] *nere*, [2] *nevi*, [3] *netum*, to spin.
(Form *pleo* obsolete.) *Compleo*, [1] *complere*, [2] *complevi*, [3] *completum*, to fill; and in the like manner of other compounds.

Those which omit *i* before *tum* in the supine: —

Doceo, [1] *docere*, [2] *docui*, [3] *doctum*, to teach.
Misceo, [1] *miscere*, [2] *miscui*, [3] *mixtum* or *mistum*, to mix.
Teneo, [1] *tenere*, [2] *tenui*, [3] *tentum*, to hold. The compounds change *e* in [1] and [2] into *i;* as, *detineo*, [1] *detinere*, [2] *detinui*, [3] *detentum.*
Torreo, [1] *torrere*, [2] *torrui*, [3] *tostum*, to roast.

To these may be added,

Censeo, [1] *censere*, [2] *censui*, [3] *censum* (or *censitum*), to think. So also its compounds.

The following form the perfect regularly in *-ui*, but have no supine:

Arceo, to keep off; but the compounds *coerceo* and *exerceo* have a supine.
Calleo, to be hardened.
Candeo, to shine
Egeo, to want.
Emineo, to stand forth.
Floreo, to flourish.
Frondeo, to have leaves.
Horreo, to shudder.
Langueo, to be languid.
Lateo, to lie hid.
Madeo, to be wet.
Niteo, to shine.
Oleo, to smell.
Palleo, to be pale.
Pateo, to be open.
Rigeo, to be stiff.
Rubeo, to be red.
Sileo, to be silent.
Sorbeo, to sip.
Sordeo, to be filthy.
Splendeo, to shine.
Studeo, to study.
Stupeo, to be amazed.
Timeo, to fear.
Torpeo, to be torpid.
Tumeo, to swell.
Vigeo, to flourish.
Vireo, to be green.

Besides a number of similar verbs derived from adjectives.

Those which have *-si* in the perfect, and *-sum* in the supine: —

Ardeo, [1] *ardere*, [2] *arsi*, [3] *arsum*, to burn.
Hæreo, [1] *hærere*, [2] *hæsi*, [3] *hæsum*, to stick. So also its compounds.
Jubeo, [1] *jubere*, [2] *jussi*, [3] *jussum*, to command.
Maneo, [1] *manere*, [2] *mansi*, [3] *mansum*, to remain.
Mulceo, [1] *mulcere*, [2] *mulsi*, [3] *mulsum*, to caress. The compounds *demulceo* and *permulceo* have in [3] *demulsum* or *demulctum*, *permulsum* or *permulctum.*
Mulgeo, [1] *mulgere*, [2] *mulsi* or *mulxi*, [3] *mulsum* or *mulctum*, to milk.
Rideo, [1] *ridere*, [2] *risi*, [3] *risum*, to laugh.
Suadeo, [1] *suadere*, [2] *suasi*, [3] *suasum*, to advise.
Tergeo, [1] *tergere*, [2] *tersi*, [2] *tersum*, to wipe. Used also in the third conjugation; as, *tergo*, [1] *tergĕre*, [2] *tersi*, [3] *tersum.*

Those which have *si* in the perfect, but have no supine: —

Algeo, [1] *algere*, [2] *alsi*, to be cold. *Turgeo*, [2] *tursi*, to swell.
Fulgeo, [1] *fulgere*, [2] *fulsi*, to shine. *Urgeo* or *urgueo*, [2] *ursi*, to urge.

The following have *-si* in the perfect, and *-tum* in the supine: —

Indulgeo, [1] *indulgere*, [2] *indulsi*, [3] *indultum*, to indulge.
Torqueo, [1] *torquere*, [2] *torsi*, [3] *tortum*, to twist.

Those which have the perfect in *-xi*, and the supine in *-tum*: —

Augeo, [1] *augere*, [2] *auxi*, [3] *auctum*, to increase.
Frigeo, [1] *frigere*, [2] *frixi*, [3] —, to be cold.
Luceo, [1] *lucere*, [2] *luxi*, [3] —, to shine. But the compound *polluceo* has the supine, *polluctum*.
Lugeo, [1] *lugere*, [2] *luxi*, [3] —, to mourn.

Those having the perfect in *-i*, and the supine in *-sum*: —

Prandeo, [1] *prandere*, [2] *prandi*, [3] *pransum*, to dine.
Sedeo, [1] *sedere*, [2] *sedi*, [3] *sessum*, to sit. Those compounds with a preposition of only one syllable, change *e* into *i* in the first principal part; as, *insideo*, [1] *insidere*, [2] *insedi*, [3] *insessum*.
Strideo, [1] *stridēre* or *stridĕre*, [2] *stridi*, [3] —, to make a piercing noise.
Video, [1] *videre*, [2] *vidi*, [3] *visum*, to see.

Those which have a reduplication in the perfect: —

Mordeo, [1] *mordere*, [2] *memordi*, [3] *morsum*, to bite. Its compounds drop the reduplication in the perfect.
Pendeo, [1] *pendere*, [2] *pependi*, [3] *pensum*, to hang. Its compounds drop the reduplication.
Spondeo, [1] *spondere*, [2] *spospondi*, [3] *sponsum*, to vow. Its compounds drop the reduplication.
Tondeo, [1] *tondere*, [2] *totondi*, [3] *tonsum*, to shear. Its compounds drop the reduplication.

The following have neither perfect nor supine: —

Aveo, to desire.
Calveo, to be bald.
Caneo, to be hoary.
Clueo, to be famous.
Denseo, to become thick.
Flaveo, to be yellow.
Fœteo, to stink.
Glabreo, to be smooth.
Hebeo, to be dull.
Humeo, to be moist.
Lacteo, to suck, or to be in milk.
Liveo, to be livid.
(*Mineo*) *Immineo*, to be imminent, to threaten.
Mœreo, to mourn.
Polleo, to be strong.
Renideo, to shine.
Scateo, to gush forth, to be plentiful.
Squaleo, to be dirty.
Vigeo, to flourish.

Cieo, [1] *ciere*, [2] *civi*, [3] *citum*, to excite, has also the form of the fourth conjugation, as from *cio*.

The following are in part active and in part deponent in form: —

Audeo, [1] *audere*, [2] *ausus sum*, to dare.
Gaudeo, [1] *gaudere*, [2] *gavisus sum*, to rejoice.
Soleo, [1] *solere*, [2] *solitus sum*, to be accustomed.

3. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Those verbs, which have a vowel before *o* of the first person, present tense, including also *vo*.

The following have their perfect and supine regular : —

Acuo, *acui*, *acutum*, to sharpen ; so also *arguo*, to convict; *imbuo*, to imbue; *induo*, to put on; *luo*, to atone; *minuo*, to lessen; *nuo* (obsolete), its compounds are conjugated like it; *ruo*, to fall; *spuo*, to spit; *statuo*, to establish ; *sternuo*, to sneeze; *suo*, to sew; *tribuo*, to ascribe or give to: *solvo*, to loosen; *volvo*, to roll; but *congruo*, to agree, *metuo*, to fear, and *pluo*, to rain, have no supine.

The following are irregular: —

Capio, [1] *capere*, [2] *cepi*, [3] *captum*, to take. So also *antecapio*. But the other compounds change *a* into *i* in the first principal part or form, and *a* into *e* in the second and third principal parts; as, *decipio*, [1] *decipere*, [2] *decepi*, [3] *deceptum*.

Cupio, [1] *cupere*, [2] *cupivi*, [3] *cupitum*, to desire.

Facio, [1] *facere*, [2] *feci*, [3] *factum*, to do, to make. *Facio*, when compounded with any other word than a preposition, remains unchanged in the compound; as, *arefacio*, [1] *arefacere*, [2] *arefaci*, [3] *arefactum* — having also *fac* in the imperative, and *fio*, *fieri*, for its passive; — but when *facio* is compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i* in the first principal part, and *a* into *e* in the third principal part; as, *afficio*, [1] *afficere*, [2] *affeci*, [3] *affectum* — imperative *affice*. They have also a regular passive; as, *afficior*, &c.

Fluo, [1] *fluere*, [2] *fluxi*, [3] *fluctum*, to flow.

Fodio, [1] *fodere*, [2] *fodi*, [3] *fossum*, to dig.

Fugio, [1] *fugere*, [2] *fugi*, [3] *fugitum*, to flee.

Jacio, [1] *jacere*, [2] *jeci*, [3] *jactum*, to throw. The compounds change *a* into *i* in the first principal part, and *a* into *e* in the third principal part; as, *rejicio*, [1] *rejicere*, [2] *rejeci*, [3] *rejectum*.

(*Lacio*, obsolete.) The compounds derived from it change *a* into *i* in the first principal part; as, *allicio*, [1] *allicere*, [2] *allexi*, [3] *allectum*; but *elicio* has *elicui* in [2], and *elicitum* in [3].

Pario, [1] *parere*, [2] *peperi*, [3] *partum*, to bring forth — future participle, *pariturus*.

Quatio, [1] *quatere*, [2] —, [3] *quassum*, to shake. The compounds change *qua* into *cu*; as, *concutio*, [1] *concutere*, [2] *concussi*, [2] *concussum*.

Rapio, [1] *rapere*, [2] *rapui*, [3] *raptum*, to snatch. The compounds change *a* into *i* in the first and second principal parts, and *a* into *e* in the third; as, *arripio*, [1] *arripere*, [2] *arripui*, [3] *arreptum*. So *diripio*, &c.

Sapio, [1] *sapere*, [2] *sapivi* and *sapui*, [3] —, to be wise. The compounds change *a* into *i;* as, *resipio*, [1] *resipere*, [2] *resipui* or *resipivi*, [3] —.

(*Specio*, obsolete.) The compounds derived from it change *e* into *i* in the first principal part; as, *aspicio*, [1] *aspicere*, [2] *aspexi*, [3] *aspectum*, to look at.

Struo, [1] *struere*, [2] *struxi*, [3] *structum*, to build.

Vivo, [1] *vivere*, [2] *vixi*, [3] *victum*, to live.

Verbs in -DO and -TO

The following may be considered as regular: —

Claudo, [1] *claudere*, [2] *clausi*, [3] *clausum*, to close — but its compounds change *au* into *u*, or rather have the form *cludo;* as, *concludo*, [1] *concludere*, [2] *conclusi*, [3] *conclusum*. So also *divido*, to divide; *lædo*, to injure — its compounds change *æ* into *i;* as, *illido;* — *ludo*, to sport; *plaudo*, to applaud — its compounds, except *applaudo* and *circumplaudo*, change *au* into *a;* — *rado*, to shave; *rodo*, to gnaw — some of the compounds of *rodo* want the perfect; — *trudo*, to thrust; *vado*, to go, has neither perfect nor supine, but its compounds, except *supervado*, have the perfect.

Verbs which are irregular.

Those having a reduplication in the perfect: —

Cado, [1] *cadere*, [2] *cecidi*, [3] *casum*, to fall. The compounds change *a* into *i* in the first part, and drop the reduplication; as, *occido*, [1] *occidere*, [2] *occidi*, [3] *occasum*.

Cædo, [1] *cædere*, [2] *cecidi*, [3] *cæsum*, to cut. The compounds change *æ* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as, *abscido*, [1] *abscidere*, [2] *abscidi*, [3] *abscisum*.

Pedo, [1] *pedere*, [2] *pepedi*, [3] *peditum*, to break wind.

Pendo, [1] *pendere*, [2] *pependi*, [3] *pensum*, to weigh. The compounds lose the reduplication.

Tendo, [1] *tendere*, [2] *tetendi*, [3] *tensum* or *tentum*, to stretch. The compounds lose the reduplication. *Extendo*, *ostendo*, *protendo*, and *retendo*, have both supines. *Detendo* has only *detensum*. All the other compounds have only the supine *-tum*.

Tundo, [1] *tundere*, [2] *tutudi*, [3] *tunsum* and *tusum*, to beat. The compounds lose the reduplication, and have mostly *tusum* in the supine.

To the above, as respects the reduplication, may be added those compounds of *do*, of the first conjugation, that are in the third conjugation; as, *abdo*, [1] *abdere*, [2] *abdidi*, [3] *abditum*, &c.

Those which have *-di* in the perfect, and *-sum* in the supine: —

Accendo, [1] *accendere*, [2] *accendi*, [3] *accensum*, to kindle a fire.

Cudo, [1] *cudere*, [2] *cudi*, [3] *cusum*, to forge

Defendo, [1] *defendere*, [2] *defendi*, [3] *defensum*, to defend. So also *offendo*. Both are derived from the obsolete *fendo*.

Fundo, [1] *fundere*, [2] *fudi*, [3] *fusum*, to pour.

Mando, [1] *mandere*, [2] *mandi*, [3] *mansum*, to chew.

Prehendo or *prendo*, [1] *prehendere*, [2] *prehendi*, [3] *prehensum*, to seize.

Scando, [1] *scandere*, [2] *scandi*, [3] *scansum*, to climb. The compounds change *a* into *e;* as, *ascendo*. [1] *ascendere, ascendi*, [3] *ascensum*.

Strido, [1] *stridere*, [2] *stridi*, [3] —, to creak.

Those which have other irregularities: —

Cedo, [1] *cedere*, [2] *cessi*, [3] *cessum*, to yield.

Fido, [1] *fidere*, [2] *fisus sum*, to trust.

Findo, [1] *findere*, [2] *fidi*, [3] *fissum*, to split.

Frendo, [1] *frendere*, [2] —, [3] *fressum* or *fresum*, to gnash.

Meto, [1] *metere*, [2] *messui*, [3] *messum*, to reap.

Mitto, [1] *mittere*, [2] *misi*, [3] *missum*, to send.

Pando, [2] *pandere*, [2] *pandi*, [3] *passum* or *pansum*, to open.

Peto, [1] *petere*, [2] *petivi*, [3] *petitum*, to ask.

Scindo, [1] *scindere*, [2] *scidi*, [3] *scissum*, to cut.

Sido, [1] *sidere*, [2] *sidi*, [3] —, to settle down. Its compounds mostly have [2] *sedi*, [3] *sessum*, from *sedeo*.

Sisto, [1] *sistere*, [2] *stiti*, [3] *statum*, to stop.

Sterto, [1] *stertere*, [2] *stertui*, [3] —, to snore.

Verto, [1] *vertere*, [2] *verti*, [3] *versum*, to turn.

Verbs in -BO and -PO.

The following may be considered as regular: —

Carpo, [1] *carpere*, [2] *carpsi*, [3] *carptum*, to pluck. So also *glubo*, to peel; *nubo*, to marry; *repo*, to creep; *scalpo*, to engrave; *scribo*, to write; *serpo*, to creep.

Those that are irregular: —

The compounds of *cubo*, to lie, of the first conjugation, which take an *m*, are of the third conjugation; as, *accumbo*, [1] *accumbere*, [2] *accubui*, [3] *accubitum*.

Bibo, [1] *bibere*, [2] *bibi*, [3] *bibitum*, to drink.

Lambo, [1] *lambere*, [2] *lambi*, [3] —, to lick.

Rumpo, [1] *rumpere*, [2] *rupi*, [3] *ruptum*, to break.

Scabo, [1] *scabere*, [2] *scabi*, [3] —, to scratch.

Strepo, [1] *strepere*, [2] *strepui*, [3] *strepitum*, to make a noise.

Verbs in -GO, -CO, CTO, -HO, -QUO, and -GUO.

The following may be considered as regular: —

Cingo, [1] *cingere*, [2] *cinxi*, [3] *cinctum*, to gird. So also *coquo*, to cook; *dico*, to say; *duco*, to lead; *fligo*, to dash (but its compound, *profligo*, is of the first conjugation); *frigo*, to roast; *jungo*, to join; *lingo*, to lick; *mungo*, to blow the nose; *plango*, to lament; *rego*, to rule; *sugo*, to suck; *tego*, to cover; *tingo* or *tinguo*, to dye; *traho*, to draw; *ungo* or *unguo*, to anoint; *veho*, to carry.

Those that take the reduplication in the perfect: —

Parco, [1] *parcere*, [2] *peperci*, [3] *parsum*, to spare. [2] *Parsi* is rare. Some of its compounds change *a* into *e* — as, *imperco*, — and all lose the reduplication.

Pungo, [1] *pungere*, [2] *pupugi*, [2] *punctum*, to prick or pierce. Compounds lose the reduplication.

Tango, [1] *tangere*, [2] *tetigi*, [3] *tactum*, to touch. The compounds change *a* in the first part into *i*, and lose the reduplication.

Pango, when used in the sense of "to make a bargain or contract," has *pepigi* in the perfect. But when used in the sense of "to drive in," it has [1] *pangere*, [2] *panxi* or *pegi*, [3] *pactum* or *panctum*. Some of its compounds change *a* in the first part into *i*; as, *impingo*.

Those that are irregular: —

Ago, [1] *agere*, [2] *egi*, [3] *actum*, to drive. So also the compounds *circumago*, *perago*, and *coago* (contracted *cogo*); but the other compounds change *a* into *i* in the first principal part.

Ango, [1] *angere*, [2] *anxi*, [3] —, to strangle.

Clango, [1] *clangere*, [2] —, [3] —, to clang.

Dego, [1] *degere*, [2] *degi*, [3] —, to spend, to live.

Figo, [1] *figere*, [2] *fixi*, [3] *fixum* (*fictum*), to fix.

Fingo, [1] *fingere*, [2] *finxi*, [3] *fictum*, to feign.

Flecto, [1] *flexere*, [2] *flexi*, [3] *flectum*, to bend.

Frango, [1] *frangere*, [2] *fregi*, [3] *fractum*, to break. Its compounds change *a* into *i* in the first principal part; as, *confringo*, &c.

Ico, [1] *icere*, [2] *ici*, [3] *ictum*, to strike.

Lego, [1] *legere*, [2] *legi*, [3] *lectum*, to read. So also *allego*, *perlego*, *prælego*, *relego*, *sublego*, and *translego*. The other compounds change *e* into *i* in the first principal part; as, *colligo*, [1] *colligere*, [2] *collegi*, [3] *collectum*. *Diligo*, *intelligo*, and *negligo*, have *-lexi* in the perfect.

Linquo, [1] *linquere*, [2] *liqui*, [3] —, to leave. Compounds have *-lictum* in the supine.

Mergo, [1] *mergere*, [2] *mersi*, [3] *mersum*, to dip.

Mingo, [1] *mingere*, [2] *minxi*, [3] *mictum*, to make water.

Necto, [1] *nectere*, [2] *nexi* or *nexui*, [3] *nexum*, to bind or knit.

Ningo, [1] *ningere*, [2] *ninxi*, [3] —, to snow.

Pecto, [1] *pectere*, [2] *pexi*, [3] *pexum* or *pectitum*, to comb.

Plecto, [1] *plectere*, [2] *plexi* or *plexui*, [3] *plexum*, to plait.

Pingo, [1] *pingere*, [2] *pinci*, [3] *pictum*, to paint.

Spargo, [1] *spargere*, [2] *sparsi*, *sparsum*, to scatter. Most of its compounds change *a* into *e;* as, *respergo*, [1] *respergere*, [2] *respersi*, [3] *respersum.*

Stringo, [1] *stringere*, [2] *strinxi*, [3] *strictum*, to bind together.

Tergo, [1] *tergere*, [2] *tersi*, [3] *tersum*, to wipe.

Vergo, [1] *vergere*, [2] —, [3] —, to incline toward.

Vinco, [1] *vincere*, [2] *vici*, [3] *victum*, to conquer.

Verbs in -LO, -MO, -NO, and -RO.

The following may be considered as regular: —

Como, [1] *comere*, [2] *compsi*, [3] *comptum*, to adorn. So also *demo*, to take away; *promo*, to bring out; *sumo*, to take; *temno*, to despise.

Those taking the reduplication in the perfect: —

Cano, [1] *canere*, [2] *cecini*, [3] *cantum*, to sing. The compounds change *a* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as, *concino*, [1] *concinere*, [2] *concinui*, [3] *concentum;* so also, *accino*, *incino*, *intercino*, *occino*, *præcino*, *recino*, and *succino.*

Curro, [1] *curere*, [2] *cucuri*, [3] *cursum*, to run. Some of the compounds drop the reduplication, while others retain it.

Fallo, [1] *fallere*, [2] *fefelli*, [3] *falsum*, to deceive. *Refello*, [2] *refelli*, [3] —.

Pello, [1] *pellere*, [2] *pepuli*, [3] *pulsum*, to drive. Its compounds do not take the reduplication.

Those that are irregular: —

Alo, [1] *alere*, [2] *alui*, [3] *alitum* or *altum*, to nourish.

Cello (obsolete). From it are the compounds *excello*, [1] *excellere*, [2] *excellui*, [3] *excelsum*, to excel; *antecello*, *recello*, *præcello;* likewise *percello*, [2] *perculi*, [3] *perculsum.*

Cerno, [1] *cernere*, [2] *crevi*, [3] *cretum*, to decree, to see. In the sense of "to see," *cerno* has neither perfect nor supine.

Colo, [1] *colere*, [2] *colui*, [3] *cultum*, to till. So likewise its compounds; but when compounded with *ob*, it has the form *occulo.*

Consulo, [1] *consulere*, [2] *consului*, [3] *consultum*, to consult.

Emo, [1] *emere*, [2] *emi*, [3] *emptum*, to buy. In the same manner, *coëmo;* but the other compounds change *e* into *i* in the first principal part; as, *eximo*, [1] *eximere*, [2] *eximi*, [3] *exemptum.*

Fremo, [1]*fremere*, [2]*fremui*, [3]*fremitum*, to roar.

Furo, [1]*furere*, [2]—, [3]—, to be mad, to rage.

Gemo, [1]*gemere*, [2]*gemui*, [3]*gemitum*, to groan.

Gero, [1]*gerere*, [2]*gessi*, [3]*gestum*, to bear.

Gigno, [1]*gignere*, (from the obsolete *geno* it has) [2]*genui*, [3]*genitum*, to beget.

Lino, [1]*linere*, [2]*levi* or *livi*, [3]*litum*, to smear.

Molo, [1]*molere*, [2]*molui*, [3]*molitum*, to grind.

Occulo, [1]*occulere*, [2]*occului*, [3]*occultum*, to conceal.

Pono, [1]*ponere*, [2]*posui* (*posivi* obsolete), [3]*positum*, to place.

Premo, [1]*premere*, [2]*pressi*, [3]*pressum*, to press. Its compounds change *e* into *i* in the first principal part; as, *imprimo*, [1]*imprimere*, [2]*impressi*, [3]*impressum*.

Psallo, [1]*psallere*, [2]*psalli*, [3]—, to play on stringed instruments.

Quæro, [1]*quærere*, [2]*quæsivi*, [3]*quæsitum*, to seek. The compounds change *æ* into *i*; as, *requiro*, [1]*requirere*, [2]*requisivi*, [3]*requisitum*.

Sero, [1]*serere*, [2]*sevi*, [3]*satum*, to sow. Its compounds have *situm* in the supine.

Sero, [1]*serere*, [2]*serui*, [3]*sertum*, to entwine. So also its compounds.

Sino, [1]*sinire*, [2]*sivi*, [3]*situm*, to permit.

Sperno, [1]*spernere*, [2]*sprevi*, [3]*spretum*, to despise.

Sterno, [1]*sternere*, [2]*stravi*, [3]*stratum*, to strew.

Tero, [1]*terere*, [2]*trivi*, [3]*tritum*, to rub.

Tremo, [1]*tremere*, [2]*tremui*, [3]—, to tremble.

Uro, [1]*urere*, [2]*ussi*, [3]*ustum*, to burn.

Vello, [1]*vellere*, [2]*velli* or *vulsi*, [3]*vulsum*, to pluck.

Verro, [1]*verrĕre*, [2]*versi*, [3]*versum*, to sweep out.

Vomo, [1]*vomere*, [2]*vomui*, [3]*vomitum*, to vomit.

Verbs in -SO and -XO.

Arcesso, [1]*arcessere*, [2]*arcessivi*, [3]*arcessitum*, to summon.

Capesso, [1]*capessere*, [2]*capessivi*, [3]*capessitum*, to undertake.

Depso, [1]*depsere*, [2]*depsui*, [3]*depstum* or *depsitum*, to knead.

Facesso, [1]*facessere*, [2]*facessi*, [3]*facessitum*, to execute.

Incesso, [1]*incessere*, [2]*incessivi* or *incessi*, [3]—, to attack.

Lacesso, [1]*lacessere*, [2]*lacessivi*, [3]*lacessitum*, to provoke.

Pinso, [1]*pinsere*, [2]*pinsui* or *pinsi*, [3]*pinsitum*, *pistum*, or *pinsum*, to pound.

Texo, [1]*texere*, [2]*textui*, [3]*textum*, to weave.

Viso, [1]*visere*, [2]*visi*, [3]—, to visit.

Verbs in -SCO, not properly Inceptives.

Compesco, [1] *compescere*, [2] *compescui*, [3] —, to restrain.

Cresco, [1] *crescere*, [2] *crevi*, [3] *cretum*, to grow.

Disco, [1] *discere*, [2] *didici*, [3] —, to learn.

Dispesco, [1] *dispescere*, [2] *dispescui*, [3] —, to divide.

Glisco, [1] *gliscere*, [2] —, [3] —, to grow.

Hisco, *hiscere*, [2] —, [3] —, to gape.

Nosco, [1] *noscere*, [2] *novi*, [3] *notum* (*noscitum*), to know. *G* is inserted before *n* in many of the compounds; as, *agnosco*.

Pasco, [1] *pascere*, [1] *pavi*, [3] *pastum*, to feed.

Quiesco, [1] *quiescere*, [1] *quievi*, [3] *quietum*, to rest.

Scisco, [1] *sciscere*, [2] *scivi*, [3] *scitum*, to ordain.

Suesco, [1] *suescere*, [2] *suevi*, [3] *suetum*, to be accustomed.

INCEPTIVES

Inceptives in *-sco* are chiefly formed from verbs of the second conjugation by changing *-o* into *-sco;* as, *calesco*, [2] *calescere*, [3] *calui*, to grow warm — from *caleo*, [1] *calere*, [2] *calui*, to be warm. The perfect tense being always the same as the perfect of the verb from which the inceptive is derived, so also the supine, when there is one. These are termed verbal inceptives. Inceptives are also sometimes formed from nouns and adjectives, and are termed nominal inceptives. They are conjugated like verbal inceptives; as, *maturesco*, [1] *maturescere*, [2] *maturui*, to grow ripe — from *maturus*, ripe.

Verbal Inceptives, having only the Perfect of the simple Verb.

Acesco (*aceo*), [2] *acui*, to grow sour.

Albesco (*albeo*), [2] *albui*, to grow white.

Aresco (*areo*), [2] *arui*, to grow dry.

Calesco (*caleo*), [2] *calui*, to become warm.

Canesco (*caneo*), [2] *canui*, to become gray.

Conticesco (*taceo*), [2] *conticui*, to become silent.

Contremisco (*tremo*), [2] *contremui*, to tremble.

Defervesco (*ferveo*), [2] *deferbui*, to lose heat;

Delitesco (*lateo*), [2] *delitui*, to lurk.

Effervesco (*ferveo*), [2] *efferbui*, to grow hot.

Excandesco (*candeo*), [2] *excandui*, to become a white heat.

Extimesco (*timeo*), [2] *extimui*, to fear greatly.

Floresco (*floreo*), [2] *efflorui*, to begin to flourish.

Hæresco (*hæreo*), [2] *hæsi*, to adhere.

Horresco (*horreo*), [2] *horrui*, to become rough.

Ingemisco (*gemo*), [2] *ingemui*, to groan.

Intumesco (*tumeo*), [2] *intumui*, to swell up.

Irraucisco (*raucio*), [2] *irrausi*, to become hoarse.

Languesco (*langueo*), [2] *langui*, to grow languid.

Liquesco (*liqueo*), [2]*licui*, to become liquid.
Madesco (*madeo*), [2]*madui*, to become wet.
Marcesco (*marceo*), [2]*marcui*, to pine away.
Occallesco (*calleo*), [2]*occallui*, to become callous.
Pallesco (*palleo*), [2]*pallui*, to turn pale.
Patesco (*pateo*), [2]*patui*, to be open.
Putresco (*putreo*), [2]*putrui*, to become putrid.
Resipisco (*sapio*), [2]*resipui*, to recover wisdom.
Rubesco (*rubeo*), [2]*rubui*, to grow red.
Senesco (*seneo*), [2]*senui*, to grow old.
Stupesco (*stupeo*), [2]*stupui*, to become astonished.
Tabesco (*tabeo*), [2]*tabui*, to waste away.
Tepesco (*tepeo*), [2]*tepui*, to grow warm.
Valesco (*valeo*), [2]*valui*, to become strong.
Viresco (*vireo*), [2]*virui*, to grow green.

Verbal Inceptives, having the Perfect and Supine of the simple Verb.

Coalesco (*coaleo*), [2]*coalui*, [3]*coalitum*, to grow together.
Concupisco (*cupio*), [2]*concupivi*, [3]*concupitum*, to desire.
Convalesco (*valeo*), [2]*convalui*, [3]*convalitum*, to recover health.
Exardesco (*ardeo*), [2]*exarsi*, [3]*exarsum*, to be inflamed.
Indolesco (*doleo*), [2]*indolui*, [3]*indolitum*, to feel pain.
Inveterasco (*invetero*), [2]*inveteravi*, [3]*inveteratum*, to grow old.
Obdormisco (*dormio*), [2]*obdormivi*, [3]*obdormitum*, to fall asleep.
From *olesco* (*oleo*), scarcely used, are formed: *abolesco*, [2]*abolevi*, [3]*abolitum*; *adolesco*, [2]*adolevi*, [3]*adultum*; *exolesco*, [2]*exolevi*, [3]*exoletum*; *inolesco*, [2]*inolevi*, [3]*inolitum*; *obsolesco*, [2]*obsolevi*, [3]*obsoletum*.
Revivisco (*vivo*), [2]*revixi*, [3]*revictum*, to recover life.

Nominal Inceptives, without a Perfect.

Ægresco (*æger*), to grow sick.
Ditesco (*dives*), to grow rich.
Dulcesco (*dulcis*), to grow sweet.
Grandesco (*grandis*), to grow large.
Gravesco (*gravis*), to grow heavy.
Incurvesco (*curvus*), to bec. crooked.
Integrasco (*integer*), to be renewed.
Juvenesco (*juvenis*), to grow young.
Mitesco (*mitis*), to grow mild.
Mollesco (*mollis*), to grow soft.
Pinguesco (*pinguis*), to grow fat.
Plumesco (*pluma*), to get feathers.
Puerasco (*puer*), to become a boy.
Sterilesco (*sterilis*), to bec. barren.
Teneresco and *tenerasco* (*tener*), tc become tender.

Nominal Inceptives, with a Perfect.

Crebresco (*creber*), [2]*crebui* or *crebrui*, to increase.
Duresco (*durus*), [2]*durui*, to grow hard.
Evanesco (*vanus*), [2]*evanui*, to disappear.
Innotesco (*notus*), [2]*innotui*, to become known.

Macresco (*macer*), [2] *macrui*, to grow lean.
Mansuesco (*mansuetus*), [2] *mansuevi*, to grow tame.
Maturesco (*maturus*), [2] *maturui*, to grow ripe.
Nigresco (*niger*), [2] *nigrui*, to grow black.
Obmutesco (*mutus*), [2] *obmutui*, to become dumb.
Obsurdesco (*surdus*), [2] *obsurdui*, to become deaf.
Recrudesco (*crudus*), [2] *recrudui*, to open again (of a wound).
Vilesco (*vilis*), [2] *vilui*, to become cheap.

4. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The desiderative verbs in *-urio* want both the second and third principal parts; but *-esurio* has [2] *-esurivi*, participle *-esuriturus*. *Nupturio* and *parturio* have the perfect or second principal part, but no supine or third principal part.

The following verbs are those which do not conform to the regular forms [1] *-ir*, [2] *-ivi*, [3] *-itum*: —

Amicio, [1] *amicire*, [2] *amicui* or *amixi*, [3] *amictum*, to clothe.
Aperio, [1] *aperire*, [2] *aperui*, [3] *apertum*, to open. So also *operio* and *cooperio*; but *comperio* and *reperio* have *i* in the perfect, in place of *ui*.
Bullio, [1] *bullire*, [2] *bullii*, [3] *bullitum*, to bubble.
Cæcutio, [1] *cæcutire*, [2] —, [3] —, to be dim-sighted.
Cambio, [1] *cambire*, [2] *campsi*, [3] —, to exchange.
Dementio, [1] *dementire*, [2] —, [3] —, to be mad.
Farcio, [1] *farcire*, [2] *farsi*, [3] *fartum* or *farcitum*, to cram. The compounds generally change *a* into *e*.
Ferio, [1] *ferire*, [2] —, [3] —, to strike.
Ferocio, [1] *ferocire*, [2] —, [3] —, to be fierce.
Fulcio, [1] *fulcire*, [2] *fulsi*, [3] *fultum*, to prop.
Gannio, [1] *gannire*, [2] —, [3] —, to bark.
Glocio, [1] *glocire*, [2] —, [3] —, to cluck (as a hen).
Grandio, [1] *grandire*, [2] —, [3] —, to make great.
Haurio, [1] *haurire*, [2] *hausi*, [3] *haustum*, to draw out.
Hinnio, [1] *hinnire*, [2] —, [3] —, to neigh.
Ineptio, [1] *ineptire*, [2] —, [3] —, to trifle.
Lascivio, [1] *lascivire*, [2] *lascivii*, [3] *lascivitum*, to be wanton.
Prurio, [1] *prurire*, [2] —, [3] —, to itch.
Raucio, [1] *raucire*, [2] *rausi*, [3] *rausum*, to be hoarse.
Rugio, [1] *rugire*, [2] —, [3] —, to roar (as a lion).
Sagio, [1] *sagire*, [2] —, [3] —, to perceive keenly.
Salio, [1] *salire*, [2] *salui* or *salii*, [3] *sultum*, to leap. The compounds change *a* into *i*.
Sancio, [1] *sancire*, [2] *sanxi*, [3] *sancitum* or *sanctum*, to ratify.

Sarcio, [1] *sarcire*, [2] *sarsi*, [3] *sartum*, to patch.
Sarrio, [1] *sarrire*, [2] *sarrivi* or *sarrui*, [3] *sarritum*, to weed.
Scaturio, [1] *scaturire*, [2] —, [3] —, to gush out.
Sentio, [1] *sentire*, [2] *sensi*, [3] *sensum*, to feel.
Sepelio, [1] *sepelire*, [2] *sepelivi* or *sepelii*, [3] *sepultum*, to bury.
Sepio, [1] *sepire*, [2] *sepsi*. [3] *septum*, to hedge in.
Singultio, [1] *singultire*, [2] —, [3] —, to hiccup.
Tussio, [1] *tussire*, [2] —, [3] —, to cough.
Venio, [1] *venire*, [2] *veni*, [3] *ventum*, to come.
Vincio, [1] *vincire*, [2] *vinxi*, [3] *vinctum*, to bind.

DEPONENT VERBS. (E. 145.)

1. *First Conjugation.*

Deponent verbs of the first conjugation are regular; as, *cono*, *conari*, *conatus sum*, to endeavour: —

Abominor, to abhor.
Adhortor, to encourage.
Admiror, to admire.
Adversor, to oppose.
Adulor, to flatter.
Æmulor, to rival.
Alucinor, to talk idly.
Amplexor, to embrace.
Ancillor, to be a handmaid.
Apricor, to sun oneself.
Aquor, to fetch water.
Arbitror, to think.
Architector, to build.
Argumentor, to prove.
Argutor, to chatter.
Aspernor, to despise.
Assector, to accompany.
Assentor, to agree.
Auctionor, to sell at auction.
Aucupor, to catch birds.
Auguror, to practice soothsaying.
Auspicor, to practice soothsaying.
Auxilior, to help.
Aversor, to dislike.
Bacchor, to revel.
Calumnior, to cavil.
Cauponor, to deal, retail.
Causor, to allege.
Cavillor, to ridicule.
Circulor, to form a circle round one.
Comissor, to feast.
Comitor, to accompany.
Commentor, to reflect on.
Commiseror, to pity.
Concionor, to harangue.
Confabulor, to converse together.
Conor, to endeavour.
Cansilior, to advise.
Conspicor, to see.
Consector, to pursue.
Contemplor, to contemplate.
Convicior, to revile.
Convivor, to feast.
Cornicor, to chatter (as a crow).
Criminor, to accuse.
Cunctor, to delay.
Dedignor, to disdain.
Dehortor, to dissuade.
Demiror, to wonder at.
Depeculor, to plunder.
Deprecor, to deprecate.
Despicor, to despise.
Detestor, to imprecate, to detest.
Deversor, to lodge.
Digladior, to fight.
Dignor, to deem worthy.
Dominor, to rule.
Epulor, to feast.
Execror, to execrate.
Exhortor, to exhort.
Expatior, to deviate.
Fabricor, to fashion.
Fabulor, to talk.
Famulor, to serve.
Feneror, to lend on interest.
Ferior, to keep holiday.
Frumentor, to forage.
Frustror, to disappoint.
Furor, to steal.
Glorior, to boast.
Græcor, to live like a Greek.
Grassor, to stride forward.
Gratificor, to comply with.

Gratulor and *Grator*, too give thanks.
Hariolor, to practice soothsaying.
Helluor, to gluttonize.
Hortor, to encourage.
Hospitor, to be a guest.
Imaginor, to imagine.
Imitor, to imitate.
Imprecor, to imprecate.
Indignor, to disdain.
Infitior, to deny.
Insector, to run after.
Insidior, to plot.
Interpretor, to explain.
Jaculor, to hurl.
Jocor, to jest.
Lœtor, to rejoice.
Lamentor, to lament.
Lignor, to gather wood.
Latrocinior, to rob.
Lenocinor, to flatter.
Libidinor, to be voluptuous.
Licitor, to bid at auction.
Lucror, to gain.
Luctor, to wrestle.
Ludificor, to ridicule.
Machinor, to devise.
Materior, to fell timber.
Medicor, to heal.
Meditor, to meditate.
Mercor, to buy.
Meridior, to repose at noon.
Metor, to measure out.
Minor and *Minitor*, to threaten.
Miror, to wonder.
Miseror, to pity.
Moderor, to restrain, to govern.
Modulor, to modulate.
Morigeror, to comply.
Moror, to delay.
Muneror, to reward.
Mutuor, to borrow.
Negotior, to traffic.
Nidulor, to build a nest.
Nugeor, to trifle.
Nundinor, to sell openly.
Nutricor, to nourish.
Obsonor, to cater.
Obtestor, to beseech.
Odoror, to smell.
Ominor, to prophesy.
Operor, to work.
Opinor, to think.
Opitulor, to help.
Oscitor, to yawn.
Osculor, to kiss.
Otior, to be at leisure.
Pabalor, to graze.
Palor, to wander about.
Parasitor, to act the parasite.
Patrocinor, to patronize.
Percontor, to inquire.
Peregrinor, to be a stranger.
Periclitor, to try.
Perscrutor, to search.
Philosophor, to philosophise.
Pigneror, to take a pledge.
Pigror, to be idle.
Piscor, to fish.
Populor, to lay waste.
Prœdor, to plunder.
Prœstolor, to wait for.
Prœvaricor, to act dishonestly.
Precor, to pray.
Prœlior, to fight.
Ratiocinor, to reason.
Recordor, to recollect.
Refragor, to oppose.
Remuneror, to reward.
Rimor, to search.
Rixor, to wrangle.
Rusticor, to live in the country.
Scitor and *Sciscitor*, to inquire.
Scrutor, to search.
Sector, to follow.
Sermocinor, to hold a discourse.
Solor, to comfort.
Spatior, to walk about.
Speculor, to spy out.
Stipulor, to bargain.
Stomachor, to be indignant.
Suavior, to kiss.
Suffragor, to assent to.
Sufuror, to steal.
Suspicor, to suspect.
Tergiversor, to tergiversate.
Testor and *testificor*, to testify.
Tricor, to make difficulties.
Tristor, to be sad.
Trutinor, to weigh.
Tumultuor, to make an uproar.
Tutor, to defend.
Urinor, to dip or plunge under water.
Vador, to summon to trial.
Vagor, to wander.
Vaticinor, to foretell.
Velificor, to steer towards.
Velitor, to skirmish.
Veneror, to venerate.
Venor, to hunt.
Verecundor, to be bashful.
Versor, to be employed.
Vociferor, to vociferate.

2. *Deponents of the Second Conjugation.*

Fateor, fassus sum, to confess. The compounds change *a* into *i* in the first principal part, and *a* into *e* in the second principal part; as, *confiteor, confessus sum;* so *diffiteor* and *profiteor.*

Liceor, licitus sum, to bid a price.

Medeor, to cure, wants the participle.

Mereor, meritus sum, to deserve. So likewise its compounds *commereor, demereor*, and *promereor.*

Misereor, miseritus or *misertus sum*, to pity.

Polliceor, pollicitus sum, to promise.

Reor, ratus sum, to think.

Tueor, tuitus sum, to protect. So *contueor, intueor.*

Vereor, veritus sum, to fear. So its compounds *revereor, subvereor.*

3. *Deponents of the Third Conjugation.*

Apiscor, aptus sum, to get. Its compounds change *a* into *i* in the first principal part, and into *e* in the third; as, *adipiscor, adeptus sum;* so *indipiscor.*

Defetiscor, defessus sum, to be weary.

Expergiscor, experrectus sum, to awake.

Fruor, fruitus or *fructus sum*, to enjoy.

Fungor, functus sum, to perform. So the compounds *defungor, confungor.*

Gradior, gressus sum, to walk. The compounds change *a* into *e;* as, *aggredior, congredior, digredior, egredior, ingredior, progredior, regredior.*

Irascor, to be angry.

Labor, lapsus sum, to fall.

Liquor, to melt.

Loquor, locutus sum, to speak. So also the compounds *alloquor, colloquor, eloquor, interloquor, obloquor.*

Miniscor (obsolete). *Comminiscor, commentus sum*, to invent. *Reminiscor* has no perfect.

Morior, mortus sum, to die. So *commorior, demorior, emorior.*

Nanciscor, nactus or *nanctus sum*, to obtain.

Nascor, natus sum (*nasciturus*), to be born. So its compounds *enascor, innascor, renascor.*

Nitor, nisus or *nixus*, to strive. So *adnitor, enitor, obnitor.*

Obliviscor, oblitus sum, to forget.

Paciscor, pactus sum, to bargain. So *depaciscor.*

Patior, passus sum, to suffer.

Perpetior, perpessus sum, to endure.

(From *plecto*, to twine) *amplector, amplexus sum*, to embrace. So *complector* and *circumplector.*

Proficiscor, profectus sum, to depart.

Queror, questus sum, to complain. So *conqueror.*

Ringor, to snarl.

Sequor, secutus sum, to follow. So *assequor, consequor, exsequor, insequor, obsequor, persequor, prosequor, subsequor.*

Ulciscor, ultus sum, to revenge.

Utor, usus sum, to use. So *abutor.*

(From *veho*) *circumvehor, circumvectus sum*, to travel round. So *invehor* and *prætervehor.*

Vescor, to eat.

4. *Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation.*

Assentior, assensus sum, to assent.

Blandior, blanditus sum, to flatter.

Experior, expertus sum, to experience or to try. So also *comperior*, but only in the present tense.

Largior, largitus sum, to give or to bestow.

Mentior, mentitus sum, to lie.

Metior, mensus sum, to measure. So also *dimetior, emetior, permetior.*

Molior, molitus sum, to strive, to toil. So also *amolior, demolior.*

Opperior, oppertus sum, to wait for.

Ordior, orsus sum, to begin. So *exordior, redordior.*

Orior, ortus sum, to rise or spring up. So also *coorior* and *exorior.*

(*Perior*, obsolete.) *Experior, expertus sum*, to try; *opperior, oppertus* or *opperitus sum*, to wait for.

Partior, partitus sum, to divide. So also *dispertior* and *impertior.*

Potior, potitus sum, to obtain.

Sortior, sortitus sum, to cast lots.

DEFECTIVE VERBS. (E. 231.)

1. *The Parts of AIO, I say or affirm, that are used, are:* —

(1) Aio [1], ais [2], ait [3], — [pl. 1], — [pl 2], aiunt [pl. 3].

(2) Aiebam [1], aiebas [2], aiebat [3]; aiebamus [pl. 1], aiebatis [pl. 2], aiebant [pl. 3].

sb. (1) — [1], aias [2], aiat [3]; — [pl. 1], — [pl. 2], aiant [pl. 3].

im. Aï [2], — [3]; — [pl. 2], — [pl. 3].

(1) Aiens [part.].

The comic writers use in the imperfect *aibam*, &c. *Ain* is used for *ais ne* or *aisne.*

INQUAM, I say.

(1) Inquam [1], inquis [2], inquit [3]; inquimus [pl. 1], inquitis [pl. 2], inquiunt [pl. 3].

(2) — [1], — [2], inquiebat [3]; — [pl. 1], — [pl. 2], inquiebant [pl. 3].

(3) — [1], inquies [2], inquiet [3]; — [pl. 1], — [pl 2], — [pl. 3].

(4) — [1], inquisti [2], inquit [3]; — [pl 1], — [pl. 2], — [pl. 3].

sb. (1) — [1], inquias [2], inquiat [3]; — [pl. 1], inquiatis [pl. 2], inquiant [pl. 3].

im. Inque [2], inquito [3]; inquite [pl. 2], — [pl. 3].

3. *FARI, to speak.*

(1) — [1], — [2], fatur [3]; — [pl. 1], — [pl. 2], — [pl. 3].

(3) Fabor [1], — [2], fabitur [3].

(4) Fatus est [3].

(5) Fatus eram [1].

im. Fare [2].

in. (1) Fari *or* farier; (1) fans [part.]; (4) fatus [part]; (3) fandus [part.]

G. Fandi [ger.]; *ab.* fando [ger.].

This defective verb has also the compounds *affari, effari, interfari, præfari, profari.*

4. *MEMINI, I remember.*

(4) Memini [1], meministi [2], meminit [3]; meminimus [pl. 1], meministis [pl. 2], meminerunt [pl. 3].

(5) Memineram [1], memineras [2], meminerat [3]; memineramus [pl. 1], memineratis [pl. 2], meminerant [3].

(6) Meminero [1], memineris [2], meminerit [3]; meminerimus [pl. 1], memineritis [pl. 2], meminerint [pl. 3].

sb. (4) Meminerim [1], memineris [2], meminerit [3]; meminerimus [pl. 1], memineritis [pl. 2], meminerint [pl. 3].

sb. (5) Meminessem [1], meminesses [2], meminesset [3]; meminessemus [pl. 1], meminesetis [pl. 2], meminessent [pl. 3].

im. Memento [2], — [3]; mementote [pl. 2], — [pl. 3].

in. (4) Meminisse.

5. *CŒPI, I have begun.*

Cœpi is conjugated like *memini,* but has no imperative. It has, however, the future participle *cœpturus,* and the perfect *cœptus.*

6. *NOVI, I know.*

Novi is conjugated like *memini,* only it has no imperative.

7. *ODI, I hate.*

Odi is conjugated like *memini*, but has no imperative. It has the future participle *osurus*, and the perfect *osus*.

3. *Quæso, I beseech.*

(1) Quæso [1], — [2], — [3]; quæsumus [pl. 1], — [pl. 2], — [pl. 3].

9. *AVE, hail.*

im. Ave *or* aveto [2]; avete *or* avetote [pl. 2]. in. (2) Avere.

10. *SALVE, hail.*

(1) Salveo [1]. (6) Salvebis [2]. in. (1) Salvere.
im. Salve *or* salveto [2]; salvete *or* salvetote [pl. 2].

11. im. *APAGE, begone* [2].

12. *CEDO, tell, give.*

im. Cedo [2], — [3]; cette [pl. 2], for cedite.

13. *CONFIT, it is done.*

(1) Confit [3]. (3) Confiet [3].
sb. (1) Confiat [3]. (2) Confieret [3]. in. (1) Confieri.

14. *DEFIT, it is wanting.*

(1) Defit [3]; defiunt [pl. 3]. (3) Defiet [3]. sb. (1) Defiat.
in. (1) Defieri.

15. *INFIT, he begins.*

(1) Infit [3]; infiunt [pl. 3].

16. *OVAT, he rejoices.*

(1) Ovat [3]. sb. (1) Ovet [3]. (3) Ovaret [3].
(1) Ovans [part.]. (4) Ovatus [part.] (3) Ovaturus [part.]
gen. Ovandi [ger.].

17. *FOREM, I should be.*

sb. (2) Forem [1], fores [2], foret [3]; — [pl. 1], — [pl. 2], forent [pl. 3].
in. (3) Fore.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. (E. 239.)

1. Those generally considered as proper impersonal verbs are: — *Oportet*, it behoves; *pudet*, it shames me, or I am ashamed; *tædet*, it disgusts me; *miseret*, it pities me, or I pity; *piget*, it grieves me; *pœnitet*, it repents; *libet*, it pleases; *licet*, it is permitted; *decet*, it becomes; *liquet*, it is evident. (The four last occur also in the third person plural.)

2. To the above may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather or of the atmosphere, or the operations of nature; as, *pluit*, it rains; *grandinat*, it hails; *tonat*, it thunders; *ningit*, it snows; *gelat*, it freezes; *lapidat*, it rains stones; *fulget*, *fulgurat*, and *fulminat*, it lightens; *lucescit* and *illucescit*, it dawns; *vesperascit*, *advesperascit*, and *invesperascit*, the evening approaches.

3. Many verbs are used occasionally in the third person as impersonals; as, from *delecto*, I delight, is formed the impersonal *delectat*, it delights.

4. A great many verbs are used impersonally in the passive; as, *pugnatur*, it is fought.

5. As impersonal verbs are not used in the imperative, they take the subjunctive in place thereof; as, *delectet*, let it delight you.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

Derivation of Nouns from other Nouns.

1. Diminutives are generally denoted by the terminations *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-ulum*, or in other cases by *-culus*, *-cula*, *-culum:* each of the three according to the gender of the primitive word. These terminations are added to the primitive word, after the removal of the oblique cases; as, *virga*, a rod — *virgula*, a little rod; *rex* (*regis*), a king — *regulus*, a little king. *-Olus*, *-ola*, *-olum*, is used for *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-ulum*, when the termination *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, of the primitive word, is preceded by *i;* as, *filius* — *filiola*. Some diminutives end in *-ellus;* as, *libra* — *libellus*. Others in *-iculus;* as, *pons* — *ponticulus*. A few end in *-uleus;* as, *equus* — *equuleus*. Some few also in *-io;* as, *homo* — *homuncio*.

2. Augmentatives end in *o*, or have *o* added to the primitive word; as, *naso*, one who has a large nose — from *nasus*, a nose.

3. The termination *-io* often denotes the trade or profession of a person; as, *ludio*, an actor — from *ludus*, a play

4. *Ium*, added to the primitive word, denotes the office of the thing signified by it, and also the persons exercising such office collectively; as, *collegium*, an assembloge of men having some object or exercising some function; also, the members of such assemblage. When *ium* is added to verbals in *-or* it denotes the place where the action is done; as, *repositorium*, a repository.

5. *Arium* denotes a receptacle; as, *granarium*, a granary.

6. *Etum* added to the names of plants denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, from *quercus*, the oak, *quercetum*, a plantation of oaks.

7. *Ile* added to the names of animals denotes the place in which they are kept; as, *bovile*, a stall for oxen.

8. Patronimics are names derived from a father, an ancestor, or the founder of a nation. They are properly Greek nouns. Masculine patronimics end in *-ides*, *-ades*, *-iades;* as, *Piramus* — *Priamides*, the descendents or sons of Priam.

The feminine patronimics end in *-is*, *-eis*, *-ias;* as, *Nereus* (masculine), *Nereides* (feminine) — *Nereis.*

Derivation of Nouns from Adjectives.

Abstract nouns are formed by adding various terminations to the primitive word; as,

1. *Itas*, equivalent to the English termination "ty" or "ity", is added to adjectives of each declension; as, from *cupidus*, desirous, covetous, is formed *cupiditas*, cupidity.

2. *Etas* is added to the primitive when terminating in *i;* as, *pius*, pious — *pietas*, piety.

3. *Stas* is added in place of *-stus;* as, *honestus*, honest — *honestas*, honesty.

4. *Ia*, in signification like the English "ce" or "cy", is added to the primitives of adjectives of one termination in the nominative singular for all the genders; as, *clemens*, clement — *clementia*, clemency. *Ia* is also added to some adjectives in *-us* and *-er*.

5. *Itudo* is added to the primitives of adjectives in *-us*, and sometimes to adjectives of the third declension of two or three terminations; as, *altus*, high — *altitudo*, height; *fortis*, strong — *fortitudo*, fortitude. *Udo* is generally added to polysyllabic adjectives in *-tus;* as, *consuetus* — *consuetudo.*

6. *Monia* is added to some adjectives; as, *acer*, acrid — *acrimonia*, acrimony.

7. *Itia* and *ities* sometimes occur, added to adjectives in *-us* and *-is;* as, *justus*, just — *justitia*, justice.

8. *Edo* is sometimes found added to adjectives; as, *dulcis*, sweet — *dulcedo*, sweetness.

Derivation of Nouns from Verbs.

1. *Or*, added to the third principal part of the verb, (that is, in place of the supine in *-um*,) denotes the male performing the action implied by the verb; as, *auditum*, a hearing—*auditor*, a (male) auditor. *Rix*, added in the same manner, denotes the female; as, *auditrix*, a (female) auditor. Some few substantives in *-tor* are formed from nouns; as, *janua*, a door—*janitor*, a door-keeper.

2. But *or*, when added to the first principal part of the verb, especially of intransitives, denotes the action or condition expressed by the verb; as, *amo*, I love — *amor*, love.

3. The terminations *-io* (gen. *-ionis*) and *-us* (gen. *-ûs*), when added to the third principal part, form abstract nouns; as, from *lectum* is formed *lectio*, reading.

4. *Ura*, added to the third principal part, had sometimes the same meaning as the terminations *-io* and *-us;* and sometimes it denotes the result of the action; as, *vinctura*, a binding.

5. The termination *-ela* has often the same meaning as the termination *-ura;* as, *loquela*, speech. So likewise the termination *-imonia* or *-imonium.*

6. The termination *-men* or *-mentum*, added to the first principal part, denotes the thing to which the action belongs; as, from *fluere*, to flow, is derived *flumen*, a river.

7. The terminations *-ulum*, *-bulum*, *-culum*, *-brum*, *-crum*, and *-trum*, added to the first principal part, denote the instrument or place for performing the action; as, *jaculum*, a javelin — from *jacio*, I throw. (*Culum* is sometimes contracted into *clum.*)

8. *Ium*, added to the first or third principal part, denotes the effect of the verb and the place of action; as, *gaudium*, joy; *comitium*. the place of assemblage of the Comitia.

9. *A* and *o*, added to the first principal part of some verbs, denote the subject of the action; as, *conviva*, a guest.

10. *Igo* or *ido*, added to the first principal part of a verb, denotes some state or condition; as, *origo*, origin.

COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

1. The Latin language, though destitute of the power of forming compound words like the Greek and some other languages, yet has many compound words and compound nouns.

2. Two nouns are sometimes compounded together to form a noun; as, *rupicapra*, a wild goat — from *rupes*, a rock, and *capra*, a goat: the connecting vowel of the two words being here *i;* but

sometimes the first word is in the genitive; as, *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer. In some other compounds both words are declined; as, *respublica*, the republic — gen. *reipublicæ*, of the republic; &c.

3. An adjective and a noun are sometimes compounded together to form a noun; as, *æquinoctium*, the equinox — from *æquus*, equal, and *nox*, night.

4. An adverb and a noun are sometimes compounded together to form a noun; as, *nefas*, wickedness — from *ne*, not, and *fas*, what is right or allowed.

5. Prepositions and nouns are compounded together; as, *incuria*, want of care — from *in* and *cura*.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

Derivation of Adjectives from Nouns.

1. The termination *-eus*, added to the noun, denotes the material of which any thing is made; also sometimes similarity; as, *ligneus*, wooden. Some adjectives of this kind have a double form in *-neus* and *-nus;* as, *eburneus* and *eburnus*, of ivory.

2. The terminations *-alis*, *-aris*, *-anus*, *-ilis*, *-atilis*, *-icius*, *-icus*, *-ius*, *-eus*, and *-inus*, generally denote belonging or relating to a person or thing; as, *civicus*, relating to a citizen; *consularis*, consular, or appertaining to a consul.

3. *Arius* denotes some general relation to what the noun expresses, but more particularly, with *faber* understood, it denotes the occupation, trade, or profession of a person; as, *argentarius*, a silversmith.

4. The terminations *-osus* and *-lentus* denote fulness or abundance; as, *aquosus*, watery, or abounding in water; *opulentus*, opulent, or abounding in wealth. *Osus* is added to nouns of the fourth declension. *Lentus* takes the connecting vowel *u* or *o* before it.

5. A great many adjectives, though formed from nouns, have endings like perfect participles, and generally denote furnished with or having; as, *barbatus*, bearded, or having a beard.

6. The terminations *-ianus* and *-anus*, are generally used to form adjectives from Roman names; and *-eus* or *-inus* from Greek names; as, *Marcellianus*, *Philippeus*.

7. The terminations *-ensis*, *-inus*, *-as*, and *-anus*, are generally used to form adjectives from Roman names of places, especially of towns; as, from *Catina*, *Catinensis*. Adjectives from Greek names of places are formed differently, but often in *-ius* and *-æus;* as, *Rhodius*.

8. The terminations *-icus* and *-ius* are generally used to form adjectives from names of nations; as, *Britannicus*, from *Britannus*.

Derivation of Adjectives from other Adjectives.

1. Diminutives are formed from adjectives by the terminations *-ulus*, *-olus*, *-culus*, and *-ellus*, in the same manner as for nouns; as, *lentulus*, a littlc slow. Diminutives are sometimes used with comparatives; and sometimes there are double diminutives.

2. The termination *-aneus*, added to some few adjectives, denotes a resemblance to the quality expressed by the adjective; as, *super vacaneus*, of a superfluous nature.

Derivation of Adjectives from Verbs.

1. *Bundus*, added to the first principal part of the verb, has in general the meaning of the present tense; but mostly in a strengthened sense; as, *errabundus*, erring; *mirabundus*, full of admiration. *Cundus* has a similar meaning; as, *facundus*, eloquent.

2. *Idus* denotes the quality expressed by the verb, and is principally added to neuter verbs; as, *madidus*, wet — from *madere*, to be wet. The termination *-uus* is of like meaning; as, *congruus*, agreeing; and when used with active verbs it gives them a passive meaning; as, *conspicuus*, visible.

3. The terminations *-ilis* and *-bilis* denote the possibility of a thing, in a passive sense; as, *fragilis*, fragile. Some however have an active sense; as, *fertilis*, fertile.

4. *Icius* or *-itius*, added to the third principal part of a verb, has a passive meaning; as, *fictitius*, feigned.

5. *Ax*, added to the verb, denotes a propensity, generally a faulty one; as, *pugnax*, pugnacious. Adjectives in *-ulus* have a similar meaning; as, *credulus*, credulous.

6. *Ivus*, joined to the third principal part of the verb, denotes fitness, or ability to produce the action; as, *disjunctivus*, disjunctive.

COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Some adjectives are compounded of two nouns; as, *ignicomus*, having fiery hair — from *ignis* and *coma*.

2. Some adjectives are compounded of a noun and an adjective; as, *lucifugax*, shunning light — from *lux* and *fugax*.

3. Some of a noun and verb; as, *carnivorus*, carnivorous — from *caro* and *voro*.

4. Some of an adjective and a noun; as, *celeripes*, swift-footed — from *celer* aud *pes*.

5. Some of an adjective and verb; as, *magnificus*, magnificent — from *magnus* and *facio*.

6. Some of two adjectives; as, *multicavus*, having many cavities—from *multus* and *cavus*.

7. Some of an adverb and noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied.

8. Some of an adverb and adjective; as, *maledicax*, slanderous.

9. Some of an adverb and verb; as, *malevolus*, malevolent.

10. Some of a preposition and noun; as, *inermis*, unarmed.

11. Some of a preposition and adjective; as, *concavus*, concave.

12. Some of a reposition and verb; as, *insciens*, ignorant.

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

Verbs are derived from other verbs, or from nouns or adjectives.

Verbs derived from other Verbs.

These are either — 1. Frequentatives; 2. Desideratives; 3. Diminutives; 4. Intensitives; or, 5. Inceptives.

1. Frequentatives denote repetition or increase of the action. They are of the first conjugation, and formed from the third principal part of the verb by adding *o*, or rather changing *um* into *o*. In verbs of the first conjugation, *-at*, before the supine, is frequently changed into *-ito;* as, *dicto*, I say often — from *dico; clamito*, I cry often — from *clamo*, [3] *clamatum*. Some frequentatives are formed by adding *-ito* to the first principal part; as, *latito*, to keep oneself hid — from *lateo*.

2. Desideratives denote a desire of doing the action. They are of the fourth conjugation, and formed by adding *-urio* to the third principal part; as, *empturio*, I desire to buy — from *emo*, [3] *emptum*. But when the *u* in *-urio* is long it does not constitute a desiderative.

3. Diminutives are not many in number. They denote a trifling and feeble action, and are formed by adding *-illo* to the verb; as, *cantillo*, I sing in an under voice — from *cano*. They are all of the first conjugation.

4. Intensitives denote earnest or eager action. They are generally formed by adding *-esso*, *-isso*, or *-so*, to the verb; as, *fascesso*, to act earnestly — from *facio*.

5. Inceptives denote the commencement of an action. They are formed by adding *-sco* to the verb; as, *calesco*, I become warm — from *caleo*. They are all of the third conjugation.

Verbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives.

1. These are generally formed by adding *-o* or *-eo* to the root of the noun or adjective; as, *nomino*, I name — from *nomen; libero*, I set free — from *liber; albeo*, I am white — from *albus*.

COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

Verbs are variously compounded, viz.: —

1. Some of a noun and verb; as, *belligero*, I wage war.

2. Some of an adjective and verb; as, *multiplico*, I multiply.

3. Some of two verbs; as, *patefacio*, to make open.

4. Some of an adverb and verb; as, *maledico*, I speak ill of.

5. Some of a preposition and noun; as, *pernocto*, I watch, or I spend the night.

6. Some of a preposition and verb; as, *adduco*, I lead to.

ADVERBS. (E. 242.)

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs derived from Nouns.

1. Some adverbs are only the different cases of nouns used adverbially; as, *tempore*, timely — from the abl. (6) *tempore*, in time.

2. *-Im*, or *-atim*, denoting manner or mode, is added to some few nouns; as, *membratim*, limb by limb.

3. To others *-itus*, denoting origin, is added; as, *funditus*, from the bottom.

Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles.

1. *-E* is added to the root of adjectives and participles of the second declension to form adverbs; as, *longe*, far.

2. *-Iter*, *-itus*, *-im*, and *-atim*, are added to the roots of some few adjectives and participles of the second declension to form adverbs; as, *divinitus*, divinely.

3. *-Iter*, or *-er*, is added to the roots of adjectives and participles of the third declension to form adverbs; as, *feliciter*, happily.

4. Some adverbs are only the cases of adjectives; as, *crebro*, frequently.

5. Numeral adverbs are formed from cardinal numbers by adding *-ies;* as, *decies*, ten times — from *decem*.

Adverbs derived from Adjective-Pronouns.

1. *-O* and *-uc* denote the place whither, *-de* and *-inc* denote the place from which, *-i* and *-ic* the place in which, *-a* and *-ac* the place through which; as, *eo*, to that place; *illinc*, from that place; *istic*, in the place in which you are; *eâ*, the place, through which.

2. There are some few diminutive adverbs formed from other adverbs; as, *sæpiuscule*, somewhat often — from *sæpius*.

3. Some adverbs are derived from prepositions; as *propter*, near— from *propè*.

COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS

Adverbs are compounded of different words, viz.: —

1. Pronoun and noun; as, *quomodo*, how — from *quo* and *modo*.

2. Adjective and noun; as, *magnopere*, greatly — from *magnus* and *opus*.

3. Adverb and noun; as, *sæpenumero*, often — from *sæpe* and *numerus*.

4. Preposition and noun; as, *admodum*, greatly — from *ad* and *modus*.

5. Adjective and verb; as, *quantumvis*, as much as one may wish — from *quantus* and *volo*.

6. Adjective and pronoun; as, *alioqui*, otherwise — from *alius* and *quì*.

7. Adverb and adjective; as, *nimirum*, certainly — from *ni* and *mirus*.

8. Preposition and adjective; as, *imprimis*, especially — from *in* and *primus*.

9. Pronoun and adverb; as, *nequâquam*, not at all — from *ne* and *quisquam*.

10. Preposition and pronoun; as, *postea*, after that — from *post* and *is*, *ea*.

11. Two verbs; as, *videlicet*, it is evident — from *videre* and *licet*.

12. Adverb and verb; as, *duntaxat*, at least — from *dum* and *taxo*.

13. Participle and other parts of speech; as, *dextrorsum*, to the right — from *dexter* and *versus*.

14. Two adverbs; as, *quamdiu*, how long (a time) — from *quam* and *diu*.

15. Preposition and adverb; as, *adhuc*, to the present (time) — from *ad* and *huc*.

16. Two prepositions; as, *inde*, thence — from *in* and *de*.

17. Conjunction and adverb; as, *sicubi*, if in any place — from *si* and *alicubi*.

18. Three different parts of speech; as, *forsitan*, perhaps — from *fors*, *sit*, and *an*

PREPOSITIONS. (E. 243.)

Most of the prepositions are used to form compound words, especially with verbs.

1. The final letters of some prepositions remain unchanged in composition. In others they remain unchanged when the word begins with certain letters, especially vowels; but when the word begins with certain consonants, the last letter of the preposition is assimilated — that is, the last letter of the preposition becomes the same as the first letter of the word; as, *aggredior*, to approach — from *ad* and *gradior*.

2. In *cum* (*com*) the final *m* is assimilated before some letters; before others the *m* is changed into *n;* and before a vowel, or *gn* or *h*, it is generally omitted. *U* is also changed into *o*.

3. The *n* in *in* is sometimes changed into *m;* as, *impono*, I place on — from *in* and *pono*.

4. *Pro* sometimes takes a *d* after it, before a vowel; as, *prodesse*, to be advantageous — from *pro* and *sum*. Before *l* or *r*, *pro* sometimes becomes *por* and *post*.

5. *Sub* is sometimes assimilated; sometimes it takes the form of *sus*. The *b* of *sub* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant.

6. The following are called Inseparable Prepositions, because they are only used in composition: —

7. *Am*, or *amb*, denotes around, about.

8. *Dis*, or *di*, denotes separation, or asunder.

9. *Re*, or *red*, denotes again, or back.

10. *Se* denotes aside, or apart.

11. *Ne* and *ve* are negations prefixed to words.

SYNTAX.

Syntax may be divided into two principal parts: — I. Concord, and II. Government.

I. CONCORD

Concord is the agreement of words with one another, either in number, case, gender, or person.

[The general rules of Concord are given in the Elementary Part, pages 247 and 248.]

1. A noun added to another noun or pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing that it does, is put in the same case with it; as, *urbs Roma*, the city Rome.

2. The noun or pronoun in answer to a question is generally in the same case as the interrogative word; as, *quid quæris? — librum*, what are you seeking for? — a book.

3. An adjective is sometimes used alone, especially in the plural — its noun being understood; as, *boni sunt rari*, good (men) are scarce.

4. An adjective, without a noun, and in the neuter gender, is often used as a substantive; as, *bonum*, a good (thing); *triste lupus stabulis*, a wolf is a sad (thing) in the folds.

5. Adjectives used as substantives frequently have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, *alia omnia*, all other (things).

6. Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered only as such, may be used as substantives, and then they take a neuter adjective in the singular number; as, *supremum vale dixit*, he pronounced a last farewell.

7. Adjectives and adjective-pronouns, in place of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, and their nouns in the genitive case, with a partitive signification; as, *multum temporis*, much (of) time.

8. A noun is often used in the place of an adjective; as, *nemo miles Romanus*, no Roman soldier.

9. A neuter adjective, both singular and plural, is sometimes used as an adverb; as, *dulce loquentem*, speaking sweetly.

10. An adverb is occasionally used as an adjective; as, *nunc hominum mores*, the present manners of men.

11. The first, middle, last, or other part of any place, time, &c., is generally expressed by *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *intimus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, or *cetera;* as, *summa arbor*, the top (of the) tree.

12. Sometimes an adjective, agreeing with a noun, is used in the place of an adverb; as, *ecce! venit Telamon properus*, lo! Telamon comes in haste. *Nullus* is in like manner used for *non.*

PRONOUNS.

I. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The relative may sometimes be considered as being between two cases of the same noun, though for the most part only one is expressed. With the first of these, or the antecedent, the relative agrees in gender, number, and person; with the latter, generally understood, it agrees in gender, number, and case. But sometimes both nouns are expressed; as, *erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*, there were only two routes, by which routes they could depart from home. However, the antecedent noun is generally only expressed; as, *vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur*, the man is wise, who speaks little. Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed — the antecedent being omitted; as, *in quem primum egressi sunt locum Troja vocatur* — here *locus*, the antecedent of the relative *quem*, is omitted.

2. Sometimes neither noun is expressed, especially when it is a substantive-pronoun, or when it is designed to be left indefinite; as, *qui bene latuit, bene vixit*, who has well escaped notice, has lived well — that is, he who.

3. The relative is sometimes omitted; as, *urbs antiqua fuit, Tyrii tenuere coloni*, there was an ancient city, (which) Tyrian colonists possessed.

4. The relative, in place of its own proper case, sometimes take the case of the antecedent; as, *quum scribas et aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuesti* — *quorum*, referring to *eorum*, being here used for *quæ.*

5. Sometimes the antecedent has the same case as the relative — the said antecedent either preceding or following the relative pronoun; as, *urbem quam statuo vestra est* — *urbem*, being in the same case with the relative *quam*, is here used for *urbs.*

6. When a noun is joined to a relative which explains its antecedent, but is of a different gender or number, the relative generally

agrees with such noun; as, *Santones non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in provinciâ*, the Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which state is in the province.

The relative sometimes does not take the number and gender of the antecedent, but of some noun synonymous with it, or equivalent thereto, or implied in it; as, *abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant*, abundance of those things, which mortals think the most important — here *quæ* agrees with *negotia* understood, as synonymous with *rerum.*

8. The relative is in the plural when referring to two or more nouns in the singular; when the nouns are in different genders the relative agrees with them in the same manner as adjectives do; as, *Ninus et Semiramis, qui Babylona condiderant*, Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon.

9. When the antecedents are of different persons, the relative agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *ego et tu, qui eramus*, I and you, who were.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, ETC.

1. *Is* before a relative, or before *ut*, has often the sense of *talis*, such; as, *neque enim tu is es, qui quid sis nescias*, nor are you such a person as not to know what you are.

2. If an additional predicate or circumstance is added to the noun to which *is* refers, *et is*, or *atque is*, or *isque*, or *et is quidem*, must be used; but with a negative *nec is* are used; and when the additional predicate stands opposed to the preceding noun *sed is* are used; as, *unâ in domo, et ea quidem angustâ*, in the same house, and that indeed not roomy.

3. *Is* sometimes has the signification of *idem;* as, *vos — ii*, you — the same.

4. When *is* would be in the same oblique case as the noun to which it refers, it is not expressed; as, *pater amat liberos, et tamen castigat*, a father loves his children, and yet he corrects (them).

5. *Ipse*, with a substantive-pronoun, used in a reflective sense, agrees either with such pronoun when emphatic, or with the subject of the proposition when emphatic; as, *agam per me ipse*, I will do it myself — here *ipse* agrees with *ego*, the subject of the verb *agam* understood.

6. *Ipse*, with a possessive pronoun, used in a reflective sense, generally takes the case of the subject; as, *meam ipse legem negligo*, I myself neglect my own law — here *ipse* agrees with *ego*, the subject of *negligo.*

7. When *alius* is repeated, or joined to an adverb derived from it, it may be translated by two separate propositiuns; as, *aliud aliis videtur optimum*, one thing seems best to one, another thing to another.

8. When *alius* is repeated in different propositions, the first is translated by "one," the second by "another"; as, *aliud agitur, aliud simulatur*, one thing is done, another pretended.

9. *Uterque*, each of two, is often used in the singular, when only two are spoken of, and the plural, *utrique*, when several pairs of two are spoken of.

10. The possessive pronouns are often omitted, when used in a reflective sense; as, *quo revertar, in patriam?* whither shall I return, to (my) country?

11. *Sui* and *suus* refer generally to the subject of the proposition; as, *oppidani facinus in se ac suos fœdum consciscunt*, the citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends.

12. When the principal verb is in the passive voice, the reflective does not generally refer to the subject of the passive voice, but to the word which would be its subject in the active voice; as, *a Cæsare invitor ut sim sibi legatus*, I am invited by Cæsar to be his lieutenant. *Sibi* here referring to *Cæsare*, in place of *ego*, the subject of *invitor*. So also when the subject is a thing without life, the reflected pronoun may refer to some other word in the sentence having life.

13. *Ipse* is sometimes used in place of *sui* or *suus;* as, *Jugurtha legatos misit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam peterent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children.

14. A demonstrative pronoun is sometimes used for a reflected one; as, *Helvetii persuadent Rauracis, ut unâ cum eis proficiscantur*, the Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them.

15. When a noun is omitted, *suus*, and not *hujus*, is used; as, *Octavius, quem sui Cæsarem salutabant*, Octavius, whom his (followers) saluted as Cæsar.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

1 The nominative is wanting with all impersonal verbs; also with *potest, cœpit, cœptum est, incipit, desinit, debet, solet*, and *videtur*, when used with the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as, *pigere eum facti cœpit*, it begin to repent him of the deed.

2 Sometimes the verb is omitted; as, *di meliora piis*, may the gods (grant) better things to the pious.

3. The nominative is often used with the present infinitive in the historic style; as, *interim quotidie Cæsar Æduos frumentum flagitare*, in the mean time Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Ædui.

4. A collective noun has often a plural verb; as, *turba ruunt*, the crowd rush.

5. *Tantum*, when followed by a genitive plural, has often a plural verb; as, *quid huc tantum hominum incedunt?* why are so many men coming hither.

6. A verb in the singular is often used with two or more nominatives in the singular — more particularly when they denote things without life, and express a similar class of ideas; as, *beneficentia, liberalitas, bonitas, justitia, funditus tollitur*, beneficence, liberality, goodness, (and) justice, is (are) entirely taken away.

7. The verb, when it has different qualifications for each nominative, agrees with the nearest in number and person; as, *ego misere, tu feliciter sivis*, I (live) miserably, you live happily.

8. The interjections *en! ecce!* and *O!* are sometimes followed by the nominative; as, *ecce, homo!* behold, the man!

9. The verbs which most frequently have a noun or adjective in the predicate, or qualifying clause agreeing with the subject of the verb, are, *sum* — as, *ego Jovis sum filius*, I am the son of Jove — and certain neuter verbs that denote position, existence, motion, &c.; likewise the passive of verbs signifying to name or call, to choose, to appoint or constitute, to render, to esteem or reckon. These verbs are termed Copulative Verbs.

10. A copulative verb between two nominatives of different numbers generally agrees in number with its subject; as, *dos est decem talenta.*

11. *Opus*, need, is frequently used as a predicate with *sum;* as, *dux nobis opus est*, a leader is needful to us.

II. GOVERNMENT.

Government is that power which one word has to require another to be put in a certain case, mood, or tense.

THE GENITIVE CASE.

[The principal rules for the Genitive are given in pages 251—253 of the Elementary Course.]

1. The genitive is either subjective or objective. The genitive is subjective when the noun that governs it is considered as — being, active, feeling, originating, belonging to, &c.; as, *hominum facta*, the deeds of men. The genitive is objective when the governing noun implies some action, feeling, tendency, &c., of which the noun governed in the genitive is the object; as, *amor virtutis*, the love of virtue.

2. A noun sometimes has two genitives: one being subjective, the other objective; as, *Agamemnonis belli gloria*, the glory of Agamemnon in war.

3. When the noun added to another noun, and limiting it, denotes some property, quality. or character, and has an adjective agreeing with itself, such limiting-noun is put either in the genitive or ablative, as, *puer probæ indolis*, or *puer probâ indole*, a boy of a good disposition.

4. The noun limited by the genitive is sometimes omitted; as, *ad Dianæ*, to (the temple) of Diana.

The Genitive with Partitives.

1. Those nouns that denote a part are, *pars*, *nihil*, *nemo*, and the like; also nouns denoting weight and measure; as, *nihil humanarum rerum*, nothing of human things; *medimnum tritici*, a medimnum (six bushels) of wheat.

2. The partitives *ullus*, *nullus*, *solus*, *uter*, *uterque*, *utercumque*, *utervis*, *uterlibet*, *alius*, *alter*, *alteruter*, *neuter*, *aliquis*, *quidam*, *quispiam*, *quisquis*, *quisque*, *quisquam*, *quicumque*, *unusquisque*, *quis? qui? quot? quotus? quotusquisque? tot*, *aliquot*, *multi*, *plerique*, *nonnulli*, *pauci*, *medius*, are used with the genitive plural; but when the noun is a collective, with the genitive singular; as, *quisquis deorum*, whoever of the gods.

3. Words used partitively have the genitive like partitives. Words are used partitively in the following sentences: viz., *expediti militum*, the light-armed (of the) soldiers; *superi deorum*, the gods (of) above.

4. Comparatives and superlatives are used with a genitive like partitives. The comparative in this case generally denotes one of two individuals; as, *major fratrum*, the elder (of two) brothers. The superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *maximus fratrum*, the eldest (of three or more) brothers.

5. The cardinal and ordinal numbers, likewise *singuli*, are used with the genitive as partitives; as, *equitum centum*, one hundred (of the) horsemen.

6. When the genitive denotes a whole, it may be governed by a neuter adjective, or adjective-pronoun, and such pronoun is generally in the singular, though the plural is sometimes used; as, *plus eloquentiæ*, more (of) eloquence. Most of the neuter adjectives thus used as partitives denote quantity.

7. The adverbs *sat. satis*, *parum*, *nimis*, *abunde*, *largiter*, *affatim*, and *partim*, when used partitively, have a genitive; as, *satis eloquentiæ*, *parum sapientiæ*, enough of eloquence, but little of wisdom.

8. Sometimes the partitive word is omitted; as, *centies sestertium*, a hundred times (a thousand) (of) sestertii.

The Genitive with Adjectives.

1. The following classes of adjectives, when denoting a relation to a thing, are often limited by a genitive: viz.—

2. Verbal in *-ax;* as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *fugax*, *pervicax*, &c.

3. Participial adjectives in *-ns*, with a few in *-tus;* as, *amans*, *cupiens*, &c.

4. Adjectives denoting desire or aversion; as, *avidus*, *fastidiosus:*— denoting participation; as, *particeps:* — knowledge, experience, capacity, and the contrary; as, *callidus*, *gnarus*, *ignarus:* — memory and forgetfulness; as, *memor*, *immemor:* — certainty or doubt: as, *certus*, *dubius:* — care or negligence; as, *providus*, *improvidus:* — guilt or innocence; as, *noxius*, *innoxius:* — fear or confidence; as, *timidus*, *fidens:* — plenty or want; as, *abundans*, *inops*.

5. Many of these adjectives, instead of a genitive, have an infinitive; as, *certus ire*, determined to go; and sometimes even an accusative or ablative, with or without a preposition.

6. Adjectives denoting plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as, *plenus iræ* or *irâ*, full of anger; *inops rationis*, void of reason. Some of these adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive only; some the ablative only; some the genitive more frequently; others the ablative more frequently; and others, again, govern the genitive or ablative indifferently.

The Genitive with Verbs.

1. *Sum* is used with a genitive denoting the degree of estimation or value; as, *tanti est*, it is worth so much.

2. Verbs of valuing are used with a genitive, when the value is expressed either in a general or indefinite manner; as, by *tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *permagni*, *pluris*, *minoris*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *minimi*, *parvi*, *tantidem*, *quanticumque*, *quantivis*, *quantilibet*. Also the nouns *assis*, *flocci*, *teruncii*, *nihili*, *pili:* likewise *pensi* and *hujus*. When however the price of a thing is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive, except *assis*, *flocci*, above mentioned, it is put in the ablative.

3. Verbs of valuing are, *estimo*, *existimo*, *duco*, *facio*, *fio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, *deputo*, *taxo*. Verbs of buying, selling, hiring, and letting, have also a genitive of the statement of price, when it is general and indefinite.

4. *Satago* is sometimes used with a genitive; as, *is satagit rerum suarum*, he is busily employed with his own affairs.

5. Verbs of accusing are, *accuso*, *arcesso*, *ago*, *arguo*, *cito*, *defero*, *increpo*, *incuso*, *insimulo*, *postulo*. Verbs of convicting are, *convinco*, *coarguo*, *prehendo*, *teneor*, *obstringor*, *obligor;* of condemning, *damno*, *condemno*, *infamo;* of acquitting, *absolvo*, *libero*, *purgo*. An ablative,

with *de*, is often used, in place of the genitive, with some of these verbs; and sometimes also an ablative without a preposition.

6. Punishment is generally denoted by the genitive; as, *capitis, mortis, multæ, pecuniæ:* sometimes also by the ablative, and always when a definite sum is mentioned; as, *quindecim millibus æris.*

7. Verbs of admonishing are, *moneo, admoneo, commoneo,* and *commonefacio.* These verbs, instead of the genitive, have sometimes the ablative with *de.*

8. The adjective-pronouns *mea, tua, sua, nostra,* and *vestra,* are used instead of the genitive of their respective substantive-pronouns; as, *mea nihil refert,* it does not concern me.

9. Some adverbs of time and place govern the genitive, though sometimes the accusative; as, *pridie ejus diei,* the day before that day; *ubique gentium,* every where.

THE DATIVE CASE.

[The principal rules for the Dative are given in pages 253 and 254 of the Elementary Course.]

The Dative with Adjectives.

1. Many adjectives of other significations than those noticed in the Elementary Course, page 253, have a dative of the object; including some of the compounds of *ob, sub,* and *super.*

2. *Dicto audiens,* signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Syracusani nobis dicto audientes sunt,* the Syracusans are obedient to us.

3. *Affinis, similis, alienus, communis, par, proprius, insuetus, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, æqualis, conscius, adversus, contrarius,* and some others, have sometimes the dative and sometimes the genitive.

4. *Conscius* and some similar adjectives have both the dative and genitive; as, *mens sibi conscia recti,* a mind conscious to itself of rectitude.

The Dative with Verbs.

1. Many verbs, such as *adulor, auscultor, blandior, degenero, despero, indulgeo, lateo, medeor, medicor, moderor, obtrecto, præstolor, provideo,* &c., which, as intransitive verbs, govern the dative, sometimes become transitive, and govern the accusative.

2. Intransitive verbs governing a dative are frequently used impersonally in the passive, with the same case; as, *mihi invidetur,* I am envied.

3. Such transitive verbs as *mando*, *impero*, *ministro*, *minor*, *comminor*, *præcipio*, *renuncio*, &c., have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *equites imperat civitatibus*, he commanded to the states (the providing of) cavalry.

4. When the compounds *ad-*, *ante-*, &c., have a transitive signification, they have an accusative with the dative.

5. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, principally with *ad*, *con*, and *in*, instead of the dative, often take the case of the preposition—which preposition or its equivalent is frequently repeated; as, *conferte hanc pacem cum illo bello.*

6. Some verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *circum*, and *contra*, have sometimes the dative; namely, *absum*, *desum*, *delabor*, *despero*, *excido*, *circumdo*, *circumfundo*, *circumjaceo*, *circumjicio*, *contradico*, *contraëo*; as, *serta capiti delapsa*, the garlands having fallen from his head.

7. Some verbs of repelling and taking away, mostly compounds of *ab-*, *de-*, or *ex-*, have sometimes the dative, though oftener the ablative: these are, *abigo*, *abrogo*, *abscindo*, *aufero*, *adimo*, *arceo*, *defendo*, *demo*, *depello*, *derogo*, *detraho*, *eripio*, *eruo*, *excutio*, *eximo*, *extorqueo*, *extraho*, *exuo*, *prohibeo*, *surripio;* as, *nec mihi te eripient*, nor shall they take you from me.

8. Many verbs of differing, mostly compounds of *di-* or *dis*, have the dative in place of the ablative, either with or without *ab;* namely, *differo*, *discrepo*, *discordo*, *dissentio*, *dissideo*, *disto;* as, *Græcis Tuscanæ statuæ differunt*, Tuscan statues differ from Grecian.

9. Sometimes verbs in the passive voice have a dative of the agent; as, *neque cernitur ulli*, nor is he seen by any.

10. An impersonal verb generally, though not always, governs the dative; as, *favetur mihi*, I am favoured; *expedit reipublicæ*, it is advantageous for the state.

11. The verbs *sum*, *fore*, *fio*, *do*, *dono*, *duco*, *habeo*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *verto*, *curro*, *eo*, *mitto*, *proficiscor*, *venio*, *appono*, *assigno*, *cedo*, *comparo*, *pateo*, *suppedio*, *emo*, with some others, have two datives — the one denoting the object, the other the end or design; as, *mihi maximæ est curæ*, it is a very great care to me.

12. The dative of the object is often omitted after these verbs, and the dative of the end or purpose only used; as, *receptui canere*, to sound a retreat.

13. Some adverbs derived from adjectives have the dative of the object, though sometimes the accusative; as, *proxime castris*, very near to the camp.

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

[The principal rules for the Accusative are given in pages 257 and 258 of the Elementary Course.]

The Accusative with Verbs.

1. The verb governing the accusative is sometimes omitted — so also the accusative itself is often omitted, particularly when the accusative is a reflective pronoun; as, *nox præcipitat*, the night hurries itself (*se*) on — that is, has far advanced.

2. An infinitive mood, or part of a sentence, is sometimes used for the accusative; as, *da mihi fallere*, give me to deceive.

3. Many verbs with the accusative of the person have also another accusative, denoting in what respect or degree the action is exerted; as, *Fabius ea me monuit*, Fabius reminded me of it.

4. Verbs generally neuter are sometimes used transitively, and have then an accusative; as, *olet unguenta*, he smells of perfumes.

5. Neuter verbs, and also adjectives, may sometimes be used with an accusative, denoting in what respect or degree the feeling or condition is manifested; as, *num id lacrimat vergo?* does the maid weep for that?

6. Many verbs have an accusative depending on the preposition with which the verb is compounded. *Trans*, *ad*, and *circum*, thus compounded, have sometimes two accusatives; as, *omnem equitatum pontem transducit*, he leads all the cavalry over the bridge. The preposition is often repeated; as, *multitudinem trans Rhenum in Galliam transducere.*

7. The accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive voice. When the active voice has two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing, the accusative of the person is put in the nominative in the passive, and the accusative of the thing remains in the accusative; as, *rogatus est sententiam*, he was asked his opinion.

8. Adjectives, verbs, and perfect participles, have often an accusative, denoting the part to which the signification of these words relates; as, *nudus membra*, bare as to his limbs.

9. Some verbal nouns, also some verbal adjectives in *-bundus*, have an accusative, like the active verbs from which they are derived; as, *quid tibi huc receptio ad te est meum virum?* wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? *Hanno vitabundus castra hostium consulesque.*

The Accusative of Time, Space, and Place.

1. Sometimes the accusative or ablative of space is omitted, while the genitive governed by it remains; as, *castra quæ aberant bidui*, the camp was distant (the space) of two day's (journey).

2. *Domus* is sometimes in the accusative, with a verbal noun; as, *domum reditionis spe sublatâ*, the hope of returning home being taken away.

3. With the exception of towns, *domus*, and *rus*, the preposition is generally used before the names of countries and other places, in which the motion ends, except sometimes the names of small islands; as, *te in Epirum venisse gaudeo*, I rejoice that you have come to Epirus; *Pausaniam cum classe Cyprum miserunt*, they sent Pausanius with a fleet to Cyprus.

4. Some Interjections have an accusative; as, *ecce, duas tibi, Daphni!* lo, two for you, Daphne!

THE ABLATIVE CASE.

[The principal rules for the ablative are given in pages 258 and 259 of the Elementary Course.]

The Ablative after Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

1. *Opus* and *usus* have sometimes the ablative of the perfect participle; as, *maturato opus est*, there is need of haste.

2. *Dignus* and *indignus* have sometimes the genitive; as, *indignus avorum*, unworthy of his ancestors.

3. Sometimes, especially in the passive voice, *dignus* and *indignus* are used with the infinitive, in place of the ablative; as, *dignus amari*, worthy to be loved.

4. *Utor*, when it takes a second ablative, may be translated by "have"; as, *ille facile me utetur patre*, he will have me an indulgent father.

5. Some other verbs besides these—as, *nitor*, *innitor*, *fido*, *confido*—may have an ablative; as, *hastâ innixus*, having leaned on the spear.

6. Perfect participles denoting origin frequently have the name of the source whence in the ablative, without a preposition; as, *Tantalo prognatus*, descended from Tantalus.

7. The preposition *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *super*, is often repeated when compounded with a verb; as, *detrahere de tuâ famâ nunquam cogitavi*, I never thought to detract from your fame.

The Ablative of Cause, Manner, Instrument, &c.

1. The cause and manner are sometimes denoted by prepositions.

2. The ablative of concomitancy has generally *cum* with it; as, *ingressus est cum gladio*, he entered with a sword.

3. The ablative, either with or without *a* or *ab*, is used with a passive verb, to denote the means or agent by which the action is done, and which is expressed by the nominative in the active voice; as (in the active voice), *Clodius me diligit*, Clodius loves me; (in the passive,) *a Clodio diligor*, I am loved by Clodius. The voluntary agent generally takes *a* or *ab;* the involuntary agent generally omits the *a* or *ab*.

4. A noun denoting that in accordance with which any thing is, or is done, is put in the ablative; as, *nostro more*, according to our custom.

5. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be used with the ablative, when denoting in what respect, or with what limitation, its signification is taken; as, *pietate filius, consiliis parens*, in affection a son, in counsel a parent.

6. A noun implying the means by which the action is done is put in the ablative, after verbs signifying to fill, furnish, load, array, equip, endow, adorn, reward, enrich, &c.; as, *instruxere epulis mensas*, they furnish the tables with food.

7. A noun with verbs denoting to deprive, to free from, to remove or separate, is often put in the ablative, without a preposition; as, *hoc me libera metu*, free me from this fear.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. (E. pp. 103, 263.)

1. The subjunctive may be used to denote a concession or supposition; as, *dixerit Epicurus*, grant that Epicurus could have said; *Vendat ædes vir bonus*, suppose an honest man is selling a house.

2. *Ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, and *quominus*, when they connect a clause denoting the end, purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, with such proposition, have the subjunctive; as, *irritant ad pugnandum quo fiant acriores*, they stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer.

3. The subjunctive is used with particles of wishing; as, *utinam minus vitæ cupidi fuissemus!* O, that we had been less attached to life!

4. *Licet*, although, and *quamvis*, however, take the subjunctive; also *ac si*, *ut si*, *velut*, *velut si*, *veluti*, *sicuti*, *ceu*, *modo*, *dum*, and *dummodo;* as, *veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat*, though truth should obtain no defender.

5. *Cŭm* (*quum*), when it denotes time, generally takes the indicative; but when it denotes dependence or connection of thought, it takes the subjunctive; as, *cŭm ea ita sint*, since these things are so.

6. The relative *qui*, after *tam* (with an adjective), *tantus*, *talis*, *ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, and *is*, *ille*, *iste*, and *hic*, in the sense of *talis*, is used with the subjunctive; as, *quis est tam lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat?* who is so quick-sighted, who would not stumble in such darkness?

7. The subjunctive is used with a relative clause, after a general negation or with an interrogative implying a negation; as, *nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, there is no one, who does not understand.

8. A relative clause denoting purpose, aim, or motive, takes the subjunctive; as, *Lacedæmonii legatos Athenas miserunt, qui eum absentem accusarent*, the Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens, to accuse him in his absence.

9. After *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idoneus*, a relative clause has the subjunctive; as, *videtur, qui aliquando imperet, dignus esse*, he seems to be worthy at some time to command.

10. A relative clause, denoting the reason for what has preceded, takes the subjunctive; as, *pecavisse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim*, I think I did wrong, who left you (because I left you).

11. The relative takes the subjunctive in oblique or indirect discourse; as, *Socrates dicere solebat, omnes in eo quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes*, Socrates was accustomed to say that all were eloquent enough in that which they knew.

The discourse is direct when the writer or speaker states his own opinions or sentiments: it is oblique when the speaker or writer relates or implies the sentiments or opinions of another, or what he has said.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD. (E. 104.)

1. The infinitive, with or without the subject-accusative, may be the subject of a verb; as, *nunquam est utile peccare*, to do wrong is never useful. [For an explanation of the infinitive with a subject-accusative see Elementary Course, page 104.]

2. The infinitive may be the object of a verb, either with or without a subject-accusative; as, *hâc vitare cupimus*, we desire to avoid this.

3. The infinitive, without a subject-accusative, is used after verbs denoting ability, obligation, intention, endeavour; or after verbs signifying to begin, continue, cease, abstain, dare, fear, hesitate, be wont; likewise after the passive verbs of saying, believing, reckoning, &c.; as, *debes esse diligens*, you ought to be diligent.

4. The infinitive, with a subject-accusative, is used with verbs denoting to think, say, know, perceive, and the like; or, in general, with all verbs and phrases that denote the exercise of the intellectual faculties, or of the external senses, or the communication of thought to others; as, *gaudeo te valere*, I am glad that you are well. (See page 104, Elementary Course.)

ADVERBS.

A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, commonly destroys the negation; as, *non parere noluit*, he was not unwilling to obey.

PROSODY.

Prosody may be divided into two principal parts:—I. Quantity, and II. Versification.

I. QUANTITY.

1. The length of time employed in pronouncing a syllable is termed the quantity of such syllable.

2. Syllables are either short, long, or common. A short syllable may be denoted by ⏑ placed over the vowel; a long syllable by – placed over it.

3. A long syllable takes double the time to pronounce it that a short one does.

4. A common syllable is sometimes long, and sometimes short.

5. The rules for the quantity of syllables are either general or special. The general rules apply to all the syllables of a word alike; the special rules only to particular syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel or diphthong is short; as, *e* in *mĕus*, and *i* in *alĭus*.

(*H*. which is considered only a breathing, and not a letter, does not affect this rule; as, *nĭhil.*)

Exceptions.—1. In the genitive and dative of the fifth declension *e* in the termination is long, when preceded and followed by *i;* as, *faciēi.*

2. *I* in *fio* is long, except when followed by *er;* and in *fit;* as, *fīunt.*

3. *I* is common in genitives in *-ius;* as, *illius.* But in *alīus* it is always long, and in *alterĭus* generally short.

4. *A* and *e* are long in proper names ending in *-eïus*, *-aïus*, *-eïa;* as, *Cāïus*, *Pompēïus;* also in the adjective *Grāïus*, *Vēïus.*

5. *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *-aï* of the first declension; as, *aulāï.* *A* is also long in *āër.*

6 The first vowel in *ēheu* is long; but the first vowel in *Diana*, *io*, and *ohe*, is common.

7. In many Greek words a vowel is long before another vowel — such vowels being in Greek either diphthongs or naturally long.

8. When *e* or *i* denotes the Greek ει, before a vowel, it is long; as, *Ænēas.* Some however — as, *Academia*, *Chorea*, *Malea*, *platea* — have the penult common.

9. Greek words ending in *-ais*, *-ois*, *-aius*, *-eius*, *-oius*, *-aon*, and *-ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel of these terminations; as, *Grāïus*, *Nerēïus.* But *Thebăis*, *Simŏis*, *Phăon*, *Ducalĭon*, and some others, shorten such vowel.

10. Greek words in *-aon* and *-ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but when the *o* is long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amythāon* (gen. *-aŏnus*), *Deucalĭon* (gen. *-ōnis*).

11. Greek genitives in *-eos*, and accusatives in *-ea*, having their nominatives in *-eus*, commonly shorten the *e;* as, *Orphĕos*, *Orphĕa.*

II. A diphthong is long; as, *āūrum*, *Cæsar.*

Exceptions.—1. A diphthong at the end of a word is sometimes made short, when the next word begins with a vowel; as, *insulæ Ionio.*

2. *Præ-*, in composition, is generally short before a vowel; as, *præacutus.*

3. *U*, after *p* and *g*, does not form a diphthong with a vowel.

III. A vowel before two consonants, a double consonant, or *j*, is long by position; as, *bēllum*, *āxis*, *mājor.*

Exceptions. — 1. A short vowel at the end of a word, before a double consonat or *j* beginning the following word, is not lengthened.

2. The compounds of *jugum* have *i* short before *j;* as, *bĭjugus.*

3. A naturally short vowel, placed before a mute consonant having a liquid consonant immediately after it, is common; as, *agris.* But

if the vowel before the mute and liquid is naturally long, it remains long; as, *salūbris.*

4. When a mute and liquid begin a word, they seldom lengthen the short vowel terminating the preceding word.

5. When in compound words the first word of the compound ends with a mute, and the second begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *sūblevo.*

6. *L* and *r*, in Latin, are the only liquids, following a mute, subject to the above; but in Greek *m* and *n* may also be subject to the same rules as *l* and *r*.

IV. A contracted syllable is long; *cōgo*, for *cŏago.*

SPECIAL RULES.

The First and Middle Syllables.

I. The perfect tenses consisting of two syllables, have the first syllable long, though it may be short in the present tense; as, perfect *vēni*, present *vĕnio.*

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. Seven perfects have the first syllable short: namely, *bĭbi, dĕdi, fĭdi* (from *findo*), *scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli;* also before a vowel the first syllable is short by general rule; as, *rŭi.*

II. Preterites that double the first syllable, shorten both the first and second syllables; as, *tĕtĭgi*, from *tango.* But sometimes the second syllable is made long by its position before two consonants; as, *mĕmōrdi.*

III. Supines of two syllables lengthen the first syllable; as, *mōtum*, from *mŏveo.*

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Ten supines have the first syllable short: namely, *cĭtum* (from *cieo*), *dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum*, and *stătum.*

IV. Polysyllabic supines in *-atum, -etum*, and *-utum*, have the *a, e*, and *u* long before *tum;* as, *amātum.*

V. Polysyllabic supines in *-itum* have the *i* before *tum* short; as, *monĭtum.*

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. The supines in *-itum*, of verbs with the perfect in *-ivi*, have *i* long before *tum;* as, *audivi, audītum.*

2. *I* is long in *divīsum.*

Eo and its compounds have *i* short before *tum* in the supines; as, *redĭtum.* *Ambio* however has *ambītum.*

VI. The participles in *-rus* have *u* long in the penult; as, *amatūrus.*

DERIVATIVES.

I. Derivatives retain the quantities of their primitives or roots; as, *ămat*, from *ămo; ămoris*, from *ămo; māternus*, from *māter*. The vowel of the primitive is sometimes made long or short by adding or removing a consonant.

Derivatives from nouns increasing their syllables, in the second or third declension, agree in quantity with the increasing-syllable before *i* or *is* of the genitive; as, *puĕritia*, from *puĕri; virgĭneus*, from *virgĭnis*.

The vowels of the derived tenses, and of derived words, in verbs, agree in quantity with those of the principal form of the verb from which they are formed or derived; as, *mŏvebam*, from *mŏveo* — the *mov* of the first principal part being short; *mōveram*, from *mōvisse* — the *mov* of the second principal part being long; *mōtio*, *mōtor*, from *mot*, the third principal part or supine of which is long. In *pŏsui* and *pŏsitum* the *o* is short.

Exceptions. — 1. *Lār*, *pār*, *sāl*, and *pēs*, shorten the vowel of the nominative in declension; as, *pĕdis*, *sălis*.

2. Derivative verbs in *-urio* have *u* short, though the third principal part, from which they are formed, is long; as, *cœnatŭrio*, from *cœnātum*.

3. Frequentative verbs, that are formed from the third principal part of the first conjugation, have *i* short; as, *clamĭto*.

4. The following words have a long vowel in place of the short one in the primitive: viz. —

Dēni, *from* dĕcem.	Lex (lēgis), *from* lĕgo.	Sēmen, *from* sĕro.
Fōmes, *from* fŏveo.	Mōbilis, *from* mŏveo.	Stīpendium, *from* stips (stĭpis).
Fōmentum, *from* fŏveo.	Pēnuria, *from* pĕnus.	Suspīcio (-ōnis), *from* suspĭcor.
Hūmanus, *from* hŏmo.	Persōna, *from* persŏno.	Tēgula, *from* tĕgo.
Hūmor, *from* hŭmus.	Rēgula, *from* rĕgo.	Vox (vōcis), *from* vŏco.
Jūmentum, *from* jŭvo.	Rex (rēgis), *from* rĕgo.	
Lāterna, *from* lăteo.	Sēcius, *from* sĕcus.	
Lītera, *from* lĭno.	Sēdes, *from* sĕdeo.	

5. The following words have a short vowel in place of a long one in the primitive, viz. —

Ărena, *from* āreo.	Lăbo, *from* lābor.	Quăsillus, *from* quālus.
Ărista, *from* āreo.	Lŭcerna, *from* lūceo.	Săgax, *from* sāgio.
Dĭcax, *from* dīco.	Mŏlestus, *from* mōles.	Sŏpor, *from* sōpio.
Dĭtio, *from* dis (dītis).	Năto, *from* nātu.	Stăbilis, *from* stābam.
Dux (dŭcis), *from* dūco.	Nŏto, *from* nōta.	Vădum, *from* vādo.
Fĭdes, *from* fīdo.	Ŏdium, *from* ōdi.	Vŏco, *from* (vox) vōcis.

INCREMENTS OF NOUNS.

1. A noun is said to increase when it has more syllables in any of its cases than it has in the nominative; as, nom. *pax*, gen. *pacis*.

2. The number of increments is equal to the number of syllables added to the genitive singular. Nouns, &c., have only one increment in the singular; except *iter*, *supellex*, and compounds of *caput* ending in *-ps*.

3. It is not the last syllable of a word that is considered to be the increment; but the syllable next before it — that is, the penult. If there are two increments or two syllables added, the antepenult is called the first increment, the penult the second increment. Should there be three increments, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first increment, the antepenult the second increment, and the penult the third increment.

4. The quantity of the first increment is the same in all the other cases that it is in the genitive.

[The same rules of increments apply to adjectives, participles, and pronouns.]

INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

Increments of the Second Declension.

I. In the second declension the increments are short, except *Iber* and *Celtiber*, which are long; as, *gener*, gen. *genĕri; Iber*, gen. *Ibēri.*

Increments of the Third Declension.

A long.

I. The increments in *a* of the third declension, and singular number, are long; as, *animal, animālis; audax, audācis.*

Exceptions.—1. Masculines in *-al* and *-ar*, (except *-car* and *-nar*,) have their increments short; as, *Anibal, Anibălis.*

2. *Anas*, *mas*, *vas* (*vădis*), *baccar*, *hepar*, *jubar*, *lar*, *nectar*, *sal*, with *par* and its compounds, have their increments short.

3. Nouns ending in *-s*, with a consonant before it, increase short; as, *daps*, *dăpis*.

4. The following nouns in *-ax* have their increments short; namely, *abax*, *anthrax*, *Arctophylax*, *Atax*, *Atrax*, *climax*, *colax*, *corax*, *nycticorax*, *dropax*, *fax*, *similax*, *harpax*, *styrax*, and *smilax*.

5. Greek nouns in *-a* (*-atis*) and *-as* (*-adis*) increase short; as, *poëma*, *poëmătis ; lampas*, *lampădis*.

O long.

Increments in *o*, of the third declension, are long.

Exceptions. — 1. *O* is short in the increments of neuter nouns; as, *corpus*, *corpŏris*. But *os*, *ōris*, and the neuter of comparatives, increase long. *Ador* has its increment common.

2. Compounds of *-pus* (-πους), as *tripus*, *polypus*, *Œdipus*, likewise *arbor*, *memor*, *bos*, *compos*, *impos*, and *lepus*, have their increments short; as, *tripus*, *tripŏdis*.

3. Nouns ending in *-s*, with a consonant before it, have their increments short; as, *inops*, *inŏpis*. *Allobrox*, *Cappadox*, and *præcox*, also increase short. But *Cereops*, *Cyclops*, and *hydrops*, have their increments long.

4. *O* is generally short in the increments of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, whether Greek or barbaric; as, *Macedo*, *Macedŏnis*. But *Eburones*, *Lucones*, *Iones*, *Nasamones*, *Suessiones*, *Vettones*, *Burgundiones*, have *o* long. *Britones* however has the *o* common.

5. Greek nouns in *-o* or *-on*, which have omicron (Gr. ο) in the oblique cases, increases short; but long when they have omega (ω).

6. Greek nouns in *-or* have their increments short; as, *Hector*, *Hectŏris*; *rhetor*, *rhetŏris*.

E short.

The increments in *e*, of the third declension, are short.

Exceptions. — 1. Nouns in *-en*, gen. *-enis*, have their increments long (except *Hymen*); as, *Siren*, *Sirēnis*.

2. *Hæres*, *locuples*, *mansues*, *merces*, *quies*, *Iber*, *ver*, *lex*, *alec*, *narthex*, *vervex*, *plebs*, and *seps*, have their increments long.

3. Greek nouns in *-es* and *-er* (except *aër* and *æther*) have their increments long; as, *magnes*, *magnētis*; *crater*, *cratēris*.

4. Gentile proper names in *-el* have their increments long; as, *Uriel*, *Uriēlis*.

I short.

The increments in *i*, of the third declension, are short.

Exceptions.—1. Nouns and adjectives in *-ix* have *i* long in their increments; as, *felix*, *felīcis*. But *calix*, *Cilix*, *coxendix*, *filix*, *fornix*, *hystrix*, *larix*, *nix*, *pix*, *salix*, *strix*, and sometimes *sandix*, have the *i* short in the increment.

2. *Dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *vis*, *Nesis*, *Samnis*, *Quiris*, with *vibex*, have their increments long.

3. Greek nouns, with their genitive in *-inis*, have *i* long in their increments; as, *delphin*, *delphīnis*.

U short.

The increments in *u*, of the third declension, are short.

Exceptions.—1. Genitives in *-udis*, *-uris*, and *-utis*, from nominatives in *-us*, have the increments in *u* long; as, *palus*, *palūdis*. But *intercus*, *Ligus*, and *pecus*, have their increments in *u* short.

2. *Far*, *frux*, *lux*, and *Pollux*, have the increment in *u* long.

Y short.

The increments in *y*, of the third declension, are short.

Exceptions.—1. Greek nouns, with the genitive in *-ynis*, have *y* long in their increments; as, *Trachyn*, *Trachȳnis*.

2. *Bombyx*, *Ceyx*, *gryps*, and *mormyr*, have their increments long. *Bebryx* and *sandyx* have their increments common.

INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

I. A noun is said to increase in the plural, when it has more syllables than the ablative singular, or the nominative plural, in any of its plural cases: such increase only taking place in the genitive, dative, and ablative plural. This plural increment is always the penult syllable; as, *pi*, in *rupĭum*, *rupĭbus*.

II. The plural increments in *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; those in *i* and *u* are short; as, *bonārum*, *rērum*, *generōrum*, *sermonĭbus*, *lacŭbus*.

INCREMENTS OF VERBS.

When a verb has more syllables in any other of its parts than it has in the second person singular, it is said to increase; as, *doces*, *docēmus*. The last syllable of the verb is not counted as an increment, but only the additional syllables before it. The number of increments in a verb is equal to the number of additional syllables; as, 1 additional syllable (*amas*), *am*$\overset{1}{\bar{a}}$*mus*, 2 *am*$\overset{1}{\bar{a}}$*b*$\overset{2}{\bar{a}}$*mus*, 3 *am*$\overset{1}{\bar{a}}$*v*$\overset{2}{\breve{e}}$*r*$\overset{3}{\bar{a}}$*mus* 4 *aud*$\overset{1}{\breve{i}}\overset{2}{\bar{e}}$*b*$\overset{3}{\bar{a}}$*m*$\overset{4}{\breve{i}}$*ni*.

The active voice may have three increments, the passive four

The increments of deponent verbs are determined in the same manner as if they were active, or as if they had an active form.

A long.

The increments in *a* of verbs are long.

Exceptions. — 1. The first increment of *do* and its compounds is short; as, *d*$\overset{1}{\breve{a}}$*mus*. *d*$\overset{1}{\breve{a}}$*b*$\overset{2}{\bar{a}}$*mus*; *circumd*$\overset{1}{\breve{a}}$*re*, *circumd*$\overset{1}{\breve{a}}$*b*$\overset{2}{\bar{a}}$*mus*.

E long.

The increments in *e* of verbs are long.

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. Before *-ram*, *-rim*, and *-ro*, and the persons derived from them, *e* is short; as, *amavĕram*, *amavĕrat.* But when the verb is contracted by syncope or otherwise, the *e* before *r* is long; as, *flēram*, for *flevĕram.*

2. In all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, *e* is short before *r*, in the first increment; as, *legĕre*, *legĕrem.*

3. *E* is short in the second increment, in the first and second conjugations in *-bĕris* and *-bĕre;* as, *amābĕris*, *amābĕre.*

O long.

The increments in *o* of verbs are long.

I short.

The increments in *i* of verbs are short.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. *I* before *v* or *s*, in tenses formed from the second principal part, is long; as, *audīvi*, *divīsit.*

2. *I* is long in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except *-ĭmus* of the perfect indicative; as, *audīrem*, *audītus*, present *venīmus*, but perfect *venĭmus:* also in *ībam* and *ībo*, from *eo.* When a vowel follows the *i*, it is short; as, *audĭunt.*

3. *Gaudeo*, *arcesso*, *divido*, *facesso*, *lacesso*, *peto*, *quæro*, *recenseo*, and *obliviscor*, have the increments in *i* long, in the syllables formed from the third principal part; as, *gavīsus*, *gavīsurus.*

4. *I* is long in the first and second persons plural of *sīmus*, *sītis*, *velīmus*, *velītis*, and their compounds.

5. *I* is common in *rimus* and *ritis* of the future perfect indicative and the perfect subjunctive.

U short.

The increments in *u* of verbs are short.

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. *U* is long in the increments of supines, and of participles formed from the third principal part.

PENULT SYLLABLES.

1. Words ending in *-abrum*, *-ubrum*, *-acrum*, and *-atrum*, lengthen the penult; as, *candelābrum.*

2. Words in *-acus*, *-icus*, and *-icum*, shorten the penult; as, *rustĭcus;* except *Dācus*, *merācus*, *opācus*, *amīcus*, *aprīcus*, *fīcus*, *medīcus*, *pīcus*, *postīcus*, *pudīcus*, *spīcus*, *umbilīcus*, *vīcus.*

3. Patronymics in *-ades* and *-ides* shorten the penult — as, *Atlantiădes;* — except some in *-ides* formed from nouns in *-eus;* as also *Amphiaraīdes, Belīdes, Amyclīdes, Lycurgīdes.* But patronymics and similar words in *-ais, -eis,* and *-ois,* lengthen the penult — as, *Minōis;* except *Phocăis* and *Thebăis.*

4. Nouns in *-ca* and verbs in *-do* lengthen the penult — as, *lorīca, cēdo;* — except *alĭca, brassĭca, dĭca, fulĭca, mantĭca, pedĭca, pertĭca, scutĭca, phalarĭca, tunĭca, vomĭca* (and some nouns in *-ica* derived from adjectives); *cădo, divĭdo, ĕdo, comĕdo, Macĕdo, mŏdo, solĭdo, spădo, trepĭdo.*

5. Nouns in *-ga* and *-go* lengthen the penult — as, *collēga;* — except *calĭga, ossifrăga, tŏga, plăga, fŭga, stĕga, eclŏga, ĕgo, harpăgo, lĭgo.*

6. Words ending in *-le, -les,* and *-lis,* as also those ending in *-elus, -ela,* and *-elum,* lengthen the penult — as, *ancīle, querēla;* — except *măle, gĕlus, gĕlum, scĕlus;* also verbals in *-bilis* and *-ilis;* and adjectives in *-atilis;* likewise *indŏles, sobŏles, periscĕlis, dapsĭlis, gracĭlis, humĭlis, parĭlis, simĭlis, sterĭlis, mugĭlis, strigĭlis.*

7. *E* before the terminations *-rus, -ra,* and *-rum,* is short; but the other vowels before these terminations are long — as, *cetĕrum, cārus, mīrus, mōrus, mūrus, gȳrus;* — except *austērus, galērus, plērus, procērus, sincērus, sērus, sevērus, vērus, cratēra, cēra, pēra, panthēra, statēra, barbărus, cammărus, camŭrus, canthărus, chŏrus, fŏrus, hellebŏrus, nŭrus, opipărus, ovipărus, phosphŏrus, pĭrus, satўrus, scărus, spărus, tartărus, tŏrus, zephўrus, amphŏra, ancŏra, hăra, cithăra, lўra, mŏra, purpŭra, pўra, philўra, pўra, satĭra, fŏrum, părum, gărum, suppărum.*

8. Words in *-ates, -itis, -otis,* and those in *-ata, -eta, -ota, -uta,* lengthen the penult — as, *vātes;* — except *sĭtis, pŏtis, drapĕta, nŏta, rŏta.* Nouns in *-ita* shorten the penult — as, *semĭta;* — except *pituīta.*

9. Nouns in *-etas* and *-itas* shorten the penult; as, *civĭtas.*

10. Adjectives in *-osus* lengthen the penult; as, *famōsus.*

11. Adjectives in *-inus,* denoting time, or a material or inanimate substance, shorten the penult — as, *crastĭnus, fagĭnus;* — except *matutīnus, repentīnus, vespertīnus.* But other adjectives in *-inus* or *-inum* lengthen the penult — as, *bīnus;* — except *acĭnus, asĭnus, coccĭnus, comĭnus, emĭnus, copnĭnus, domĭnus, facĭnus, faticĭnus, protĭnus, sĭnus, termĭnus, gemĭnus, circĭnus, mĭnus, vaticĭnus, succĭnum, fascĭnum.*

12. Adverbs in *-tim* lengthen the penult; except *stătim* (immediately) and *effătim.* Those in *-iter* and *-itus* shorten the penult.

13. Words in *-idus* shorten the penult, but those in *-udus* lengthen it — as, *limpĭdus, nūdus;* — except *īdus, fīdus, infīdus, nīdus, sīdus.*

14. Diminutives in *-olus, -ola, -olum, -ulus, -ula, -ulum,* likewise

words in *-ilus*, and also those in *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-ulum*, of more than two syllables, shorten the penult; except *asīlus.*

15. Words in *-ma*, *-na*, *-ne*, *-ni*, and *-nis*, lengthen the penult — as, *fāma*, *lāna*, *arēna*, *carīna*;—except *anĭma*, *cŏma*, *decŭma*, *lacrĭma*, *victĭma*, *hăma*, *advĕna*, *cottăna*, *ptisăna*, *mĭna*, *gĕna*, *bĕne*, *sĭne*, *cănis*, *cĭnis*, *juvĕnis*, *buccĭna*, *domĭna*, *fiscĭna*, *lamĭna*, *machĭna*, *pagĭna*, *patĭna*, *sarcĭna*, *tibicĭna*, *trutĭna.*

16. The terminations *-men* and *-mentum* have the vowels preceding them long — as, *flumen*; — except *tămen*, *colŭmen*, *Hўmen*, *elĕmentum*, and some few verbal nouns derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations; as, *regĭmen*, &c.

17. Words terminating in *-imus* shorten the penult — as, *anĭmus*; except *bīmus*, *līmus*, *mīmus*, *opīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *sīmus*, *trīmus*, *īmus*, and *prīmus.* When *-umus* is substituted for *-imus*, in adjectives, the penult remains the same as in *-imus.*

18. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before the finals *-mus*, *-mum*, *-nus*, and *num*, are long — as, *rāmus*, *urbānus*; — except *atŏmus*, *balsămus*, *cinnămum*, *dŏmus*, *glŏmus*, *hŭmus*, *postŭmus*, *thalămus*, *tŏmus*, *calămus*, *nĕmus*, *ănus*, *galbănus*, *mănus*, *oceănus*, *platănus*, *ebĕnus*, *gĕnus*, *limigĕnus*, *pĕnus*, *tĕnus*, *Vĕnus*, *ŏnus*, *sŏnus*, *thrŏnus*, *lagănum*, *peucedănum*, *popănum*, *tympănum*, *abrotŏnum.*

19. Verbs ending in *-ino* and *-inor* shorten the penult — as, *destĭno*; — except *festīno*, *propīno*, *sagīno*, *opīnor*, with the compounds of *clīno.*

20. Words ending in *-ba*, *-bo*, *-pa*, and *-po*, have the penult short— as, *syllăba*; — except *glēba*, *scrība*, *būbo*, *glūbo*, *lībo*, *nūbo*, *scrībo*, *sīpho*, *cēpa*, *cūpa*, *pāpa*, *pūpa*, *rīpa*, *scōpa*, *stūpa*, *cāpo*, *rēpo*, *stīpo.*

21. Before the termination *-ro* or *-ror*, *a* and *e* are short, but *i*, *o*, and *u*, are long — as, *ăro*, *mīror*; — except *declāro*, *pēro*, *spēro*, *fŏro*, *mŏror*, *sŏror*, *vŏro*, *fŭro*, *satŭro.*

22. Words in *-al*, *-ar*, *-are*, and *-aris*, have the penult long — as, *tribūnal*; — except *anĭmal*, *capĭtal*, *cubĭtal*, *tŏral*, *jŭbar*, *sălar*, *măre*, *bimăris*, *hilăris*, *canthăris*, *cappăris*, *Icăris.*

23. Words terminating in *-dex*, *-dix*, *-mex*, *-nix*, *-lex*, *-rex*, lengthen the penult — as, *cōdex*; — except *cŭlex*, *sĭlex*, and *rŭmex.*

24. Nouns ending in *-atum*, *-itum*, *-utum*, lengthen the penult — so do also nouns and adjectives ending in *-tus* — as, *aconītus*, *grātus*;— except *defrŭtum*, *pulpĭtum*, *petorĭtum*, *lŭtum*, *compĭtum*, *cătus*, *lătus*, *impĕtus*, *mĕtus*, *vegĕtus*, *vĕtus*, *anhelĭtus*, *digĭtus*, *gratuĭtus*, *halĭtus*, *hospĭtus*, *servĭtus*, *spirĭtus*, *antidŏtus*, *nŏtus*, *quŏtus*, *tŏtus*, *arbŭtus*, *pŭtus*, *inclўtus.*

25. The vowel in the penult before *v* is long—as, *clāva*;—except *ăvis*, *brĕvis*, *grăvis*, *lĕvis*, *ŏvis*, *căvo*, *grăvo*, *jŭvo*, *lăvo*, *lĕvo*, *ŏvo*, *ăvus*, *căvus*, *făvus*, *nŏvus*, *făvor*, *păvor*, *nŏvem.*

The Penult Syllable of Proper Names.

The following proper names have their penults long: —

Abdēra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amȳclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogīton, Arpīnum, Artabānus, Brachmānes, Busīris, Buthrōtus, Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Crurētes, Darīci, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri, Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus, Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus, Heliogabālus, Henrīcus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippōnax, Hispānus, Irēne, Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras, Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Messāla, Messāna, Milētus, Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas, Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris, Pelōrus, Pharsālus, Phœnīce, Polītes, Polyclētus, Polynīces, Priāpus, Sardanapālus, Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonīce, Suffētes, Tigrānes, Thessalonīca, Verōna, Verōnica.

The following proper names have their penults short: —

Amăthus, Amphipŏlis, Anabăsis, Anticy̆ra, Antigŏnus, Antigŏne, Antilŏchus, Antiŏchus, Antiŏpa, Antĭpas, Antipăter, Antiphănes, Antiphătes, Antiphĭla, Antĭphon, Any̆tus, Apŭlus, Areopăgus, Arimĭnum, Armĕnus, Athĕsis, Attălus, Attĭca, Bitŭrix, Bructĕri, Calăber, Callicrătes, Callistrătus, Candăce, Cantăber, Carneădes, Cherĭlus, Chrysostŏmus, Cleombrŏtus, Cleomĕnes, Cory̆cos, Constantinopŏlis, Cratĕrus, Craty̆lus, Cremĕra, Crustumĕri, Cybĕle, Cyclădes, Cyzĭcus, Dalmătæ, Damŏcles, Dardănus, Dejŏces, Dejotărus, Democrĭtus, Demĭpho, Didy̆mus, Diogĕnes, Drepănum, Dumnŏrix, Empedŏcles, Ephĕsus, Euergĕtes, Eumĕnes, Eurymĕdon, Euripy̆lus, Fucĭnus, Gergŏnes, Gyărus, Hecy̆ra, Heliopŏlis, Hermiŏne, Herodŏtus, Hesiŏdus, Hesiŏne, Hippocrătes, Hippotămos, Hypăta, Hypănis, Iărcus, Icĕtas, Illy̆ris, Iphĭtus, Ismărus, Ithăca, Laodĭce, Laomĕdon, Lampsăcus, Lamy̆rus, Lapĭthæ, Lucretĭlis, Libănus, Lipăre, Lipăra, Lysimăchus, Longimănus, Marăthon, Mænălus, Marmarĭca, Massagĕtæ, Matrŏna, Megăra, Melĭtus, Melĭta, Metropŏlis, Mutĭna, Micŏnus, Neŏcles, Nerĭtos, Norĭcum, Omphăle, Patăra, Pegăsus, Pharnăces, Pisistrătus, Polydămus, Polyxĕna Porsĕna, Praxitĕles, Puteŏli, Plyădes, Pythagŏras, Sarmăthæ, Sarsĭna, Semĕle, Semirămis, Sequăni, Sequăna, Sysy̆phus, Sicŏris, Socrătes, Sodŏma, Sotădes, Spartăcus, Sporădes, Strongy̆le, Stymphălus, Sybăris, Taygĕtus, Telogŏnus, Telemăchus, Tenĕdos, Tarrăco, Theophănes, Theophĭlus, Tomy̆ris, Urbĭcus, Venĕti, Vologĕsus, Volŭsus, Xenocrătes, Zoĭlus, Zopy̆rus.

ANTEPENULT SYLLABLES.

1. *I* in diminutives in *-iculus* and *-icellus*, and before the termination *-tudo*, is short; as, *collĭculus*, *altĭtudo*. When however a short vowel precedes the diminutive, or its primitive *i* is long, the *i* is then long in the diminutive; as, *cutīcula*, *cornīcula*, from *cornīx—cornīci*.

2. Verbals in *-bilis* have *a* long, but *i* short, in the antepenult; as, *amābilis*, *credĭbilis*.

3. Numerals in *-ginti*, *-ginta*, *-en..* and *-esimus*, have the antepenult long; as, *vīginti*.

4. A vowel before the terminations *-nea*, *-neo*, *-nia*, *-nio*, *-nius*, and *-nium*, is long—as, *līnea*;—except *castănea*, *lĭnea*, *măneo*, *mĭneo*, *mŏneo*, *sĕneo*, *tĕneo*, *ignomĭnia*, *lascĭnia*, *vĕnia*, *lănio*, *vĕnio*, *ingĕnium*, *gĕnius*, *sĕnio*, *sĕnium*; also words ending in *-cĭnium*, and those ending in *-ōnius* — *o* being short in the primitive.

5. *O* and *u* before the termination *-lentus* are short; as is also *u* in the antepenult before *v*; as, *viŏlentus*, *flŭvius*.

6. Words ending in *-arco*, *-arius*, *-arium*, *-erium*, *-orius*, and *-orium*, also adjectives in *-atĭcus* and *-atilis*, have the antepenult long — as, *cibārius*, *aquāticus*; — except *căreo*, *vărius*, *desidĕrium*, *impĕrium*, *magistĕrium*, *ministĕrium*; and some Greek words ending in *-ăticus*.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

VOWELS.

Monosyllables.

All monosyllables ending in a vowel, when not enclited, are long; as, *dā*, *dē*, *sī*, &c.

Polysyllables.

A final.

I. All the cases of declineable words ending in *-a* are short, except the ablative in *-a* of the first declension, and the vocative of Greek nouns ending in *-as* and *-es*.

Exceptions. — 1. *A* final in words not declined by cases, or not declined at all, is long — as, *amā*, *ergā*; — except *quiă*, *ită*, and *ejă*; also *pută*, when an adverb. This *-a* is also sometimes short in the prepositions *contră* and *ultră*, in numerals ending in *-gintă*; likewise in the final *-a* of the names of Greek letters; as, *alphă*, *betă*.

E final.

II. E in the final syllable of words of two or more syllables is short; as, *patrĕ*, *regĕre*. This includes also the enclitics.

Exceptions.—I. The final *-e* of nouns of the first and fifth declensions is long; as, *Tydidē*, *fidē*.

2. Greek neuters in the plural are long; as, *Tempē*, *melē;* also Greek vocatives from nouns in *-es* of the third declension.

3. *E* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active of the second conjugation — as, *docē;* — but sometimes it is short at the end of *cavĕ*, *valĕ*, *vidĕ*.

4. In adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions the final *-e* is long — as, *pulchrē*, *maximē;* — but *benĕ*, *malĕ*, *infernĕ*, and *supernĕ*, have the *e* short.

5. The final *-e* is long in *ferē*, *fermē*, and *ohē*.

I final.

III. *I* final is long; as, *dominī*, *classī*.

Exceptions.—1. The final *-i* is common in *mihi*, *sibi*, *tibi*, *uti*, and *ibi;* also in *nisi* and *quasi*, and in *cui* when a dissyllable; but in *ubĭvis*, *ubĭnam*, *utĭnam*, and *utĭque*, as also sometimes in *utĭ*, it is short.

2. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural ending in *-si* or *-sin;* also in the dative singular of increasing Greek nouns of the third declension. It is likewise short in the vocative in *-is;* but long in those in *-is*, gen. *-entos*, of Greek nouns.

O final.

IV. *O* final in words of two or more syllables is common; as, *amo*.

Exceptions. — 1. The final *-o* is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *regnō*. It is also long in ablatives used as adverbs, and in Greek nouns ending in omega; as, *ominō*, *Cliō*, likewise in *-iō*.

2. The final *-o* is short in *citŏ*, *illicŏ*, *profectŏ*, and in the compounds of *modo;* as, *dummodŏ;* generally also in *egŏ* and *homŏ*.

U and *Y* final.

V. Final *-u* is long; as, *cornū*. But the final *-y* is short; as, *molў*.

CONSONANTS.

Monosyllables.

Substantive-monosyllabics terminating in a consonant are long; but all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short, when the consonant is single and preceded by a single vowel; as, *sōl*, *jūs;* *nĕc*, *ăb*, *quĭd*.

Exceptions.—1. *En*, *nōn*, *quīn*, *sīn*, *crās*, *plūs*, *cār*, and *pār*, like-

wise pronouns and particles ending in -*c* are long, except *nĕc*. The monosyllabic plural cases of pronouns, as likewise the monosyllabic forms of verbs, are long; but *ĕs*, from *sum*, is short; and *hic* and *hoc* are common.

2. *Cŏr*, *fĕl*, *mĕl*, *pŏl*, *vĭr*, *ŏs* (gen. *ossis*), are short.

3. The abridged imperatives have the quantity of their primitives; as, *dīc*, from *dīco; făc*, from *făcio.*

Polysyllables.

B, *D*, *L*, *M*, *R*, and *T*, final.

I. *B*, -*d*, -*l*, -*m*, -*r*, and -*t*, in syllables at the end of words, shorten them, except when preceded by a diphthong, or the syllable is contracted.

Exceptions.—1. *Sōl*, *nīl*, *fār*, *sāl*, *lār*, *nār*, *pār*, *cūr*, and *fūr*, are long.

2. *Aēr* and *æthēr* are long; as are also nouns in -*er* (gen. -*eris*) long in their final syllables; as, *cratēr*.

C final.

II. Final syllables ending in -*c* are long; as, *illūc*.

Exceptions. — *Nĕc* and *donĕc* are short.

N final.

III. Final syllables ending in -*n* are long; as, *nōn*.

Exceptions.—1. *Forsăn*, *forsităn*, *ĭn*, *tamĕn*, *ăn*, *vidĕn*, are short; as are also words ending in -*en* (gen. -*inis*).

2. Greek nouns ending in -*an*, -*on*, -*in*, and -*yn*, originally short, are short.

AS, *ES*, and *OS*, final.

IV. The final syllables -*as*, -*es*, and -*os*, are long; as, *amās*, *sermonēs*, *virōs*.

Exceptions. — 1. -*As* is short in *anăs*, and in those Greek nouns which have their genitives in -*adis* -or -*ados*; as, *arcăs*, *Pallăs*.

1. -*Es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension increasing short in the genitive; as, *hospĕs* (gen. *hospĭtis*). But in *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds, it is long. -*Es* in the present tense of *sum* and its compounds is short; also in the preposition *penĕs*. -*Es* is short in Greek neuters, and in Greek nominative and vocative plurals of the third declension increasing in the genitive.

3. -*Os* is short in *compŏs*, *impŏs*, and in *ŏs* (gen. *ossis*) with its

compounds. In Greek nouns this *-os* is short in neuters, in nouns of the second declension, and in the genitive singular of the third declension.

IS, *US*, and *YS*, final.

V. The final syllables *-is*, *-us*, and *-ys*, are short; as, *mitis*.

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. *-Is* in the plural cases is long; as, *musīs*, *omnīs* (for *omnes*). *-Is* in the nominative of nouns having their genitives in *-itis*, *-inis*, or *-entis*, is long; as, *Samnīs*. It is also long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as likewise in the second persons of the verbs *fīs*, *īs*, *sīs*, *vīs*, *velīs*, and their compounds. But *-ris* in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive is common. *-Is* is long in *glīs*, *vīs*; *gratīs*, and *forīs*.

2. *-Us* is long in nouns of the third declension, which increase long; also in the genitive singular and in the plural of the fourth declension; as, *virtūs*, *fructūs*. *-Us* is long in the nominative or genitive, when derived from the Greek termination *-ous*. But the compounds of *-pus* (-πους), when of the second declension, have the *-us* short.

3. *Thetȳs*, and other nouns in *ys*, that also end in *-yn*, are sometimes long.

COMPOUND WORDS.

Compounds retain the quantities of the words composing them; as, *dēfĕro*, from *dē and fĕro*. The change of vowels or of diphthongs in the compounds does not alter their quantities.

1. The long syllables in the simple words become short in the following compounds; viz., *agnĭtus* and *cognĭtus*, from *nōtus; dejĕro* and *pejĕro*, from *jūro; hŏdie*, from *hōc die; nihĭlum* and *nihĭl*, from *hīlum; causĭdicus*, with other compounds ending in *-dicus*, from *dico*. But *inbēcillus*, from *băcillum*, has the second syllable long.

2. Prepositions of one syllable ending in a vowel are long. But those which end in a single consonant are short. *Pro-* is short in the following compounds; viz., *prŏfanus*, *prŏfari*, *prŏfecto*, *prŏfestus*, *prŏficiscor*, *prŏfiteor*, *prŏfugio*, *prŏfugus*, *prŏcella*, *prŏfundus*, *prŏnepos*, *prŏneptis*, and *prŏtervus*. But in *procuro*, *profundo*, *propago*, *propello*, and *propino*, it is common. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prŏpheta*; but it is common in *prologus* and *propola*.

3. The inseparable prepositions *di-* or *dis-* and *se-* are long; as, *dīduco*, *sēparo*; but the inseparable preposition *re-* or *red-* is short; as, *rĕmitto*. *Re-* is sometimes long in *rēligo*, *rēliquiæ*, *rēliquus*, *rēperit*, *rētulit*, *rēcidit*, and *rēducere*. *Re-* is long in the impersonal verb *rēfert*.

A, *E*, *I*, *O*, *U*, and Y, in composition.

4. *A* terminating the first part of a compound is long; but *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*, are generally short; as, *trādo*, *nĕfas*, *bĭceps*, *hŏdie*, *lŭcuples*, *Polўdorus*.

Exceptions.—1. *A*.—The *a* is short in *quăsi*, and in *eădem*, when not an ablative: likewise in some Greek compounds; as, *hexămeter*.

2. *E*. — The *e* is long in *crēdo*, *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquaquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquis*, *nēquitia*, *mēmet*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *sēse*, *vēcors*, *vēsanus*, *venēficus*, and sometimes *vidēlicet*. Also in words compounded with *-se*, for *sex-* or *semi*; as, *sēdecim*. In some words compounded with *-facio*, *e* is common; as, *patefacio*.

3. *I*. — The *i* is long in the first part or word of the compound, that may be declined; as, *quīdem*. Also in those compounds that can be separated without altering the sense; as, *sīquis*. *I* in the first part of a compound is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *bīgæ*, for *bijugæ*. *I* is long in *idem* when masculine; but short when neuter. *I* is long in *ubīque*, *utrobīque*, *ibīdem*, and *nīmirum*; likewise in the compounds of *dies*; as, *bīduum*, *merīdies*. *I* ending the first part of a compound Greek word is generally short; as, *Callĭmachus*.

4. *O*. — In *contro-*, *-retro*, *-intro*, and *-quando*, of compound words, the final *o* is long; as, *intrōduco*. *O* is likewise long in compounds of *quo-* and *eo-*; as *quōmodo*, *eōdem*; but in the conjunction *quŏque* it is short. In Greek compounds, which in the original have omega, the *o* is long; as, *geōmetra*.

5. *U*. — The *u* is long in *Jūpiter*, *jūdico*, *jūdex*, and *jūdicium*.

The Final Syllable of the Verse.

The last syllable of every verse (except the anapestic and Ionic *a minore*) may be made long or short, as the poet may require.

ACCENTS.

1. There are properly three accents in the Latin language: the acute (′) or rising tone, or *ictus*; the grave (‵) or falling tone, and the circumflex (^), consisting of the rising and falling tones.

2. A short monosyllable takes the acute accent, a long monosyllable the grave: as, *ét*, *spès*.

3. The penult is always accented in words of two syllables; as, *pă′-ter*, *mā′-ter*. When the penult is long, and the final syllable is short, the penult takes the circumflex accent; but when it is short, it takes the acute accent; as, *mû-să*, *hŏ′-mŏ*.

4. In words of more than two syllables, the penult is accented

when it is long; but when the penult is short, the antepenult is accented; as, *amī′-cus, dom′-ĭ-nus.* When the last syllable is also long, the penult takes the circumflex accent; but when it is short, the penult takes the acute accent. The antepenult can only take the acute accent, nor in any case can the accent be thrown farther back than the antepenult. Vocatives of the second declension in *-i*, instead of *-ie*, and genitives in *-i*, in place of *-ii*, are accented the same as if the omitted letters were annexed, and have the accent on the penult, even when it is short. In like manner, the compounds of *-facio* with words, not prepositions, have the accent on the penult, though short; as, *calefă′-cit.* The accent in prose, when the penult is common, is on the antepenult; as, *vol′-u-cris;* but the penult is accented in genitives in *-ius.*

The enclitics *que*, *ne*, and *ve*, are considered as a constituent part of the word, as respects accent; as, *i′ta*, *i′tăque*, *vi′rum*, *virum′que.*

All the syllables of Latin words on which the acute or circumflex accent does not fall are considered as having the grave accent

II. VERSIFICATION.

A verse consists of a certain number of long and short syllables, divided according to rules. The subdivisions of a verse are called feet.

FEET.

A foot is two or more syllables of a certain quantity combined together; as, *ārmă*, *cōrpŏră.*

Feet are simple or compound. The simple feet consist of two or three syllables, and are twelve in number; four of two feet, and eight of three feet. The compound feet consist of four syllables, and are sixteen in number.

Names of Simple Feet of Two Syllables.

Spondee	— —	....	as, *fūndūnt*
Phyrrhic..................	⏑ ⏑	....	as, *dĕŭs.*
Iambus....................	⏑ —	....	as, *ĕrānt.*
Trochee, or Choree	— ⏑	....	as, *ārmă.*

Names of Simple Feet of Three Syllables.

Dactyl	— ⏑ ⏑	as, *cōrpŏră.*
Anapæst	⏑ ⏑ —	as, *dŏmĭnī.*
Molossus.......................	— — —	as, *cōntēndūnt.*
Tribrach	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	as, *făcĕrĕ.*
Amphibrach......................	⏑ — ⏑	as, *ămārĕ.*
Amphimachus, or Cretic..	— ⏑ —	as, *cāstĭtās.*
Bacchius	⏑ — —	as, *Cătōnēs.*
Antibacchius..................	— — ⏑	as, *Rōmānŭs.*

Names of Compound Feet of Four Syllables.

Dispondee (two spondees).................	— — — —	as, *cōnflīxērūnt.*
Proceleusmatic (two Phyrrics)	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	as, *hŏmĭnĭbŭs.*
Diiambus (two iambics)	⏑ — ⏑ —	as, *ămāvĕrānt.*
Ditrochee (two trochees).................	— ⏑ — ⏑	as, *cōmprŏbāvĭt.*
Greater Ionic (a spondee and Phyrric)	— — ⏑ ⏑	as, *cālcārĭbŭs.*
Smaller Ionic (a Phyrric and spondee)	⏑ ⏑ — —	as, *prŏpĕrābānt.*
Choriambus (a trochee and iambus)...	— ⏑ ⏑ —	as, *tērrĭfĭcānt.*
Antipast (an iambus and trochee)......	⏑ — — ⏑	as, *ămābātĭs.*
First pæon (a trochee and Phyrric)...	— ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	as, *tēmpŏrĭbŭs.*
Second pæon (an iambus and Phyrric)	⏑ — ⏑ ⏑	as, *pŏtēntĭă.*
Third pæon (a Phyrric and trochee)..	⏑ ⏑ — ⏑	as, *ănĭmātŭs.*
Fourth pæon (a Phyrric and iambus)	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ —	as, *cĕlĕrĭtās.*
First epitrit (an iambus and spondee)	⏑ — — —	as, *ămāvērūnt.*
Second epitrit (a trochee and spondee)	— ⏑ — —	as, *cōndĭtōrēs.*
Third epitrit (a spondee and iambus).	— — ⏑ —	as, *dīscōrdĭās.*
Fourth epitrit (a spondee and trochee)	— — — ⏑	as, *āddūxīstĭs.*

The dactyl, spondee, anapæst, and proceleusmatic, are called isochronous, because they are each equal to four short times or feet: the long foot being considered equal to two short ones.

METRE.

Metre is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules; comprehending either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses. Metre is divided into dactylic, anapæstic, iambic, trochaic, choriambic, and Ionic; being thus termed from the original foot used in each.

In dactylic, choriambic, and Ionic metres, a measure consists of one foot; in the others, a measure consists of two feet.

VERSE.

A verse is a certain number of feet arranged according to rule, and forming a line of poetry. Two verses are called a distich; a half verse, a hemistich.

Verses have three different kinds of denominations: — 1st, Those referring to the species or kinds of verse; 2d, those denoting the number of feet or measures in the verse; 3d, those implying the character of the line, as being complete, deficient, or redundant.

1. The principal kinds of verses are seven: — 1. The datylic; 2. the anapæstic; 3. the iambic; 4. the trochaic; 5. the choriambic; 6. the Ionic, and 7. the compound. Each of these have likewise several subordinate kinds of verses.

2. The denomination of a verse, with respect to the metres or feet it contains, is: — 1. Monometer, consisting of one measure; 2. dimeter, of two measures; 3. trimeter, of three measures; 4. tetrameter, of four measures; 5. pentameter, of five measures; 6. hexameter, of six measures; 7. senarius, of six feet; 8. octonarius, of eight feet.

3. Verses, with respect to the character of the line, are:—1. Acatalectic, when the verse is complete in all its parts; 2. catalectic, when deficient in a syllable at the end; 3. acephalous, when deficient of a syllable at the beginning; 4. brachycatalectic, when wanting two syllables or a foot; 5. hypercatalectic, or hypermeter, when redundant in a syllable or foot.

4. A verse, or a portion thereof, containing three half feet, measured from its beginning, is called a trihemimeris; if it contains five half feet, it is called a penthemimeris; if seven half feet. a hepthemimeris; if nine half feet, an ennehemimeris. A·hemiolius is one whole metre and a half.

ARSIS AND THESIS.

1. The elevation of the voice is called arsis, its depression thesis. The syllable of the foot on which the arsis falls is termed the ictus; the other syllables of the foot have the thesis or depression.

2. The natural arsis of a foot is on the long syllable; as, on the first syllable of the dactyl or trochee, but on the second of the iambus. In those feet having syllables of equal length the place of the arsis is undetermined by the foot itself, and is only determined by the principal foot of the meter; thus, in dactylic verse, the arsis of the spondee falls on the first syllable, but in anapæstic on the last syllable. When however a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into two short syllables, the arsis falls on the first of these two syllables.

CÆSURA.

1. The cæsura is the separation of syllables rhythmically or metrically united by the ending of a word, so as to leave part of the measure or rhythm in one word, and part in the next word following it.

2. There are three kinds of cæsura: — 1, Of the foot; 2, of the rhythm, and 3, of the verse.

I. The cæsura of the foot takes place when a word ends before the foot is completed; as, in the second, third, fourth, and fifth feet of the following verse:

Sīlvēs | trēm tĕnŭ | ī Mū | sām mĕdĭ | tārĭs ă | vēnā.
1 2 3 4 5 6

II. The cæsura of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word; that is, the arsis is in one word and the thesis in another, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the above verse.

1. The cæsura of the rhythm always coincides with the cæsura of the foot, as in the second, third, and fourth feet in the line above; but the cæsura of the foot does not always coincide with the cæsura of the rhythm, as in the fifth foot of the verse above.

2. When the arsis of the cæsura of the rhythm falls on a short syllable it sometimes has the effect of lengthening it; as,

Pēctŏrĭ | būs ĭnhĭ | āns spī | rāntĭă | cōnsŭlĭt | ēxtā.
1 2 3 4 5 6

Here *bus*, in the second foot, which is naturally short, is lengthened by the ictus of the arsis. This is especially the case in hexameter verses.

3. The cæsura of the foot or of the verse does not lengthen a syllable, unless it coincides with the cæsura of the rhythm.

III. The cæsura of the verse is a division of the line into two parts, thereby affording a pause or rest to the voice, without injuring the sense or harmony. This cæsura of the verse is called the cæsural pause. In some kinds of verses its place is determined, as in the pentameter; in other verses it is left to the choice of the poet, as in the hexameter

DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

There are seven principal kinds of metre: — 1, The dactylic; 2, the anapæstic; 3, the iambic; 4, the trochaic; 5, the choriambic; 6, the Ionic; 7, the compound.

Dactylic Metre. (A.)

I.—The Hexameter, or Heroic verse, consists of six feet, of which the fifth is a dactyl; the sixth a spondee: the first, second, third, and fourth being optionally either dactyls or spondees; as,

Lūdĕrĕ | quæ̅ vēl- | -lēm călă- | -mō pĕr- | -mīsĭt ă- | -grēstī.

1. When the fifth foot is a spondee, in place of a dactyl, the verse is called spondaic.

2. In a hexameter verse much of its harmony and beauty depends on the proper attention to the cæsura. The cæsural pause most approved of in heroic poetry is that which takes place after the arsis in the third foot, as indicated by the double line in the following verse;

Āt dŏmŭs | īntĕrĭ- | -ōr || rē- | -gālī | splēndĭdă | lūxā.

Sometimes the cæsura falls after the thesis of the third foot, or the arsis of the fourth.

II.—The Pentameter verse consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be either a dactyl or spondee; the third is always a spondee, and the fourth and fifth are anapests; as,

Cārmĭnĭ- | -būs vī- | vēs || tēm- | -pŭs ĭn ōm- | -nĕ mĕīs.

1. The pentameter is divided into two hemistichs in the middle of the third foot, which is also the place of the cæsura, indicated by the double line.

2. The pentameter is mostly used with the hexameter in alternate verses, forming what is called the elegiac verse.

III.—The Tetrameter *à priore*, or Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, the fourth being always a dactyl; as,

Gārŭlă | pēr rā- | -mōs, ăvĭs | ōbstrĕpĭt.

IV. — The Tetrameter *à posteriore*, or spondaic tetrameter, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Sīc trīs- | -tēs āf- | -fātŭs ă- | -mīcōs.

V. — The Dactylic Trimeter consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Grātō | Pȳrrhă sŭb | āntrō.

VI. — The TRIMETER CATALECTIC ARCHILOCHIAN consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter. The first and second feet are mostly dactyls; as,

Pūlvĭs et | ūmbră sŭ- | -mus.

VII. — The DACTYLIC DIMETER, or Adonic verse, consists of two feet — a dactyl and a spondee: as,

Tĕrrŭĭt | ūrbēm.

Anapæstic Metre. (B.)

I. — The ANAPÆSTIC MONOMETER consists of two anapæsts; as,

Ŭlŭlās- | -sĕ cănēs.

II. — The ANAPÆSTIC DIMETER consists of two measures or four anapæsts; as,

Phărĕtræ- | -quĕ grăvēs | dătĕ sæ- | -vă fĕrō.

Iambic Metre. (C.)

I. —.The IAMBIC TETRAMETER, or quadratus, or octonarius, consists of four iambic measures, or eight iambic feet. The pure iambic measure was seldom used by the Roman poets — other feet being often used in place of the iambic, except in the last foot. In this iambic tetrameter, for the iambics in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh feet, a tribrach (⏑ ⏑ ⏑) may be used: the last foot however is always an iambus. In the first, third, fifth, and seventh feet, a spondee may also be used — and in place of this spondee either a dactyl or anapæst may be substituted; as,

Nūnc hīc | dĭēs | ălĭăm | vītam af- || -fĕrt ălĭ- | -ōs mō- | -rēs pōs- | -tŭlăt.

The cæsura follows the second measure, as shown by the double line.

II. — The HIPPONATIC, or the iambic tetrameter catalectic, is the iambic tetrameter wanting the last syllable, and having an iambus in the seventh place, but in all the other places the same variations as the tetrameter; as,

Dēprēn- | -să nā. | -vĭs īn | mărī, | vēsā- || -nĭēn- | -tĕ vēn- | -to,

III.—The IAMBIC TRIMETER, or senarius, consists of three iambic measures or six feet. In all the feet, except the last, which is always an iambus, the tribrach may be used in place of the iambus; and in the first, third, and fifth feet, being the uneven, a spondee

may be used in place of the iambus. This spondee may be resolved either into a dactyl or anapæst; as,

Phăsē- | -lŭs īl- | lĕ || quēm | vĭdē- | -tĭs hōs- | -pĭtēs.

This is a pure iambic verse. The cæsural pause of the senarius is generally in the third foot, as marked by the double line; bu sometimes it is also in the fourth foot. The senarius, as varied by other feet:

Quō quō | scĕlēs- | -tī rŭĭ- | -tĭs āŭt | cūr dēx- | -tĕrīs.

IV. — The Choliambus, or scazon, is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth foot, as,

Ān ĭdĕ- | -ŏ tān- | -tūm vēn- | -ĕrās | ŭt ēx- | -īrēs.

V. — The Archlochian, or iambic trimeter catalectic, is the iambic trimeter, wanting the final syllable thereof. It admits of spondees in the first and third places, but not in the fifth; as,

Vŏcā- | -tŭs āt- | -quĕ nōn | vŏcā- | tŭs āŭ- | -dit.

VI. — The Iambic Dimeter consists of two iambic measures or four feet. It has the same variations in the first, second, and third feet, and in the first and third feet, as the tetrameter has; as,

Fōrtī | sĕquē- | -mūr pēc- | -tŏrē.

VII. — The Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at its end; as,

Rĕdē- | -gĕt īn | vērōs | tĭmō- | -rēs.

VIII. — The Iambic Dimeter Catalectic, or Anacreontic, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and always having an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ut tī- | -grĭs ŏr- | -bă gnā- | -tīs.

IX. — The Galliambus consists of two iambic catalectic dimeters, — the last or second catalectic dimeter wants the final syllable. The catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter is long; the second foot of the second dimeter is generally a tribrach; as,

Sŭpĕr āl- | -tă vēc- | -tŭs Ā- || -tȳs || cĕlĕrī | rătĕ mă- | -rĭa.

The cæsura always occurs at the end of the first dimeter, as shown by the double line.

Trochaic Metre. (D.)

I. — The Trochaic Tetrameter, or octonarius, properly consists of eight trochees; as,

Ipsĕ | sūmmīs | sāxīs | fīxŭs || āspĕ- | -rīs, ē- | -vīscĕ- | -rātŭs.

1. The pure trochaic verse was seldom used. The cæsural pause occurs after the fourth foot.

2. In all the feet, except the last, which is a trochee, a tribrach may be used in place of the trochee. In the even places, or second, fourth, and sixth feet, a spondee may be used in place of a trochee; and this spondee may be resolved into a dactyl or anapæst.

II. — The Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic consists of seven feet, followed by a catalectic syllable. In the first six places it is varied in the same manner as the trochaic tetrameter, but in the seventh place it has a trochee only; as,

Jūssŭs | ēst ĭn- | -ērmĭs | īrĕ: || pūrŭs | īrĕ | jūssŭs | ēst.

III. — The Sapphic verse consists of five feet. The first is a trochee; the second a spondee — sometimes a trochee; the third is a dactyl, and fourth and fifth are trochees; as,

Īntĕ- | -gĕr vī- | tæ̆, || scĕlĕ- | -rīsquĕ | pūrŭs.

The cæsural pause is generally after the fifth half-foot, as indicated by the double line.

IV.—The Phalæcian verse consists of five feet. The first foot is a spondee, the second a dactyl, and the last three are trochees; as,

Nōn ēst | vīvĕrĕ | sēd vă- | -lērĕ | vītă.

V. — The Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic, or acephalous iambic dimeter, consists of three feet — all properly trochees,—with a catalectic syllable; but it is varied in the second foot or place by a spondee or dactyl; as,

Nōn ĕ- | -būr nĕ- | -que aurĕ- | -um

Choriambic Metre. (E.)

I. — The Choriambic Pentameter consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quæsīĕrīs | scīrĕ nĕfās | quēm mĭhĭ quēm | tĭbī.

II. — The Choriambic Tetrameter consists of three choriambi and a Bacchius; as,

Ōmnĕ nĕmūs | cūm flŭvĭ īs | ōmnĕ cănāt | prŏfūndūm.

1. For the iambus in the first choriambus Horace substituted a spondee; as,

Tē dĕōs ō- | -rō Sy̆bărūs | cūr prŏpĕrēs | ămāndō.

III. — The Asclepiadic Tetrameter consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Mæcē- | -nās ătă vīs || ēdĭtĕ rēg- | -ĭbūs.

The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

IV.—The Choriambic Trimeter, or Glyconic, consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sīc tē | dīvă pŏtēns | Cy̆prī.

The first foot is sometimes an iambus or trochee.

V. — The Choriambic Trimeter Catalectic, or Pherecratic, is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Py̆rrhă, sŭb ān- | -trō.

Sometimes the first foot was a trochee or anapæst.

VI. — The Choriambic Dimeter consists of a choriambus and Bacchius; as,

Ly̆dĭă dīc | pĕr ōmnēs.

Ionic Metre. (F.)

I. — The Ionic à Majore, or Sotadic, consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee; as,

Sātūrnĕ tĭ- | -bī Zōĭlŭs | ānnŭlōs prī- | -ōrēs.

The Ionic feet are often changed into ditrochees or double trochees; also, either one of the two long syllables in these Ionics may be changed into two short syllables.

II.—The Ionic à Minore consists commonly of three or four feet, all of which are Ionics à minore; as,

Pŭĕr ālēs | tĭbĭ tēlās | ŏpĕrōsæ- | -quĕ Mĭnĕrvæ.

Compound Metre. (G.)

Compound metre is the union of two kinds of metre in the same line or verse.

I. — The Dactylico-Iambic, or elegiambus, consists of a dactylic trimeter catalectic (A. VI.) and an Iambic dimeter (C. VI.); as,

Scrībĕrĕ | vērsĭcŭ- | -lōs || ămō- | -rĕ pēr | cūlsūm | grăvī.

II. — The Iambico-Dactylic, or iambelegus, consists of the same number of feet as I., but the metres are inverted; as,

Nĭvēs- | -quĕ dē- | -dūcūnt | Jŏvēm || nūnc mărĕ | nūnc sĭlŭ- | -æ.

III.—The Dactylico-Trochaic, or Archilochian heptameter, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *à priore* (A. III.), followed by three trochees; as,

Sōlvĭtŭr | ācrĭs hĭ- | -ēms gră- | -tā vĭcĕ || vērĭs | ēt fă- | -vōnĭ.

IV.—The Greater Alcaic consists of two iambic feet and a long catalectic, followed by two dactyls; as,

Vĭdēs | ŭt āl- | -tā || stĕt nĭvĕ | cāndĭdŭm.

The first foot is often a spondee; and the two dactyls at the end of the verse are often scanned as a choriambus and an iambus.

V. The Lesser Alcaic, or dactylico-trochaic tetrameter, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees; as,

Lēvĭă | pēr sŏnŭ- | -ērĕ | sāxă.

COMBINATION OF VERSES.

A poem may consist of one, two, or three different kinds of verses. When it consists of one kind of verse it is called monocolon; when of two kinds, dicolon; when of three, tricolon.

2. A stanza, or strophe, consists of two or more verses: one or more of which are of different kinds of metre. When the stanza is completed it is again repeated, and so on to the end of the poem.

3. When a stanza consists of two lines or verses it is called distrophon; when of three, tristrophon; when of four, tetrastrophon; &c.

4. Poems may be denominated according to the number of lines in a stanza and the different kinds of verses: thus —

Monocolon, which has only one kind of verse in the poem.

Dicolon distrophon, when there are two kinds of verses, and two lines in the stanza.

Dicolon tristrophon, when there are two kinds of verses, and three lines in the stanza.

Dicolon tetrastrophon, when there are two kinds of verses, and four lines in the stanza.

Tricolon tristrophon, when there are three kinds of verses, and three lines in the stanza.

Tricolon tetrastrophon, when there are three kinds of verses, and four lines in the stanza.

HORATIAN METRES

Horace, in his lyric compositions, makes use of twenty different species of metre, which he has combined in nineteen different forms, which forms are numbered in the following order.

[Observe — the capital letters refer to the principal classes of

metres, and the Roman numerals to the different kinds of metres, as explained above.]

No. 1.—The two first lines are greater Alcaics (G. IV.); the third line is an Archilochian iambic dimeter-hypermeter (C. VII.); the fourth line is a lesser Alcaic (G. V.).

No. 2. — The three first lines are Sapphics (D. III.); the fourth line is an Adonic (A. VII.).

No. 3. — The first line is a Glyconic (E. IV.); the second line is an Asclepiadic (E. III.).

No. 4. — The first line is an iambic trimeter (C. III.); the second line is an iambic dimeter (C. VI.).

No. 5.—The three first lines are Asclepiadics (E. III.); the fourth line is a Glyconic (E. IV.).

No. 6. — The two first lines are Asclepiadics (E. III.); the third line is a Pherecratic (E. V.); the fourth line is a Glyconic (E. IV.).

No. 7. — The Asclepiadic alone (E. III.).

No. 8. — The first line is a dactylic hexameter (A. I.); the second is a dactylic tetrameter à posteriore (A. IV.).

No. 9. — The choriambic pentameter alone (E. I.).

No. 10. — The first line is dactylic hexameter (A. I.); the second is an iambic dimeter (C. VI.).

No. 11. — The iambic trimeter alone (C. I.).

No. 12. — The first line is a choriambic dimeter (E. VI.); the second is a choriambic tetrameter (E. II.).

No. 13.—The first line is a dactylic hexameter (A. I.); the second is an iambic trimeter (C. III.).

No. 14.—The first line is a dactylic hexameter (A. I.); the second is a trimeter catalectic Archilochian (A. VI.).

No. 15.—The first line is an iambic trimeter (C. III.); the second line is a dactylic trimeter catalectic (A. VI.); the third line is an iambic dimeter (C. VI.).

No. 16.—The first line is a dactylic hexameter (A. I.); the second line is an iambic dimeter (C. VI.); the third line is a dactylic trimeter catalectic (A. VI.).

No. 17. — The first line is an Archilochian heptameter (G. III.): the second line is an iambic trimeter catalectic (C. V.).

No. 18. — The first line is a trochaic dimeter catalectic (D. IV.): the second is an iambic trimeter catalectic (C. V.).

No. 19. — The Ionic à minore alone (F. II.).

METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE,

Containing, in alphabeticul order, the First Words of each Ode, with Numbers annexed referring to the preceding Enumeration of the different Metres of the several Odes of Horace.

	No.
Æli vetusto	1
Æquam memento	1
Albi ne doleas	5
Altera jam teritur	13
Angustam, amice	1
At, O deorum	4
Audivere, Lyce	6
Bacchum in remotis	1
Beatus ille	4
Cœlo supinas	1
Cœlo tonantem	1
Cur me querelis	1
Delicta majorum	1
Descende cœlo	1
Dianam, teneræ	6
Diffugere nives	14
Dive, quem proles	2
Divis orte bonis	5
Donarem pateras	7
Donec gratus eram tibi	3
Eheu! fugaces	1
Est mihi nonum	2
Et thure et fidibus	3
Exegi monumentum	7
Extremum Tanaim	5
Faune, nympharum	2
Festo quid potius die	3
Herculis ritu	2
Horrida tempestas	16
Ibis Liburnis	4
Icci, beatus	1
Ille et nefasto	1
Impios parræ	2
Inclusam Danaën	5
Intactis opulentior	3
Integer vitæ	2
Intermissa, Venus, diu	3
Jam jam efficaci	11
Jam pauca aratro	1
Jam satis terris	2
Jam veris comites	5
Justum et tenacem	1
Laudabunt alii	8
Lupis et agnis	4
Lydia, dic, per omnes	12
Mæcenas atavis	7
Mala soluta	4
Martiis cælebs	2
Mater sæva Cupidinum	3
Mercuri, facunde	2
Mercuri, nam te	2
Miserarum est	19
Mollis inertia	10
Montium custos	2
Motum ex Metello	1
Musis amicus	1
Natis in usum	1
Ne forte credas	1
Ne sit ancillæ	2
Nolis longa feræ	5
Nondum subacta	1
Non ebur neque aureum	18
Non semper imbres	1
Non usitata	1
Non vides, quanto	2
Nox erat	10
Nullam, Vare, sacra	9
Nullus argento	2
Nunc est bibendum	1
O crudelis adhuc	9
O diva, gratum	1
O fons Bandusiæ	6
O matre pulchra	1
O nata mecum	1
O navis referent	6
O sæpe mecum	1

	No.
O Venus, regina	2
Odi profanum	1
Otium Divos	2
Parcius junctas	2
Parcus Deorum	1
Parenstis Olim	4
Pastor quum traheret	5
Persicos odi puer	2
Petti, nihil me	15
Phœbe, silvarumque	2
Phœbus volentem	2
Pindarum quisquis	2
Poscimur; si quid	2
Quæ cura patrum	1
Qualem ministrum	1
Quando repostum	4
Quantum distet ab Inacho	3
Quem tu Melpomene	3
Quem virum aut heroa	2
Quid bellicosus	1
Quid dedicatum	1
Quid fles, Asterie	6
Quid immerentes	4
Quid obseratis	11
Quid tibi vis	8
Quis desiderio	5
Quis multa gracilis	6
Quo me, Bacche	3
Quo, quo, scelesti ruitis	4
Quum tu, Lydia	3
Rectius vives	2
Rogare longo	4
Scriberis Vario	5
Septimi, Gades	2
Sic te Diva potens	3
Solvitur acris hiems	17
Te maris et terræ	8
Tu ne quæsieris	9
Tyrrhena regum	1
Ulla si juris	2
Uxor pauperis Ibyci	3
Velox amœum	1
Vides, ut alta	1
Vile potabis	2
Vitas hinnuleo	6
Vixi puellis	1

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

I. — Synalœpha is the cutting off or elision of the final vowel or diphthong ending a word, when the next word following it begins with a vowel, or with *h*, having a vowel after it; thus, *terra antiqua* is read *terr' antiqua;* and *Dardanidæ infensi, Dardanid' infensi.* This verse —

Quidve moror? si omnes uno ordine habetis Achivos —

is scanned thus:

Quīdvĕ mŏ- ¦ -rōr? s'ōm- | -nēs ū | n'ōrdĭn' hă- | -bētĭs Ă- | -chīvōs.

This synalœphia does not always take place; and especially the interjections *O, heu, ah, proh, væ, vah,* are not elided.

II. — Ecthlipsis is the elision of a final *m*, with the vowel before it, when the word immediately following it begins with a vowel, or with *h*, followed by a vowel; as —

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum —

scanned thus:

Mōnstr' hōr- | -rēnd' īn- | -fōrm' īn- | -gēns cuī | lūmĕn ăd- | -ēmptūm.

Sometimes this elision was omitted by the early poets, who also sometimes elided *s*, with a vowel before it, in like manner; and sometime the *s* alone was elided by them.

III. — SYNAPHEIA is the influence that the first syllable of a verse has on the last syllable of the verse immediately preceding it, either by position, synalœphia, or ecthlipsis; as,

Præcĕps sīlvās mōntēsquĕ fugīt
Cītŭs Actæon.

Her the *t* at the end of the first verse, and the *c* of the commencement of the verse next following it, have the effect of lengthening the *i* in *fugit*, which in itself is naturally short.

Ōmnĭă Mērcŭrĭō, sĭmĭlīs vōcēmquĕ cŏlōrēm*que*
Et crīnes . . . .

Here *que*, at the end of the first verse, is elided before *et*, at the commencement of the second verse; thus, *qu' et.*

By this figure, also, the parts of a compound word are divided between two verses: one part, namely, ending the first verse, the other part beginning the next following verse.

IV. — SYNÆRESIS, or CRASIS, is the contraction of two syllables into one; as, *Phœton*, for *Phaëton; alvo*, for *alveo; dorsum*, for *deorsum.*

A syllable formed by the union of *i* or *u* with another vowel immediately following either of them, has the quantity of such following vowel, whatever it may be. The *i* in these cases being considered the same as *y* consonant, and the *u* the same as *w.*

V.—DIÆRESIS separates one syllable into two; as, *aulæ* into *aulaï; Trojæ* into *Troïæ*; *solvit* into *solŭit.*

VI.—SYSTOLE shortens a long syllable; as, the penult of *tulērunt* is made *tulĕrunt.*

VII.—DIASTOLE lengthens a naturally short syllable. It generally occurs in proper name and compounds of *re;* as, *Prīămĭdes, rēlĭgĭo.*



INTERLINEARS.

CLASSICAL WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

Charles De Silver & Sons, Philadelphia.

HAMILTON, LOCKE, AND CLARKE'S INTERLINEAR CLASSICS.

The plan of these works is not new. It is merely the adaptation of the experience of many of the best and most inquiring minds in educational pursuits—methodizing what was vague and loose. When the Latin tongue was the only language of diplomacy and scientific international communication, to acquire a knowledge of it was considered of more importance than now. This method was then recommended by Cardinal Wolsey, John Ascham, Latin Secretary to Queen Elizabeth, by the best Latin scholar and writer *of his time, John Milton, and also by John Locke. In teaching classes by* oral dictation, *these works present advantages that no others contain. From the thousands of testimonials as to the excellence of the Interlinear System from teachers and eminent literary men, the publishers give a few selections as specimens.*

VIRGIL.

The Works of P. Virgilius Maro,

CONSISTING OF THE

BUCOLICS, GEORGICS and the ÆNEID OF VIRGIL.

With the Original Text reduced to the Natural Order of Construction, and an Interlinear Translation, as nearly Literal as the Idiomatic Differences of the Latin and English Languages will allow.

ADAPTED TO THE SYSTEM OF CLASSICAL INSTRUCTION

Combining the Methods of Ascham, Milton, and Locke.

By LEVI HART and V. R. OSBORN.

In One Volume, Royal 12mo, 512 Pages, Half Turkey Morocco. Price, - - $2.25.

INFORMATION ABOUT BOOKS PROMPTLY GIVEN.

THE INTERLINEAR OVID.

SELECTIONS

FROM THE

METAMORPHOSES AND HEROIDES

OF

PUBLIUS OVIDIUS NASO,

WITH

A Literal and Interlinear Translation on the Hamiltonian System as Improved by Thomas Clark, Editor of the Greek and Latin Interlinear Classics.

By GEORGE WILLIAM HEILIG.

In One Volume, Royal 12mo, Half Turkey Morocco. Price, - - $2.25.

T. S. Floyd, Principal of Chesterfield Academy, Chesterfield, N. H., writes :

Having carefully examined a copy of Ovid, it gives me great pleasure to bear my testimony to the superior merits of your "Interlinear Classics." The widely extended and daily increasing intelligence of the age has loudly called for a change from the old system of teaching the Classics, which I hope we soon shall have by the adoption of the Interlinear system. I cordially commend it to teachers and students.

From the Philadelphia Press.

The Interlinear Ovid is intended for the use of schools and private learners, and confident we are that, by the aid of such books, the principal difficulties of translation are readily removable.

From the New York Sun.

A language, in fact, has to be learned *by rote;* there is no other way of speaking it well. The interlinear translation of Ovid is as nearly literal as the idiomatic differences of the two languages will allow.

From J. A. Hollis, Female College, Columbia, Mo.

I notice that you are publishing the "Interlinear Classics"—I think this a good idea, and that it will conduce much to the progress of those studying the classics. They will be especially useful to teachers.

From the New Orleans Delta.

A more admirable literal translation of every word in great works it would be impossible to meet with. It must serve as the best possible guide for the Latin student.

THE SMALLEST ORDERS PROMPTLY EXECUTED.

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES,

With an Analytical and Interlinear Translation

OF

THE FIRST FIVE BOOKS,

For the Use of Schools and Private Learners.

A New and More Correct Edition, with an Interlinear Translation

OF

THE SIXTH AND SEVENTH BOOKS.

By THOMAS CLARK.

In One Volume, Royal 12mo, 435 Pages, Half Turkey Morocco.
Price, - - - - - $2.25.

From H. McBride, Reed Creek, N. Y.

I am highly in favor of the Interlinear system of learning the Latin and Greek languages, and hope to see it universally adopted.

From J. Frothingham.

I have used your Interlinear Cæsar and Virgil in my classes for several months, and am much pleased with the progress that my pupils make. I am satisfied that this is the *true* method to obtain a knowledge of the Latin language, or, in fact, of any language.

From the Philadelphia Ledger.

These translations of the classics some of the finest minds deem the best adapted for learning languages. "Cæsar" appears to be produced with great care, and in a style which will commend it to every student.

From the New York Sun.

Mr. Clark has followed the method of Locke, which has been approved by many teachers, and is a most useful innovation, superseding the former plan throughout the United States.

From Andrew J. De Witt, Teacher, Lynchburg, Va.

Clark's Interlinear Cæsar is unquestionably the common-sense system, my experience having fully convinced me of the folly of pursuing the old plan. My classes have learned more Latin in one week from Clark than they formerly acquired in three months without it.

WRITE FOR "INTERLINEAR" CIRCULARS.

THE INTERLINEAR JUVENAL.

THE SATIRES

OF

DECIMUS JUNIUS JUVENALIS,

With a Literal and Interlinear Translation on the Hamiltonian System as Improved by Thomas Clark,

WITH THE LIFE OF JUVENAL.

By WILLIAM GIFFORD, Esq.,

For the Use of Schools and Private Learners.

By HIRAM CORSON, M.A.,

Professor of English Literature, Rhetoric, and Oratory in the Cornell University; Edison's "Chaucer's Legende of Goode Women;" late Professor of Rhetoric, and of the English Language and Literature, in St. John's College, Annapolis; late Professor of Moral Science, History and Rhetoric in Girard College, Philadelphia.

In One Volume, Royal 12mo, Half Turkey Morocco. Price, - - $2.25.

From the Students' Journal, New York.

Specially valuable to private students of Greek and Latin. Often those instructed in colleges in these languages would be glad to have a more extended knowledge than they acquire of the best classical authors. And after one has learned grammatical forms, what is the particular service of having to turn to a dictionary for any new word or definition? Is not the easier method of getting the desired knowledge just as serviceable, namely, by reference to an interlinear translation? According to some, language is to be *mastered* by constant use in reading, writing and speaking, and not by grammatical definitions, classifications, paradigms and rules. Without going to this extreme, we may say that the ready assistance of an *interlinear* translation is far better for progress than thumbing a dictionary, especially for classical students sufficiently taxed with business or other studies.

From the Philadelphia Public Ledger.

Juvenal, in this form, has never before been published in the United States, and the present edition will be exceedingly useful to those persons who desire to become acquainted with the writings of the most bitter satirist ever known.

THE MAILING OF ORDERS A SPECIALTY.

THE INTERLINEAR LIVY.

TITUS LIVIUS.

SELECTIONS FROM THE FIRST FIVE BOOKS.

TOGETHER WITH

The Twenty-first and Twenty-second Books Entire,

WITH AN

Interlinear Translation on the Hamiltonian System.

THE ORIGINAL TEXT BEING REDUCED TO THE NATURAL ORDER OF CONSTRUCTION, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE LEARNERS.

By REV. I. W. BIEBER.

One Volume, Royal 12mo, 624 Pages, Half Turkey Morocco. Price, $2.25.

From Locke.

As the boy advances in acquiring a knowledge of words, he must advance, *pari passu*, in obtaining a thorough and critical knowledge of grammar. When, by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little farther, to the reading of some other easy Latin book, such as Justin or Eutropius; and to make the reading and understanding of it the less tedious and difficult to him, let him help himself with the English translation. Nor let the objection that he will then know it only by rote fright any one. This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly for, this way of learning languages.

From the New York Courier and Enquirer.

The use of interlinear translations, such as Livy, in the study of the classics, is now considered by many as far preferable to the old system of teaching. It postpones the study of grammar, which is generally a bugbear to students, until some progress has been made in the language, and a certain amount of practical grammar has been acquired.

From the New York Times.

The system has the sanction of common sense, and has been warmly recommended by such able and erudite men as Cardinal Wolsey, Erasmus, Roger Ascham, John Milton, John Locke, and Sydney Smith. We believe, with Sydney Smith, that this system, "the time being given, will make better scholars; and the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed."

THE SMALLEST ORDERS PROMPTLY EXECUTED.

HOMER.

ILIAD OF HOMER,

WITH AN

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION,

For the Use of Schools and Private Learners, on the Hamiltonian System as Improved

By THOMAS CLARK,
EDITOR OF THE LATIN AND GREEK INTERLINEAR CLASSICS.

In One Volume, Royal 12mo, 368 Pages, Half Turkey Morocco. Price, - - $2.25.

The first *three* books of this interlinear edition of the Iliad of Homer have been translated by Hamilton; the rest, namely, the *fourth*, *fifth*, *sixth*, *seventh*, and *eighth*, by the editor of this American edition. These five last-mentioned books have been translated on the same plan by the editor as that on which he translated Xenophon's Anabasis—being intermediate to the plans of Hamilton and Locke—the signification of each individual word being clearly given, and so combined as to form a clear and intelligible sentence.

From the Philadelphia Evening Bulletin.

An excellent translation. The Greek type deserves special notice from its great beauty and striking legibility. The work is admirably printed on fine paper and neatly bound.

From S. Royce, Liberty Seminary, Liberty, Union Co., Ind.

I watch with anxiety the progress of your "Interlinear publications of Classical Authors." I wish you all success. I labor for it by using your publications, knowing the superiority of the method.

From the Wheeling Intelligencer.

The great beauty and merit of this system lies in its labor-saving simplicity. To students who have mastered the elementary principles of the Greek language this work is really invaluable.

From the Philadelphia Sunday Dispatch.

This interlinear translation of the Iliad of Homer has been prepared with much care and learning, upon a system intermediate beween those of Hamilton and Locke. To students of the Greek language such a book will be very valuable.

MAILING OF ORDERS A SPECIALTY.

THE

GOSPEL OF ST. JOHN

IN GREEK,

With an Interlinear and Analytical Translation

On the Principles of the Hamiltonian System as Improved

By THOMAS CLARK,

Late Editor of the Latin and Greek Interlinear Classics,

TO WHICH IS APPENDED

A Critical Annotation; also, the Authorized English Version of the Protestant Church, and a Comparative View of the Catholic Translation from the Vulgate, with Historical Notes.

By GEORGE WILLIAM HEILIG.

In One Volume, Royal 12mo, Half Turkey Morocco. Price, - - - $2.25.

From Eliza D. Willard.

Having myself spent five weary years at Greek and Latin, I think I may safely venture an *opinion* in favor of the "Interlinear" system. Any one who wishes may learn Greek or Latin by means of these interlinear translations in one-sixth the time it would take according to the old plan of having to refer to their dictionary for every word.

From the Philadelphia Sunday Transcript.

The Gospel of St. John is one of the series of Interlinear Classics. These interlinears are rapidly superseding every other mode of translation for scholastic purposes. The plan adopted by this translator is peculiar, being intermediate between the systems of Hamilton and Locke. The book will be found of great service to the student of the Greek language, as it removes many of the difficulties so perplexing in its study.

From T. P. Davidson.

I am much pleased with your interlinear method of translation. I taught this system in England for many years, and always found my students to make most satisfactory progress.

From the Cincinnati Gazette.

We are ready to testify, from our own experience, that these classics are leading the pupil over a road comparatively smooth and even, to travel which requires no other effort than the natural movement of the body.

WRITE FOR "INTERLINEAR" TESTIMONIALS.

EDUCATIONAL PUBLICATIONS

OF

CHARLES DE SILVER & SONS.

The Standard Speaker:

CONTAINING

Exercises in Prose and Poetry, Gathered from Among the Most Celebrated Orators, Authors, and Popular Debaters, Ancient and Modern; A Treatise on Oratory and Elocution; With Notes Explanatory and Biographical.

Designed for Use in Declamation in Schools, Academies, Lyceums, and Colleges.

By EPES SARGENT.

In One Demi-Octavo Volume, 538 Pages, Half Roan. Price, $2.25.

A higher reputation throughout the United States has been acquired by this Speaker than any other similar work. In its production there has been a great expenditure of original labor, and it contains all the great masterpieces of eloquence, while it abounds in original translations from the Greek, Latin, and French.

From the New York Tribune.

A collection of many of the rarest and brightest gems in English literature, no less adapted to family reading and literary reference than for schools.

E. P. Whipple, the distinguished Essayist and Critic, writes:

The best compilation of the kind, in the variety and in the comprehensiveness of its selections, which has yet been made on either side of the Atlantic. The various pieces are selected with great judgment, and not only is the volume admirably adapted to serve its primal purposes as a Speaker, but the general reader will find it to be a most stimulating and attractive book, far excelling any work of "elegant extracts" we have seen.

WRITE FOR "INTERLINEAR" CIRCULARS.

SARGENT'S SERIES OF STANDARD SPEAKERS.

The Intermediate Standard Speaker:

CONTAINING

Pieces for Declamation, Dialogues, Etc., in Schools and Colleges; Introductory or Supplementary to the Standard Speaker.

In One Volume, 12mo, 432 Pages, Half Turkey. Price, $1.80.

This Speaker contains a capital collection of Dialogues, and short, spirited pieces for declamation; and the original *Debates* have acquired for it a well-merited and wide-spread reputation. The pieces are quite distinct from those contained in the larger Standard Speaker.

From O. G. Wheeler, South Hero, Vt.

The "Intermediate Standard Speaker" pleases me so much, that I recommend it to the booksellers in my vicinity.

The Primary Standard Speaker:

CONTAINING

Original and Selected Pieces, Especially Adapted to Declamation for the Youngest Pupils. Elegantly Illustrated.

In One 16mo Volume, 160 Pages, Half Roan. Price, 50 Cents.

For beginners in Declamation, this is the most attractive and serviceable work in the language; the selections being admirable, the original pieces skilfully adapted to their purpose, and the whole style of the book of a superior character.

From J. D. H. Corwine, Principal of Institute, Crittenden, Ky.

Having given "Sargent's Primary Speaker" a thorough perusal, I speak advisedly when I say it is the best work of the kind ever issued from the American press. In the Institute, I am now using it with great satisfaction.

From the School Visitor, Spencerport, Monroe Co., N. Y.

The "Primary Standard Speaker" is the title of an admirable book for the *little speakers*, filled with the most desirable matter and beautiful illustrations. Those teachers familiar with the other works of Mr. Sargent will need no other recommendation than the name of the author.

Publishers' Announcement.

MORE than three-quarters of a century have elapsed since the house of Charles De Silver & Sons became prominently identified with the educational interests of the country, a fact which enables them to more pointedly call attention to the accompanying Descriptive Catalogue of their school-books — feeling confident that, if equalled, such books cannot be surpassed in value by those of any single publishing house in the Union.

Among the school publications may be found Histories of the United States, by Frost; and of Modern Europe, by John Lord, LL.D., the celebrated historiographer; Speakers, by Epes Sargent, the most popular books of their class in this country, containing, as they do, the gems of oratory which have electrified the world during past ages, and the admirable Elocutionary Manual, by Prof. Corson, of Cornell University; a series of Algebraical works, by Francis H. Smith, A.M., Superintendent of the Virginia Military Institute; Pinnock's Histories of England, France, Greece, and Rome, with Questions, specially adapted to the use of schools; together with Manesca's Oral and Serial Method of Teaching the French Language, admitted by competent judges to be far superior to any other system. The publishers can also point with pardonable pride to the unsurpassed **Hamiltonian Series of Interlinear Classics**, comprising Virgil, Cæsar, Ovid, Juvenal, Cicero, Sallust, Horace, Livy, Xenophon, Homer, the Gospel of St. John in Greek, and the Practical and Progressive Grammar, as re-edited, improved, and enlarged by Thomas Clark, formerly editor of the classical works issued by the Publishers' Association, and who has been pronounced one of the most able classical scholars of the age. Mr. Clark has been assisted in his labors by such men as Wilson, Heilig, and Bieber.

Every facility will be given to those who desire information in regard to our books with a view to their examination or introduction or purchase; and all orders for our own publications, or those of other firms, will be promptly and carefully attended to at the lowest market rates.

Having numerous applications for specimen copies of books from parties ***NOT ENTITLED TO ANY DISCOUNT,*** all applicants are respectfully requested to accompany their application with the Catalogue or Circular of the School or College with which they may be connected, showing their name upon such catalogue or circular, or other proper evidence.

Money may be safely sent by Post-Office Order or Draft, made payable to the order of Charles De Silver & Sons.

A full list of our Publications mailed free to any address. Our Descriptive Catalogue will be sent on application.